FINAL ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT
FOR MODIFICATION OF THE CHARLESTON OCEAN
DREDGED MATERIAL DISPOSAL SITE (ODMDS),
CHARLESTON, SOUTH CAROLINA

LEAD AGENCY:  U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Region 4

COOPERATING AGENCY:  U.S. Army Corps of Engineers,
Charleston District

Prepared with the assistance of:
ANAMAR Environmental Consulting, Inc.
2106 NW 67th Place, Suite 5
Gainesville, Florida 32653

June 2016
FINDING OF NO SIGNIFICANT IMPACT
FOR MODIFICATION OF THE
CHARLESTON OCEAN DREDGED MATERIAL DISPOSAL SITE (ODMDS),
CHARLEST0N, SOUTH CAROLINA

June 2016
INTRODUCTION
The U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE), Charleston District has requested that the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) Region 4 modify, by expanding, the existing Charleston Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site (ODMDS) disposal zone in accordance with Section 102 of the Marine Protection, Research, and Sanctuaries Act (MPRSA) to ensure that long-term ocean disposal site capacity is available for suitable dredged material generated from new work (deepening) and maintenance projects in support of the Charleston Harbor Federal Navigation Project and other local users. The existing Charleston ODMDS (parallelogram) is 15.1 square miles (mi²), or 12.1 nautical square miles (nmi²), and the authorized disposal zone within the ODMDS is 4 mi² (3 nmi²) in size.

The existing Charleston ODMDS disposal zone is approximately 9 miles southeast of the entrance to Charleston Harbor. Additional ocean disposal capacity is needed to support ongoing navigation channel maintenance and capital improvement projects in the region.

1. PROPOSED ACTION: The proposed action would modify the Charleston ODMDS by expanding the disposal area to the north, south, and east by adding 5.8 mi² (4.4 nmi²) which would increase the designated disposal area to 9.8 mi² (7.4 nmi²). In addition, the proposed action will formally de-designate 10.4 mi² (7.8 nmi²) of restricted disposal area within the current Charleston ODMDS primarily west of the current disposal zone that contains widespread hardbottom habitat.

2. ALTERNATIVES CONSIDERED: As required by the EPA’s regulations, 40 Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) Part 6 – Procedures for Implementing the Requirements of the Council on Environmental Quality on the National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA), the attached EA considered all reasonable and viable alternatives, including a no action alternative. Although several alternatives were initially considered, two alternatives were considered reasonable:
   1) Modification of the current ODMDS by expanding the current disposal area to the north, south, and east by adding 5.8 mi² (4.4 nmi²) which would increase the designated disposal area to 9.8 mi² (7.4 nmi²). The proposed new site boundaries will also eliminate all areas west of the current disposal zone.
   2) No action alternative.

3. ENVIRONMENTAL EFFECTS AND MITIGATION MEASURES: The proposed site modifications: 1) Provide a long-term ocean disposal option for suitable dredged material from new work and O&M projects in support of the Charleston Harbor Federal Navigation Project; 2) Meet EPA’s general and specific criteria for site selection; 3) Comply with all international, federal, state, and local regulations; 4) Minimize environmental and socioeconomic impacts because it is sufficiently removed from amenities such as beaches, heavily used shrimping grounds, shipping lanes, areas of hardbottom, artificial reefs, and sand borrow areas;
5) Do not contain historic cultural resources; 6) Do not adversely modify designated critical habitat for threatened or endangered species; 7) Formally de-designates 10.4 mi$^2$ (7.8 nmi$^2$) of restricted disposal area within the current Charleston ODMDS primarily west of the current disposal zone that contains widespread hardbottom habitat; and 8) Create additional fish and benthic habitat as a result of berm construction.

4. CONCLUSIONS: Based on the environmental impact analysis presented in the Environmental Assessment for Modification of the Charleston Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site (ODMDS), Charleston, South Carolina, which is hereby attached to this FNSI, it has been determined that the proposed action would have no significant impact on the human environment or on natural resources within the greater Charleston Harbor area, South Carolina. Therefore, an EIS is not required.

5. PUBLIC COMMENT: Interested persons and agencies wanting to comment on the attached EA or this FNSI may do so by calling or writing to: Mrs. Jennifer Derby, Chief, Marine Regulatory and Wetlands Enforcement Section, 61 Forsyth St., SW, Atlanta, Georgia 30303, (404) 562-9401. Interested agencies, groups, and persons are invited to submit written comments to the above address within 30 days of the date of publication of availability of this FNSI.

Heather McTeer Toney
Regional Administrator

JUN 24 2016

Date:
ABSTRACT

This Environmental Assessment (EA) evaluates the proposed action to modify the Charleston Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site (ODMDS) offshore of Charleston, South Carolina as a permanent site for the ocean disposal of dredged material. The existing Charleston ODMDS (parallelogram) is 15.1 mi² (12.1 nmi²), and the authorized disposal zone within the ODMDS is 4 mi² (3 nmi²) in size. The proposed action is to modify the Charleston ODMDS by expanding the disposal area to the north, south, and east by adding 5.8 mi² (4.4 nmi²) which will increase the designated disposal area to 9.8 mi² (7.4 nmi²). In addition, the proposed action will formally de-designate 10.4 mi² (7.8 nmi²) of restricted disposal area within the current Charleston ODMDS primarily west of the current disposal zone that contains widespread hardbottom habitat. This ocean disposal site will be available as an alternative for disposal of suitable dredged material when no economically practicable upland placement or beneficial reuse options are available.

Use of the proposed ODMDS modification area is not anticipated to cause significant long-term adverse environmental impacts beyond the site boundaries. Sediment disposal at the site is expected to cause impacts to benthos and sediment composition within the site. There may also be minor environmental effects on benthos beyond the site boundaries due to sediment transport, although construction of a U-shaped berm along the eastern, southern, and western boundaries will help minimize those impacts. Water quality impacts will be localized, short-term, and negligible. No significant impacts to threatened and endangered species, fish and essential fish habitat, or commercial shrimp trawling and fishing in the vicinity of the ODMDS are expected. As part of the site designation process, the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) and U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) will develop a Site Monitoring and Management Plan (SMMP) that will ensure that environmental impacts remain insignificant and that dredged material is properly managed and monitored within the site. The SMMP is provided in Appendix C.

The alternatives evaluated in detail in this EA are: No Action Alternative and Alternative 1-Modification of the Charleston ODMDS. Based on the analysis provided in this EA and the evaluation of the alternatives with respect to the project need and potential issues identified, Alternative 1 is recommended as the Preferred Alternative. Alternative 1 – Modification of the Charleston ODMDS:

- Provides a long-term ocean disposal option for suitable dredged material from new work and O&M projects in support of the Charleston Harbor Federal Navigation Project.
- Meets EPA’s general and specific criteria for site selection.
- Complies with all international, federal, state, and local regulations.
- Minimizes environmental and socioeconomic impacts because it is sufficiently removed from amenities such as beaches, heavily used shrimping grounds, shipping lanes, areas of hardbottom, artificial reefs, and sand borrow areas.
- Does not contain historic cultural resources.
- Is not located within designated critical habitat for threatened or endangered species.
- Formally de-designates 10.4 mi² (7.8 nmi²) of restricted disposal area within the current Charleston ODMDS primarily west of the current disposal zone that contains widespread hardbottom habitat.
- Creates additional fish and benthic habitat as a result of berm construction.
TABLE OF CONTENTS

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY........................................................................................................................ ES-1

1 PURPOSE AND NEED ........................................................................................................................ 1

1.1 PROJECT AUTHORITY .................................................................................................................. 1

1.1.1 CHARLESTON ODMDS BACKGROUND .............................................................................. 3

1.2 PROJECT LOCATION .................................................................................................................... 3

1.3 PROJECT NEED OR OPPORTUNITY ............................................................................................ 3

1.3.1 MAINTENANCE AND NEW WORK DREDGING VOLUMES .................................................. 5

1.3.2 CAPACITY OF THE EXISTING CHARLESTON ODMDS .................................................. 10

1.4 AGENCY GOAL OR OBJECTIVE ................................................................................................. 10

1.5 RELATED ENVIRONMENTAL DOCUMENTS .............................................................................. 11

1.6 SCOPING AND ISSUES ............................................................................................................... 12

1.6.1 NOTICE OF INTENT AND SCOPING PERIOD ..................................................................... 12

1.6.2 INTERAGENCY COORDINATION ............................................................................................ 13

1.6.3 PROJECT COORDINATION .................................................................................................... 14

1.6.4 DRAFT EA / RESOURCE AGENCY MEETING ........................................................................ 14

1.6.5 FINAL EA / PROPOSED RULE .............................................................................................. 14

1.6.6 FINAL RULE / SITE DESIGNATION ...................................................................................... 14

1.7 PERMITS, LICENSES, AND ENTITLEMENTS ............................................................................. 14

2 ALTERNATIVES ............................................................................................................................ 17

2.1 DESCRIPTION OF ALTERNATIVES EVALUATED IN DETAIL .................................................... 17

2.1.1 NO ACTION ALTERNATIVE ................................................................................................... 17

2.1.2 ALTERNATIVE 1: MODIFICATION OF THE CHARLESTON ODMDS ............................... 17

2.1.3 ALTERNATIVE 2: USE EXISTING CHARLESTON ODMDS AND REMOVE DISPOSAL ZONE RESTRICTION .............................................................................. 17

2.2 ALTERNATIVES CONSIDERED BUT ELIMINATED FROM DETAILED EVALUATION ................. 27

2.2.1 ALTERNATIVE 2: USE EXISTING CHARLESTON ODMDS AND REMOVE DISPOSAL ZONE RESTRICTION .............................................................................. 27

2.2.2 ALTERNATIVE 3: NEW ODMDS NORTH OF THE ENTRANCE CHANNEL .............................. 27

2.2.3 ALTERNATIVE 4: DISPOSAL OFF THE CONTINENTAL SHELF ......................................... 27

2.2.4 ALTERNATIVE 5: UPLAND DISPOSAL .................................................................................. 27

2.2.5 ALTERNATIVE 6: BEACH NOURISHMENT, NEARSHORE PLACEMENT, AND OTHER BENEFICIAL USES ...................................................................................... 27

2.3 ALTERNATIVES NOT WITHIN JURISDICTION OF LEAD AGENCY ............................................. 37

2.4 ISSUES AND BASIS FOR CHOICE ............................................................................................ 37

2.5 PREFERRED ALTERNATIVE .................................................................................................... 37

2.6 COMPLIANCE WITH EPA CRITERIA .......................................................................................... 37

2.6.1 GENERAL SITE SELECTION CRITERIA (40 CFR § 228.5) .................................................. 37

2.6.1.1 General Site Selection Criteria 40 CFR § 228.5(a) ............................................................. 37

2.6.1.2 General Site Selection Criteria 40 CFR § 228.5(b) ............................................................. 37

2.6.1.3 General Site Selection Criteria 40 CFR § 228.5(c) ............................................................. 37

2.6.1.4 General Site Selection Criteria 40 CFR § 228.5(d) ............................................................. 37

2.6.1.5 General Site Selection Criteria 40 CFR § 228.5(e) ............................................................. 37

2.6.2 SPECIFIC SITE SELECTION CRITERIA (40 CFR 228.6) ...................................................... 37

3 AFFECTED ENVIRONMENT ............................................................................................................ 38

3.1 PHYSICAL OCEANOGRAPHY ..................................................................................................... 38

3.1.1 GEOLOGY AND TOPOGRAPHY ............................................................................................. 38

3.1.2 WAVES AND CURRENTS ........................................................................................................ 38

3.1.3 SEDIMENT TRANSPORT ....................................................................................................... 38

iii
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3.2 SEDIMENT CHARACTERISTICS</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.1 PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.1.1 Native Nearshore Sediments</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.1.2 ODMDS and Monitoring Zone Sediments</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.1.3 Charleston Harbor Dredge Material</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.2 CHEMICAL CHARACTERISTICS</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3 THREATENED AND ENDANGERED SPECIES</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.1 SEA TURTLES</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.1.1 Green Turtle</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.1.2 Loggerhead Turtle</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.1.3 Leatherback Turtle</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.1.4 Kemp's Ridley Turtle</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.1.5 Hawksbill Turtle</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.2 MARINE MAMMALS</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.2.1 North Atlantic Right Whale</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.2.2 Humpback Whale</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.2.3 West Indian Manatee</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.2.4 Blue Whales</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.2.5 Fin Whales</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.2.6 Sei Whales</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.2.7 Sperm Whales</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.3 FISH</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.3.1 Atlantic Sturgeon</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.3.2 Shortnose Sturgeon</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4 HARDBOTTOM HABITATS</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5 FISH AND WILDLIFE RESOURCES</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.1 MARINE HABITATS</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.1.1 Water Column</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.1.2 Benthic Habitat</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.2 AREAS OF SPECIAL CONCERN</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.2.1 Marine Protected Areas</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.2.2 Artificial Reefs</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.3 MARINE MAMMALS</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.3.1 Bottlenose Dolphin</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.4 AVIAN RESOURCES</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.5 AQUATIC RESOURCES</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.5.1 Benthos</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.5.2 Plankton</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.6 FISHERIES RESOURCES</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.6.1 Finfish</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.6.2 Epifauna</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.6.3 Shellfish</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.6.4 Invasive/Non-Indigenous Species</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6 ESSENTIAL FISH HABITAT</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6.1 MANAGED HABITATS</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6.1.1 Marine Water Column</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6.1.2 Live/Hardbottom</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6.2 MANAGED TAXA</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Contents

#### 3.8 WATER QUALITY
- 3.8.1 HYDROGRAPHIC DATA
- 3.8.2 WATER CHEMISTRY
  - 3.8.2.1 Nutrients
  - 3.8.2.2 Trace Metals, Pesticides, and PAHs
- 3.8.3 HUMAN-RELATED DISCHARGES

#### 3.9 HAZARDOUS, TOXIC, AND RADIOACTIVE WASTE

#### 3.10 AIR QUALITY

#### 3.11 NOISE

#### 3.12 RECREATION RESOURCES

#### 3.13 NAVIGATION AND PUBLIC SAFETY

#### 3.14 HISTORIC AND CULTURAL RESOURCES

#### 3.15 MINERAL RESOURCES
- 3.15.1 SAND BORROW AREAS
- 3.15.2 OIL, GAS, AND WIND ENERGY RESOURCES

#### 3.16 MILITARY USAGE

#### 4 ENVIRONMENTAL EFFECTS
- 4.1 GENERAL ENVIRONMENTAL EFFECTS
- 4.2 BATHYMETRY AND SEDIMENT TRANSPORT
  - 4.2.1 ALTERNATIVE 1
  - 4.2.2 NO ACTION ALTERNATIVE
- 4.3 SEDIMENT CHARACTERISTICS
  - 4.3.1 ALTERNATIVE 1
  - 4.3.2 NO ACTION ALTERNATIVE
- 4.4 THREATENED AND ENDANGERED SPECIES
  - 4.4.1 SEA TURTLES
    - 4.4.1.1 Alternative 1
    - 4.4.1.2 No Action Alternative
  - 4.4.2 MARINE MAMMALS
    - 4.4.2.1 Alternative 1
    - 4.4.2.2 No Action Alternative
  - 4.4.3 STURGEON
    - 4.4.3.1 Alternative 1
    - 4.4.3.2 No Action Alternative
- 4.4.4 SUMMARY OF EFFECTS
- 4.5 HARDBOTTOM HABITATS
### 4.6 FISH AND WILDLIFE RESOURCES

#### 4.6.1 BENTHIC COMMUNITIES

- Alternative 1
- No Action Alternative

#### 4.6.2 FISH COMMUNITIES

- Alternative 1
- No Action Alternative

### 4.7 ESSENTIAL FISH HABITAT

#### 4.7.1 ALTERNATIVE 1

- Managed Habitats
- Managed Taxa

#### 4.7.2 NO ACTION ALTERNATIVE

#### 4.7.3 SUMMARY OF EFFECTS

### 4.8 COASTAL BARRIER RESOURCES

#### 4.8.1 ALTERNATIVE 1

#### 4.8.2 NO ACTION ALTERNATIVE

### 4.9 WATER QUALITY

#### 4.9.1 ALTERNATIVE 1

- Physical Effects on Water Quality
- Chemical Effects on Water Quality

#### 4.9.2 NO ACTION ALTERNATIVE

### 4.10 HAZARDOUS, TOXIC, AND RADIOACTIVE WASTE

### 4.11 AIR QUALITY

#### 4.11.1 ALTERNATIVE 1

#### 4.11.2 NO ACTION ALTERNATIVE

### 4.12 NOISE

#### 4.12.1 ALTERNATIVE 1

#### 4.12.2 NO ACTION ALTERNATIVE

### 4.13 RECREATION RESOURCES

#### 4.13.1 ALTERNATIVE 1

#### 4.13.2 NO ACTION ALTERNATIVE

### 4.14 NAVIGATION AND PUBLIC SAFETY

#### 4.14.1 ALTERNATIVE 1

#### 4.14.2 NO ACTION ALTERNATIVE

### 4.15 HISTORIC AND CULTURAL RESOURCES

#### 4.15.1 ALTERNATIVE 1

#### 4.15.2 NO ACTION ALTERNATIVE

### 4.16 ENERGY REQUIREMENTS AND CONSERVATION

### 4.17 NATURAL OR DEPLETABLE RESOURCES

### 4.18 CUMULATIVE IMPACTS

#### 4.18.1 PAST, PRESENT, REASONABLY FORESEEABLE PROJECTS/ACTIVITIES

- Ocean Dredged Material Disposal
- Charleston Harbor Deepening
- Sand Borrow Areas
- Other Activities
4.18.2 CUMULATIVE IMPACT ANALYSIS
4.18.2.1 Air Quality
4.18.2.2 Water Quality
4.18.2.3 Sediment Quality
4.18.2.4 Benthic Fauna
4.18.2.5 Fish and Essential Fish Habitat
4.18.2.6 Bioaccumulation
4.18.2.7 Conclusion

4.19 IRREVERSIBLE AND IRRETRIEVABLE COMMITMENT OF RESOURCES

4.20 UNAVOIDABLE ADVERSE ENVIRONMENTAL EFFECTS

4.21 ENVIRONMENTAL COMMITMENTS

4.22 COMPLIANCE WITH ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS
4.22.1 NATIONAL ENVIRONMENTAL POLICY OF 1969 (NEPA)
4.22.2 ENDANGERED SPECIES ACT OF 1973
4.22.3 FISH AND WILDLIFE COORDINATION ACT OF 1958
4.22.4 NATIONAL HISTORIC PRESERVATION ACT OF 1966 (Inter Alia)
4.22.5 CLEAN WATER ACT OF 1972
4.22.6 CLEAN AIR ACT OF 1972
4.22.7 COASTAL ZONE MANAGEMENT ACT OF 1972
4.22.8 MARINE MAMMAL PROTECTION ACT OF 1972
4.22.9 ESTUARY PROTECTION ACT OF 1968
4.22.10 SUBMERGED LANDS ACT OF 1953
4.22.11 COASTAL BARRIER RESOURCES ACT AND COASTAL BARRIER IMPROVEMENT ACT OF 1990
4.22.12 RIVERS AND HARBORS ACT OF 1899
4.22.13 ANADROMOUS FISH CONSERVATION ACT
4.22.14 MARINE PROTECTION, RESEARCH, AND SANCTUARIES ACT
4.22.15 MAGNUSON-STEVENS FISHERY CONSERVATION AND MANAGEMENT ACT
4.22.16 EXECUTIVE ORDER 11593, PROTECTION AND ENHANCEMENT OF THE CULTURAL ENVIRONMENT (36 FR 8921; MAY 15, 1971)
4.22.17 EXECUTIVE ORDER 12898, FEDERAL ACTIONS TO ADDRESS ENVIRONMENTAL JUSTICE IN MINORITY AND LOW-INCOME POPULATIONS (FEBRUARY 11, 1994)
4.22.18 EXECUTIVE ORDER 13045, PROTECTION OF CHILDREN FROM ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH RISKS AND SAFETY RISKS (62 FR 19885, APRIL 21, 1997)
4.22.19 EXECUTIVE ORDER 13089, CORAL REEF PROTECTION
4.22.20 EXECUTIVE ORDER 13112, INVASIVE SPECIES
4.22.21 EXECUTIVE ORDER 13158, MARINE PROTECTED AREAS
4.22.22 EXECUTIVE ORDER 13186, RESPONSIBILITIES OF FEDERAL AGENCIES TO THE MIGRATORY BIRD TREATY ACT (66 FR 3853, JANUARY 11, 2001)

4.23 CEQ GREENHOUSE GAS EMISSIONS AND CLIMATE CHANGE GUIDANCE

5 LIST OF PREPARERS
5.1 PREPARERS
5.2 REVIEWERS

6 REFERENCES
This page intentionally left blank.
APPENDICES

Appendix A  Public Participation and Agency Consultation
Appendix B  Essential Fish Habitat Assessment Tables
Appendix C  Charleston ODMDS Site Management and Monitoring Plan
Appendix D  Charleston ODMDS Modeling Report
Appendix E  Coastal Zone Management Program Federal Consistency Evaluation

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 1-1. Location of the Larger 15 mi² ODMDS (Charleston Harbor Deepening Project ODMDS), Smaller 3 mi² ODMDS (Old Disposal Area), and the Current 4 mi² Disposal Zone .......................................................... 2
Figure 1-2. Charleston Harbor Federal Navigation Project and South Carolina Ports Authority Terminal Facilities ................................................................. 4
Figure 1-3. Charleston Harbor Channel Reaches and Widenings ........................................ 6
Figure 2-1. Alternative 1--Charleston ODMDS Modification with Nearby Resources ........................................ 19
Figure 2-2. MPFATE Placement Sites (Modeled Dump Zone) ........................................ 23
Figure 2-3. Depth inside Alternative 1 Boundaries after the 25-year MPFATE-LTFATE Simulations ........................................ 24
Figure 2-4. Change in Bed Elevation inside Alternative 1 after the 25-year MPFATE-LTFATE Simulations ........................................ 25
Figure 2-5. Alternative 2 – Charleston ODMDS with Nearby Resources ......................... 29
Figure 2-6. Alternative 3 – New ODMDS North of Entrance Channel with Nearby Resources ......................................................................................... 33
Figure 2-7. Charleston Upland Dredged Material Placement Areas ................................ 36
Figure 3-1. Monitoring Scheme of the Permitted Disposal Zone within the Charleston ODMDS and the Surrounding Boundary Zones ........................................ 49
Figure 3-2. Summary of Surficial Sediment Data Describing the Percent Sand Composition at Stations Sampled in Each 1-x 1-Minute Grid Cell ................................................................. 54
Figure 3-3. Sediment Composition of Each Stratum. Data Are Based on the Average of 10 Grab Samples Per Stratum Collected in 2002 ................................................. 55
Figure 3-4. Example of the Data Summary of the Relative Abundance (#nests/km) and Distribution of Loggerhead Sea Turtle Nests along the South Carolina Coastline, and Juvenile Loggerhead Sea Turtles Caught by Trawl in the In-Water Sea Turtle Surveys and SEAMAP Trawl Surveys ........................................ 60
Figure 3-5. Critical Habitat in the Action Area for the Northwest Atlantic Ocean Loggerhead Sea Turtle Distinct Population Segment ........................................ 61
Figure 3-6. Proposed Southeastern Calving Critical Habitat for North Atlantic Right Whales ......................................................................................... 63
Figure 3-7. Distribution of Sightings of Known North Atlantic Right Whales, 2007-2011 ......................................................................................... 65
| Figure 3-8. | Example of the Relative Abundance and Distribution of North American Right Whale Sightings along the Coast of South Carolina | 66 |
| Figure 3-9. | Location of Known and Potential Hardbottom Areas along the South Carolina Coast | 71 |
| Figure 3-10. | Map of Marine Protected Areas in the Study Area | 73 |
| Figure 3-11. | Location of Stations Sampled in the Disposal Zone and Surrounding Boundary Area as Part of the Interim Assessment | 76 |
| Figure 3-12. | Summary of Shrimp Trawling Activity along the South Carolina Coast Based on Landings Data | 81 |
| Figure 3-13. | Summary Graphic of Regulatory Boundaries along the Coast and in the Coastal Waters off South Carolina | 90 |
| Figure 3-14. | Locations of Areas That Have Been or Will Be Mined for Sands Used in Beach Nourishment Projects | 95 |
| Figure 3-15. | Detailed Map of the Charleston (ODMDS) Borrow Areas | 96 |
| Figure 3-16. | BOEM Wind Assessment for the South Carolina Planning Area | 98 |
| Figure 4-1. | Location of Reef Sites in and near the ODMDS (Delineated in Black) Surveyed by Crowe et al. (2006); Other Areas of Hardbottom South and West of the ODMDS Are Not Shown | 111 |
### LIST OF TABLES

Table ES-1. Threatened (T) and Endangered (E) Species in the Project Vicinity ........... ES-2
Table ES-2. Summary of Impacts .................................................................................. ES-3
Table ES-3. Compliance with EPA General Site Selection Criteria ................................ ES-5
Table ES-4. Compliance with EPA Specific Site Selection Criteria .............................. ES-7
Table 1.3-1. Dredging History (1994-2014) Volumes Placed at the Charleston ODMDS ............................................................................................................. 7
Table 1.3-2. Charleston Harbor O&M Quantities and Placement Areas for 25 Years .......... 8
Table 1.3-3. Estimated Volumes of Dredge Material from the Post 45 Deepening Project ............................................................................................................. 9
Table 1.3-4. Estimated Volume of New Work and Maintenance Material to Be Disposed of in the Charleston ODMDS during a 25-year Timeframe .......... 10
Table 2.1-1. Coordinates and Total Area for the Existing Charleston ODMDS, the Current ODMDS Disposal Zone, the Proposed Alternative Site 1, and the Proposed Dump Site within Alternative Site 1 ................................................... 21
Table 2.2-1. Coordinates and Total Area for Alternative 2 ........................................... 28
Table 2.2-2. Coordinates and Total Area for Alternative 3 ........................................... 31
Table 2.6-1. Comparison of the Proposed Alternatives and Compliance with the Specific Criteria for Designation Outlined in 40 CFR 228.6 .......................................................... 43
Table 2.6-2. Summary of Direct and Indirect Impacts of Alternatives Considered .......... 45
Table 3.3-1. Threatened (T) and Endangered (E) Species in the Project Vicinity ........... 58
Table 3.5-1. Marine Mammals That May Occur in the Proposed ODMDS Modification Area .................................................................................................................. 74
Table 3.5-2. The 25 Numerically Dominant Taxa Collected in and around the ODMDS in 2000 and 2002 .................................................................................................................. 77
Table 3.8-1. Concentration of Trace Metals in Waters Overlying the Charleston ODMDS during IEC Surveys ................................................................. 92
Table 3.8-2. Concentration of Trace Metals in the ODMDS Surface Water Sample Collected in October 2012 ........................................................................................................ 92
Table 3.13-1. Port of Charleston Tidal Limitations Based on Vessel Draft ...................... 94
Table 3.15-1. Offshore Natural Gas and Oil Operations within the South Atlantic Planning Area ................................................................. 97
Table 4.4-1. Summary of Effects on Listed Species and Critical Habitat ..................... 109
Table 4.6-1. Possible Effects of Dredged Material Disposal on Offshore Benthos .......... 114
Table 4.18-1. Past, Present, and Reasonably Foreseeable Projects/Activities ............. 130
Table 4.22-1. Summary of Compliance of the Proposed Project with Environmental Statutes and Regulations ................................................................. 142
This page intentionally left blank.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acronym</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ADCP</td>
<td>acoustic Doppler current profiler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOEM</td>
<td>Bureau of Ocean Energy Management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CBRA</td>
<td>Coastal Barrier Resources Act of 1982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CBRS</td>
<td>Coastal Barrier Resources System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDF</td>
<td>Confined disposal facility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CEQ</td>
<td>Council on Environmental Quality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CFR</td>
<td>Code of Federal Regulations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMC</td>
<td>criterion maximum concentration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMWS</td>
<td>Center for Marine and Wetland Studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWA</td>
<td>Clean Water Act of 1972</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CZMA</td>
<td>Coastal Zone Management Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DPS</td>
<td>distinct population segment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EEZ</td>
<td>(U.S. Atlantic) Exclusive Economic Zone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFH</td>
<td>essential fish habitat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPA/USEPA</td>
<td>U.S. Environmental Protection Agency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERL/TEL</td>
<td>effects range-low/threshold effects level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESA</td>
<td>Endangered Species Act of 1973</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMP</td>
<td>Fishery Management Plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FR/EIS</td>
<td>Feasibility Report/Environmental Impact Statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GHG</td>
<td>Greenhouse gas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HAPC</td>
<td>habitat areas of particular concern</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC</td>
<td>Interstate Electronics Corporation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAFMC</td>
<td>Mid-Atlantic Fishery Management Council</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MBTA</td>
<td>Migratory Bird Treaty Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mcy</td>
<td>million cubic yards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDL</td>
<td>method detection limit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mi²</td>
<td>square miles (square nautical miles)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MLLW</td>
<td>mean lower low water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MLW</td>
<td>mean low water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MMPSA</td>
<td>Marine Mammal Protection Act of 1972</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MPA</td>
<td>Marine Protected Area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MPRSA</td>
<td>Marine Protection, Research, and Sanctuaries Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSA</td>
<td>Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MU</td>
<td>management unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAAQS</td>
<td>National Ambient Air Quality Standards (NAAQS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEPA</td>
<td>National Environmental Policy Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NHPA</td>
<td>National Historic Preservation Act of 1966</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NMFS</td>
<td>National Marine Fisheries Service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOAA</td>
<td>National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOI</td>
<td>Notice of Intent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOS</td>
<td>National Ocean Service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NTU</td>
<td>nephelometric turbidity units</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O&amp;M</td>
<td>operations and maintenance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>ocean dredged material disposal site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAHs</td>
<td>polynuclear aromatic hydrocarbons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCBs</td>
<td>polychlorinated biphenyls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PED</td>
<td>pre-construction, engineering, and design [phase]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAFMC</td>
<td>South Atlantic Fishery Management Council</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SARBO</td>
<td>South Atlantic Regional Biological Opinion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCDHEC</td>
<td>South Carolina Department of Health and Environmental Control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCDF</td>
<td>South Carolina Department of Natural Resources</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCSPA</td>
<td>South Carolina State Ports Authority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCWMD</td>
<td>South Carolina Wildlife and Marine Resources Department</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SFA</td>
<td>Sustainable Fisheries Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHPO</td>
<td>State Historic Preservation Officer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMMP</td>
<td>Site Management and Monitoring Plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOC</td>
<td>total organic carbon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USACE</td>
<td>U.S. Army Corps of Engineers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USFWS</td>
<td>U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
This page intentionally left blank.
EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

PURPOSE AND NEED FOR PROPOSED ACTION
USACE Charleston District has requested that EPA Region 4 modify, by expanding, the existing Charleston ODMDS disposal zone in accordance with Section 102 of the MPRSA to ensure that long-term ocean disposal site capacity is available for suitable dredged material generated from new work (deepening) and maintenance projects in support of the Charleston Harbor Federal Navigation Project and other local users. The existing 4 mi² (3 nmi²) Charleston ODMDS disposal zone is approximately 9 miles southeast of the entrance to Charleston Harbor. The proposed action evaluated in this environmental assessment (EA) is a modification of the Charleston ODMDS. Additional ocean disposal capacity is needed to support ongoing navigation channel maintenance and capital improvement projects in the region.

ALTERNATIVES
Chapter 2 of this EA evaluates alternatives and identifies the preferred alternative that best meets the goals and objectives of the proposed action while minimizing the potential for adverse environmental effects. Some alternatives were eliminated from detailed impact analysis in this EA if they did not meet the project need. The alternatives considered in this EA include

- No Action Alternative
- Alternative 1: Modification of the Charleston ODMDS (Preferred)
- Alternative 2: Use Existing Charleston ODMDS and Remove Disposal Zone Restriction
- Alternative 3: New ODMDS North of the Entrance Channel
- Alternative 4: Disposal Off the Continental Shelf
- Alternative 5: Upland Disposal
- Alternative 6: Beach Nourishment, Nearshore Placement, and Other Beneficial Uses

The existing Charleston ODMDS (parallelogram) is 15.1 mi² (12.1 nmi²), and the authorized disposal zone within the ODMDS is 4 mi² (3 nmi²) in size. The preferred alternative (Alternative 1) is to modify the Charleston ODMDS by expanding the disposal zone to the north, south, and east by 5.8 mi² (4.4 nmi²) which will allow for a 9.8 mi² (7.4 nmi²) modified ODMDS. In addition, as part of the final EPA rulemaking, Alternative 1 would formally de-designate the remaining restricted area [approximately 10.4 mi² (7.8 nmi²)] primarily west of the existing disposal zone that contains hardbottom habitat. Therefore, Alternative 1 will modify the Charleston ODMDS to provide an increased area for dredged material disposal (increased from 4 mi² to 9.8 mi²), but will decrease the overall footprint of the formally designated site (decreased from 15.1 mi² to 9.8 mi²) [Figure 2-1]. The size of the proposed ODMDS modification area is based on current capacity analysis of the existing disposal zone within the Charleston ODMDS, historical dredging volumes, future dredging volumes for new work and maintenance projects, estimated shoaling rates, capacity of upland CDFs in the area, and consideration of historical ODMDS monitoring programs.

AFFECTED ENVIRONMENT

Physical Environment
The project area is located on the shallow continental shelf offshore of Charleston, South Carolina. The seafloor is characterized by low relief, relatively gentle gradients, and smooth bottom surfaces exhibiting physiographic features contoured by erosional processes.
Sediments generally consist of fine to coarse sands and shell hash and less than 10% silt. A study conducted by EPA (2014) indicated that currents in the vicinity of the Charleston ODMDS tend to have a significant tidal component with predominant currents in the cross-shore direction. However, non-tidal currents are along shore resulting in a net suspended sediment transport directed mainly NE and SW in response to local wind climate and the wind-generated alongshore flows (Voulgaris 2002). Predominant net transport is generally from NE to SW and is influenced by local and regional wind and current patterns as well as periodic storm events. The water quality of the existing site is typical of the Atlantic Ocean. Water and sediment analyses conducted in the study area have not identified any adverse water quality impacts from ocean disposal of dredged material.

**Biological Environment**

Threatened and endangered species that may occur in the vicinity of the ODMDS modification area are listed in Table ES-1, below. There is no critical habitat designated within the boundaries of the proposed ODMDS modification area; however critical habitat has been proposed for right whale calving grounds and the ODMDS would be within this broad designated area. Other non-threatened mammals, mainly bottlenose dolphins, may also occur in the project area.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Scientific Name</th>
<th>Occurrence in Action Area</th>
<th>Federal Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sea Turtles</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green Turtle</td>
<td>Chelonia mydas</td>
<td>Occasional at ODMDS</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loggerhead</td>
<td>Caretta caretta</td>
<td>Common at ODMDS</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leatherback</td>
<td>Dermochelys coriacea</td>
<td>Rare at ODMDS</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kemp's Ridley</td>
<td>Lepidochelys kempii</td>
<td>Occasional at ODMDS</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hawksbill</td>
<td>Eretmochelys imbricata</td>
<td>Rare at ODMDS</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marine Mammals</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>North Atlantic Right Whale</td>
<td>Eubalaena glacialis</td>
<td>Occasional at ODMDS</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Humpback Whale</td>
<td>Megaptera novaeangliae</td>
<td>Occasional at ODMDS</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finback Whale</td>
<td>Balaenoptera physalus</td>
<td>Unlikely at ODMDS</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sei Whale</td>
<td>Balaenoptera borealis</td>
<td>Unlikely at ODMDS</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blue Whale</td>
<td>Balaenoptera musculus</td>
<td>Unlikely at ODMDS</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sperm Whale</td>
<td>Physeter macrocephalus</td>
<td>Unlikely at ODMDS</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>West Indian Manatee</td>
<td>Trichechus manatus</td>
<td>Rare at ODMDS</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fish</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atlantic Sturgeon</td>
<td>Acipenser oxyrhynchus oxyrhynchus</td>
<td>Unlikely at ODMDS</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shortnose Sturgeon</td>
<td>Acipenser brevirostrum</td>
<td>Unlikely at ODMDS</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Avian species most likely to occur in the project area include pelagic birds, pelicans, gulls, and terns. The predominant infaunal invertebrates inhabiting the bottom habitats include polychaetes, amphipods, and mollusks. Three species of penaeid shrimp are commercially harvested in South Carolina. The two most abundant species are brown shrimp and white shrimp. The third species, which is only incidentally caught, is pink shrimp.

South Carolina’s open coastal waters in the vicinity of the ODMDS support two major fish habitats, as defined by Oakley and Pugliese (2001): the live/hard-bottom areas and the flat, soft-bottom area that comprises most of the nearshore shelf. The live/hard-bottom fish assemblage is dominated by snapper-grouper species. The soft-bottom assemblage includes nearshore...
demersals, coastal pelagics, and open-ocean pelagics that migrate through the study area. Abundant demersal species include drums and croakers. Pelagic fish include small, schooling forage fish such as Atlantic menhaden, shad, anchovies and sardines, mullet, silver perch, barracuda, mackerel species, bluefish, and various sharks. Fish that are encountered in shelf waters include several members of the tuna family, occasional billfish such as marlins and swordfish, and dolphins.

Essential Fish Habitat (EFH) identified by South Atlantic Fisheries Management Council (SAFMC) that may be present in the proposed ODMDS modification area include live/hardbottom and water column habitats.

**Socioeconomic Environment**

Offshore recreational resources in the vicinity of the project area include recreational fishing, sailing, and boating areas; diving areas; and other watersport areas. Recreational fishing primarily includes red drum and some of the coastal pelagic and Mid-Atlantic species (mackerel species, bluefish, spotted seatrout; SCDNR 2001). Artificial reef dive sites are not located in the immediate vicinity of the proposed ODMDS modification area. Shrimp trawling is generally limited to the state’s coastal boundary (3-mile limit), although some shrimping activity occurs seaward of that line unless it is closed by SAFMC. Three species of penaeid shrimp are commercially harvested in South Carolina, with the majority of the catch caught offshore by trawlers working in the nearshore zone.

The Port of Charleston is one of the nation’s major ports, ranking 23rd in foreign trade total tonnage and 7th in terms of foreign trade total value.

The proposed modification of the Charleston ODMDS includes potentially significant areas for maritime cultural heritage. Magnetic and sidescan sonar data were evaluated to identify anomalies consistent with cultural resources in accordance with provisions of Section 106 of the NHPA of 1966 and the Abandoned Shipwreck Act of 1987. The anomalies are emblematic of the modern industrial use of the area rather than its historic past.

**ENVIRONMENTAL EFFECTS**

Table ES-2 summarizes potential effects of Alternative 1.

**Table ES-2. Summary of Impacts**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environmental Factor</th>
<th>Alternative 1: Modification of the Charleston ODMDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Threatened and Endangered Species – Sea Turtles</td>
<td>Impacts to sea turtles associated with a modified ODMDS and dredged material disposal include temporary decreases in foraging due to turbidity and burial of food resources. Impacts are expected to be short-term and localized. Disposal of dredged material in the proposed area will not significantly degrade sea turtle habitats. No significant impacts to sea turtles are expected as a result of the proposed action.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Threatened and Endangered Species – Manatees</td>
<td>Impacts to the manatees associated with a modified ODMDS and dredged material disposal include temporary decreases in foraging due to turbidity and burial of food resources. No significant impacts to manatees are expected as a result of the proposed action.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Threatened and Endangered Species – Whales</td>
<td>Impacts to the North Atlantic right whale and humpback whale associated with a modified ODMDS and dredged material disposal include temporary decreases in foraging due to turbidity and burial of food resources. Impacts are expected to be short-term and localized. No significant impacts to whales are expected as a result of the proposed action.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Final Environmental Assessment for Modification of the Charleston ODMDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environmental Factor</th>
<th>Alternative 1: Modification of the Charleston ODMDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Threatened and Endangered Species – Fish</td>
<td>Impacts from a modified ODMDS and dredged material disposal include temporary decreases in foraging due to turbidity and burial of food resources. Shortnose sturgeon are not likely to be present in the project area and Atlantic sturgeon are not common. Therefore, no significant impacts to protected fish are expected as a result of the proposed action.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fish and Wildlife Resources – Benthic Fauna</td>
<td>Potential impacts include direct burial of benthic organisms and change in composition of sediments reducing abundance and diversity of the benthic communities within the site. Suspended sediments can also affect filter-feeding organisms and abrade gill tissues. Effects of turbidity would be short-term and localized. Effects of burial and change in sediment composition can potentially be long-term depending upon the frequency of disturbance and depth of burial.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fish and Wildlife Resources – Fish</td>
<td>Potential impacts include temporary decreases in foraging due to turbidity and burial of food resources. Adult fishes within the disposal area may experience a short-term reduction in dissolved oxygen uptake through the gills due to the presence of suspended particles. Impacts are expected to be short-term and localized. No significant impacts to fishes are expected as a result of the proposed action.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fish and Wildlife Resources – Marine Mammals</td>
<td>See protected whale species above.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fish and Wildlife Resources – Seabirds</td>
<td>Potential indirect effects may include ship-following behavior, temporary reductions or possible increase in prey items, and visual impairment of marine birds foraging in the vicinity of the disposal plume. No significant impacts to protected seabirds are expected as a result of the proposed action.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hardbottoms</td>
<td>Potential impacts include burial of hardbottom, increased turbidity and sedimentation, loss of sessile biota and finfish assemblages, and loss of productivity. To help protect nearby hardbottom habitat from being buried by sediment migrating from the ODMDS, a U-shaped berm along the east, south, and west perimeters of the modified ODMDS will be constructed (~427 acres). The berm is expected to create additional hardbottom habitat. LTFATE and MPFATE modeling results over a 25-year period indicate depths of sediment deposited outside the boundaries of the ODMDS will not exceed the recommended 5 cm deposition contour provided by EPA (USACE 2015).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Essential Fish Habitat</td>
<td>Direct effects of sedimentation and turbidity are not expected to be substantial due to the mobility of the majority of federally managed species that may occur within the site and the lack of geographic constraints within the vicinity of the project area. There are 1.6 acres of hardbottom within the site that could be buried. Construction of the berm (~427 acres) may create additional hardbottom habitat. No significant impacts to EFH are expected as a result of the proposed action.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cultural Resources</td>
<td>Based on survey findings, there are no targets of significance within the proposed ODMDS modification area. No properties listed in or eligible for listing in the National Register of Historic Places will be affected by this project.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Economics</td>
<td>No anticipated negative effects related to shipping or commercial fisheries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recreation</td>
<td>The closest existing artificial reefs are approximately 3.1 mi (2.7 nmi) north of the site. There are no anticipated effects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water Quality</td>
<td>Short-term, localized increases in turbidity will occur in the vicinity of the disposal site during disposal operations. No significant or long-term impacts to water quality are expected as a result of the proposed action.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Environmental Factor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alternative 1: Modification of the Charleston ODMDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Air Quality</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short-term, localized increases in concentrations of NO₂, SO₂, CO₂, VOCs, and particulate matter (PM) associated with transport of dredged material to the disposal site may occur. No significant impacts to air quality are expected as a result of the proposed action.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Noise</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No significant effects from noise generated during disposal operations are anticipated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Navigation</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No anticipated negative effects.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### COMPLIANCE WITH EPA’S GENERAL AND SPECIFIC CRITERIA

Tables ES-3 and ES-4 present a summarized assessment of the extent to which the preferred alternative (Alternative 1) meets the five general site selection criteria in 40 CFR 228.5(a) to (e) and eleven specific site selection criteria in 40 CFR 228.6(a).

### Table ES-3. Compliance with EPA General Site Selection Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Criteria</th>
<th>Compliance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>40 CFR 228.5(a)</strong> The dumping of materials into the ocean will be permitted only at sites or in areas selected to minimize the interference of disposal activities with other activities in the marine environment, particularly avoiding areas of existing fisheries or shellfisheries, and regions of heavy commercial or recreational navigation.</td>
<td>The proposed action avoids major fisheries, natural and artificial reefs, and areas of recreational use. Modification of the site to the east will minimize interference with shellfisheries by avoiding areas located primarily to the west of the ODMDS that are frequently used by commercial shrimpers and have known hardbottoms. Construction of the berm will provide an additional ~427 acres of hardbottom habitat and will protect existing hardbottom habitat by minimizing sediment transport. There will be a 3000-foot buffer along the northern perimeter of the ODMDS where dumping will not occur. This buffer should be sufficient to protect probable hardbottom areas to the north of the site (Figure 2-1). Therefore, this site is considered to be in compliance with 40 CFR § 228.5(a).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<p>| <strong>40 CFR 228.5(b)</strong> Locations and boundaries of disposal sites will be so chosen that temporary perturbations in water quality or other environmental conditions during initial mixing caused by disposal operations anywhere within the site can be expected to be reduced to normal ambient seawater levels or to undetectable contaminant concentrations or effects before reaching any beach, shoreline, marine sanctuary, or known geographically limited fishery or shellfishery. | The proposed ODMDS modification area will be used for disposal of suitable dredged material as determined by Section 103 of the MPRSA. Based on the USACE and EPA sediment testing and evaluation of dredged maintenance material and proposed new work material from the Post 45 deepening project, disposal is not expected to have any long-term impact on the water quality (ANAMAR 2013). Results of the maximum concentration found outside the disposal area after 4 hours of mixing for each dredging unit was 0. Based on these results, water quality perturbations that could reach any beach, shoreline, marine sanctuary, or known geographically-limited fishery or shellfishery are not expected. The western edge of Alternative 1 is approximately 7 miles offshore such that prevailing current will not transport dredged material to beaches. Water quality perturbations caused by dispersion of disposal material will be reduced to ambient conditions before reaching any environmentally sensitive areas. Therefore, this site is considered to be in compliance with 40 CFR § 228.5(b). |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Criteria</th>
<th>Compliance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>40 CFR 228.5(c)</strong> If at any time during or after disposal site evaluation studies, it is determined that existing disposal sites presently approved on an interim basis for ocean dumping do not meet the criteria for site selection set forth in Sections 228.5 through 228.6, the use of such sites will be terminated as soon as suitable alternate disposal sites can be designated.</td>
<td>This criterion does not apply as no existing sites are approved on an interim basis in the region.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>40 CFR 228.5(d)</strong> The sizes of the ocean disposal sites will be limited in order to localize for identification and control any immediate adverse impacts and permit the implementation of effective monitoring and surveillance programs to prevent adverse long-range impacts. The size, configuration, and location of any disposal site will be determined as a part of the disposal site evaluation or designation study.</td>
<td>The location, size, and configuration of the proposed action (Alternative 1) provides long-term capacity, site management, and site monitoring while limiting environmental impacts to the surrounding area to the extent possible. Based on 25-years of projected new work and maintenance dredged material disposal needs (see Section 1.3), it is estimated that the ODMDS modification area should be approximately 5.8 mi² (4.4 nm²) in size to meet the long-term disposal needs of the area. When determining the size of the proposed site, the ability to implement effective monitoring and surveillance programs, among other things, was factored in to ensure that navigational safety would not be compromised and to prevent mounding of dredged material, which could result in adverse wave conditions. A site management and monitoring program will be implemented to determine if disposal at the site is significantly affecting adjacent areas and to detect the presence of long-term adverse effects. At a minimum, the monitoring program will consist of bathymetric surveys, sediment grain size analysis, chemical analysis of constituents of concern in the sediments, and a health assessment of the benthic community. The SMMP is included in Appendix C. This site is considered to be in compliance with 40 CFR § 228.5(d).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>40 CFR 228.5(e)</strong> EPA will, wherever feasible, designate ocean dumping sites beyond the edge of the continental shelf and other such sites that have been historically used.</td>
<td>The continental slope is approximately 55 nmi offshore of Charleston. Disposal off the continental shelf (shelf break) was evaluated in detail the 1983 ODMDS Designation EIS document. In comparison to locating the site in the nearshore region, it was determined that monitoring and surveillance would be more difficult and expensive in the shelf break area because of the distance from shore to the deeper waters. Transporting material to and performing long-term monitoring of a site located off the continental shelf is not economically or operationally feasible. The historically used ocean dumping site, Charleston ODMDS, is not located beyond the continental shelf. A portion of the proposed modification area in Alternative 1 encompasses an area previously designated for disposal. Therefore, this site is considered to be in compliance with 40 CFR § 228.5(e).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table ES-4. Compliance with EPA Specific Site Selection Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>40 CFR 228.6(a) Criteria</th>
<th>Alternative 1: Expansion of Existing ODMDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1. Geographical position, depth of water, bottom topography, and distance from the coast. | a) Geographical position: Located on the shallow continental shelf offshore of Charleston, South Carolina.  
b) Depth of water: Range = ~30 to ~45 feet MLW, average depth = ~40 feet  
c) Characteristics of the South Atlantic Bight seafloor include low relief, relatively gentle gradients, and smooth bottom surfaces exhibiting physiographic features contoured by erosional processes. Sediments largely consist of fine to coarse sands. Some areas contain extensive coarse grains and shell hash. Fines were typically less than 10% (Gayes et al. 2013).  
d) Distance from coast = Approximately 7 mi (6 nmi) |
| 2. Location in relation to breeding, spawning, nursery, feeding, or passage areas of living resources in adult or juvenile phases. | Similar to the No Action Alternative. The proposed ODMDS modification area is contiguous with the existing Charleston ODMDS. |
| 3. Location in relation to beaches and other amenities such as natural and artificial reefs and fishing spots. | Similar to the No Action Alternative. The proposed ODMDS modification area is contiguous with the existing Charleston ODMDS. |
| 4. Types and quantities of wastes proposed to be disposed of and proposed methods of release, including methods of packaging the waste, if any. | Only material that meets EPA Ocean Dumping Criteria in 40 CFR 220-229 will be placed in the proposed site. Average annual maintenance material is approximately 1.4 mcy and approximately 31.2 mcy of new work material is expected from the Charleston Harbor Deepening Project. Sediments dredged from Charleston Harbor and the entrance channel are a mixture of silt, sand, and rock. Hopper dredge, barge, and scow combinations are the usual vehicles of transport for the dredged material. None of the material is packaged in any manner. |
| 5. Feasibility of surveillance and monitoring. | Site monitoring is feasible and is described in the SMMP (Appendix C). |
| 6. Dispersal, horizontal transport, and vertical mixing characteristics of the area, including prevailing current direction and velocity, if any. | A study conducted by EPA (2014) indicated that currents in the vicinity of the Charleston ODMDS tend to have a significant tidal component with predominant currents in the cross-shore direction. The depth-averaged median current velocity was 18 cm/sec (0.6 ft/sec) with 90% of the measurements below 30 cm/sec (1.1 ft/sec). Wind-driven circulation is the most important factor in controlling sediment transport. Strong winds generate waves that steer the sediment on the seabed and create large nearby suspended sediment concentrations. Suspended sediment transport is directed mainly NE and SW in response to local wind climate and the wind-generated alongshore flows (Voulgaris 2002) (See Sections 3.1.2 and 3.1.3 for more details). LTFATE and MPFATE modeling results over a 25-year period indicate depths of sediment deposited outside the boundaries of the ODMDS will not exceed the 5 cm deposition contour guidance provided by EPA (USACE 2015). |
| 7. Existence and effects of current and previous discharges and dumping in the area (including cumulative effects). | Short-term, long-term, and cumulative effects of dredged material disposal in the proposed ODMDS modification area would be similar to those for the existing ODMDS. |
40 CFR 228.6(a) Criteria | Alternative 1: Expansion of Existing ODMDS
---|---
8. Interference with shipping, fishing, recreation, mineral extraction, desalination, fish and shellfish culture, areas of special scientific importance, and other legitimate uses of the ocean. | Similar to the No Action Alternative, since the proposed ODMDS modification area is contiguous with the existing ODMDS.

9. Existing water quality and ecology of the site as determined by available data or by trend assessment or baseline surveys. | Similar to the No Action Alternative, since the proposed ODMDS modification area is contiguous with the existing ODMDS.

10. Potentiality for the development or recruitment of nuisance species in the disposal site. | Similar to the No Action Alternative, since the proposed ODMDS modification area is contiguous with the existing ODMDS.

11. Existence at or in close proximity to the site of any significant natural or cultural features of historical importance. | Surveys conducted in 2012-2013 did not identify any cultural features of historical importance.

**CONCLUSION**

Based on the analysis provided in this EA and evaluation of the alternatives with respect to the project need and potential issues, Alternative 1 is recommended as the Preferred Alternative. **Alternative 1 – Modification of the Charleston ODMDS:**

- Provides a long-term ocean disposal option for suitable dredged material from new work and maintenance projects in support of the Charleston Harbor Federal Navigation Project.
- Meets EPA’s general and specific criteria for site selection.
- Complies with all international, federal, state, and local regulations.
- Minimizes environmental and socioeconomic impacts because it is sufficiently removed from amenities such as beaches, heavily used shrimping grounds, shipping lanes, areas of hardbottom, artificial reefs, and sand borrow areas.
- Does not contain historic cultural resources.
- Is not located within designated critical habitat for threatened or endangered species.
- Formally de-designates 10.4 mi$^2$ (7.8 nmi$^2$) of restricted disposal area within the current Charleston ODMDS primarily west of the current disposal zone that contains widespread hardbottom habitat.
- Creates additional fish and benthic habitat as a result of berm construction.
1 PURPOSE AND NEED

1.1 PROJECT AUTHORITY

The Administrator of the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) has the authority to promulgate ocean dumping criteria, designate recommended ocean disposal sites, and issue permits for dumping materials (except for dredged material) into ocean waters. Under Sections 102 and 103 of the Marine Protection, Research, and Sanctuaries Act of 1972 (MPRSA), as amended (33 U.S.C. 1412), also known as the Ocean Dumping Act, EPA and the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) have the responsibility for ensuring that ocean dredged material disposal activities will not unreasonably degrade or endanger human health, welfare, amenities, or the marine environment.

MPRSA Section 102 authorizes EPA to designate sites and times at which dumping may occur and to establish criteria for reviewing and evaluating permit applications. It also requires EPA, in conjunction with USACE, to develop site management and monitoring plans (SMMPs) for dredged material disposal sites. MPRSA Section 103 authorizes USACE to issue permits for the transportation of dredged material, subject to compliance with EPA environmental criteria (Ocean Dumping Criteria at 40 CFR Part 227) and EPA concurrence with USACE’s finding of compliance. Section 103(b) authorizes USACE, with EPA concurrence, to select alternative project sites of limited duration for disposal of dredged material in ocean waters when the use of a site designated by EPA is not feasible.

1.1.1 CHARLESTON ODMDS BACKGROUND

It is EPA’s voluntary policy to prepare a National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) document for all ocean dredged material disposal site (ODMDS) designations (63 FR 58045, October 1998). The history of the Charleston ODMDS starts in the 1980’s and consists of numerous changing sites and sizes and placement areas within a large parallelogram. A Final Environmental Impact Statement (FEIS) in support of the original Charleston ODMDS designation offshore of Charleston, South Carolina, was published in October 1983. Based on the evaluation in the FEIS, the ~15-mi² Charleston Harbor Deepening Project ODMDS (the large parallelogram) was formally designated on August 3, 1987, along with a smaller 3-mi² site, the Charleston ODMDS (called “old disposal site” in Figure 1-1). The decision to designate the smaller 3-mi² site for permanent use by Charleston dredging projects was based on projected future disposal volumes and the ease of monitoring. The larger ~15-mi² Charleston Harbor Deepening Project site (for interim use) was designated for a 7-year period (1987-1994) with use restricted to harbor deepening material. The smaller, 3-mi² permanent Charleston ODMDS lies within the boundaries of and completely in the western portion of the larger Charleston Harbor Deepening Project ODMDS (the large parallelogram).

During the 1980s, additional benthic and sediment studies were conducted by the South Carolina Department of Natural Resources (SCDNR). In 1987, live bottoms were identified in the western portion of the ~15-mi² ODMDS (Larger ODMDS). Concerns regarding impacts to the living resources at the ODMDS encouraged EPA to place a restriction on the use of the ~15-mi² site. The final rule regarding this restriction was published in the Federal Register on March 5, 1991, stating, “Disposal shall be limited to dredged material from the Charleston Harbor area. All dredged material, except entrance channel material, shall be limited to that part of the site east of the line between coordinates 32°39′04″N, 79°44′25″W and 32°37′24″N, 79°45′30″W unless the material can be shown by sufficient testing to contain 10% or less of fine material (grain size of less than 0.074 mm) by weight and shown to be suitable for ocean
disposal.” This bisecting line was an immediate effort by EPA to protect live-bottom resources initially reported by fishermen. The line was set with limited knowledge of the exact location and extent of those resources, and was set in a location that was believed to be as protective as possible at that time.

During this same time frame, an interagency group (EPA, SCDNR, USACE, and South Carolina Ports Authority [SCPA]) began working together to develop a site monitoring and management plan (SMMP) for the ODMDS. As part of this process, construction of an L-shaped berm was developed approximately midway within the boundaries of the ODMDS to minimize sediment transport from the site. USACE began construction of the L-shaped berm using consolidated material from the 42-foot deepening project. Also, as part of the SMMP, the interagency group began looking for an area within the larger ODMDS for disposal of dredged material that would have the least impact on the live bottom resources in the western region of the site. A 4-mi² area (disposal zone) was identified within the eastern half of the designated ODMDS and placed in position with the L-shaped berm as part of the western ODMDS boundary. This location was approved by all the agencies involved and was placed where it would minimally impact reef habitat. In 1995, EPA de-designated the smaller 3-mi² site and modified the larger site to allow for continued disposal of all material, including both maintenance and deepening material. On June 6, 2002, EPA published a ruling in the Federal Register to define the 4-mi² disposal zone as the only area within the ODMDS in which disposal can continue; however, the ODMDS boundaries (the large parallelogram) were not changed (Figure 1-1).
The deepening of Charleston Harbor to -45 feet was authorized by the U.S. Congress in 1996. The project was planned to deepen the entrance channel from -42 feet to -47 feet, and the inner harbor channel from -40 feet to -45 feet. The project was initiated in July 1999 and completed in 2004. Approximately 22 million cubic yards (mcy) of sediment were disposed of in the 4-mi² disposal zone. Detailed information on disposal history is summarized in Table 2 of the SMMP (Appendix F).

1.2 PROJECT LOCATION
The existing Charleston ODMDS (parallelogram) is 15.1 mi² (12.1 nmi²), and the authorized disposal zone within the ODMDS is 4 mi² (3 nmi²) in size. The 4 mi² Charleston ODMDS disposal zone is approximately 9 mi (7.8 nmi) southeast of the entrance to Charleston Harbor, South Carolina, and 7 mi (6 nmi) from shore in approximately 40 feet of water (Figure 1-1). The proposed action evaluated in this Environmental Assessment (EA) is to modify the Charleston ODMDS by expanding the disposal zone to the north, south, and east by 5.8 mi² (4.4 nmi²) which will allow for a 9.8 mi² (7.4 nmi²) ODMDS. In addition, the proposed action will formally de-designate 10.4 mi² (7.8 nmi²) of restricted disposal area within the current Charleston ODMDS primarily west of the current disposal zone that contains widespread hardbottom habitat. Therefore, the overall footprint of the Charleston ODMDS will be decreased from 15.1 mi² to 9.8 mi². The need for modifying the Charleston ODMDS is described in Section 1.3. Alternative 1: Modification of the Charleston ODMDS, is described in detail in Chapter 2.

1.3 PROJECT NEED OR OPPORTUNITY
USACE Charleston District has requested that EPA Region 4 approve a modification of the existing Charleston ODMDS in accordance with Section 102 of the MPRSA to ensure that adequate environmentally acceptable and economically and logistically feasible ocean disposal site capacity is available for suitable dredged material generated from new work (deepening) and maintenance projects in support of the Charleston Harbor Federal Navigation Project and other local users. The extent of the Charleston Harbor navigation channel is illustrated in Figure 1-2. The availability of suitable ocean disposal sites to support ongoing navigation channel maintenance and capital improvement projects is essential for efficient commerce in the region.

Based on 2013 rankings, the Port of Charleston is one of the nation’s major ports, ranking 7th in the U.S. for value of cargo and 9th in terms of container traffic. In 2013, the Port of Charleston handled about 1.6 million 20-foot equivalent units (USACE 2014a). Shipping trends in Charleston show adherence to projections for considerable growth in ship size in all three dimensions: draft, beam, and length. As economies of scale and improved vessel technologies have driven ship sizes larger, the world’s port infrastructure must be rapidly expanded in channel depths and widths and in terminal capacity to accommodate larger ships. Given these trends, there is a need to deepen the navigation channel at Charleston Harbor to accommodate larger container vessels. These larger vessels, commonly referred to in the shipping industry as the “Super Post Panamax” ships, are expected to comprise greater percentages of vessel fleet composition over the next several decades. Additional channel depth will be required to serve existing users of Charleston Harbor by the time the transition from the current Panamax fleet is complete. Additional channel depth would allow current and future shippers to more fully utilize larger-class vessels and would reduce future anticipated congestion and would maximize the efficiency of the port. The current depth of the existing inner harbor channel is authorized at -45 feet MLLW. The depth of the entrance channel from the Atlantic Ocean through the jetties is authorized at -47 feet MLLW.
Figure 1-2. Charleston Harbor Federal Navigation Project and South Carolina Ports Authority Terminal Facilities

Source: USACE 2010
In response to the need to deepen the navigation channel, USACE Charleston District has prepared a Draft Integrated Feasibility Report and Environmental Impact Statement (FR/EIS) (USACE 2014a) that proposes several navigation improvements to meet anticipated shipping requirements. Navigation concerns include three main types of problems: insufficient federal channel depths, difficult currents, and restrictive channel widths and turning basins. The draft FR/EIS evaluates the economic benefits and potential environmental impacts of the proposed action and determines what depth would be recommended for construction. If authorized, this project will deepen the Charleston Harbor, allowing it to accommodate larger ships coming through an expanded Panama Canal and the existing Suez Canal. The feasibility study evaluated the benefits of measures such as channel deepening, widening, bend-easing, and turning-basin changes as well as non-structural measures such as light-loading, additional tug usage, and others.

Because of the importance of maintaining Charleston Harbor for shipping, the federal navigation project has historically and will continue to depend on having adequate and economically feasible alternatives for dredged material disposal. The two primary disposal options are ocean disposal and placement in upland confined disposal facilities (CDFs). According to USACE et al. (2005), the Charleston ODMDS is one of the most active, frequently used dredged material disposal sites in the South Atlantic Bight. The current proposed deepening plan has the new work material from the Entrance Channel and Lower Harbor reaches (including Wando River) placed offshore in the ODMDS, and the new work material from the Upper Harbor placed in the existing upland placement areas (USACE 2014b). Based on this proposed new work material and subsequent increase in maintenance material, the capacity needs have been examined to ensure that the ODMDS and upland placement areas have adequate capacity for the new work material while ensuring that capacity will be available for long-term future maintenance needs. The historic and future dredging volumes, long-term ocean disposal capacity needs, and current ODMDS capacity are described in the following sections.

1.3.1 MAINTENANCE AND NEW WORK DREDGING VOLUMES
Charleston Harbor is regularly maintained to its full authorized project depth and width to provide unrestricted navigation for ocean-going vessels calling upon the Port of Charleston. Dredging depths throughout the harbor vary widely due to shoaling and other natural processes. Rapid shoaling occurs in Fort Sumter Reach, Hog Island Reach, Drum Island Reach, Wando River Turning Basin, Daniel Island Reach, Ordnance Reach, and Ordnance Reach Turning Basin. Other reaches shoal less rapidly (Figure 1-3). Table 1.3-1 summarizes the historic maintenance dredging volumes (1994-2014) disposed of at the ODMDS. Since ODMDS's are typically designed for 25 years of anticipated sediment disposal, Table 1.3-2 summarizes anticipated operation and maintenance (O&M) quantities and placement areas for a 25-year period. The annual shoaling rate for maintenance material slated for placement at the Charleston ODMDS is estimated at approximately 1.4 mcy/year. This shoaling rate accounts for increased maintenance material associated with the proposed Post 45 harbor deepening project. The volume of maintenance material over a 25-year period is estimated at approximately 34.4 mcy.
Figure 1-3. Charleston Harbor Channel Reaches and Widenings

Source: USACE 2014a
Table 1.3-1. Dredging History (1994-2014) Volumes Placed at the Charleston ODMDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reach</th>
<th>1994-2014 Total (mcy)</th>
<th>1994-2014 Yearly Average (mcy)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ent. Channel, Fort Sumter, Mt. Pleasant</td>
<td>12.046</td>
<td>0.574</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rebellion Reach¹</td>
<td>0.053</td>
<td>0.003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folly Reach</td>
<td>0.009</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shutes Reach</td>
<td>0.005</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horse Reach</td>
<td>0.034</td>
<td>0.002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tidewater Reach</td>
<td>0.807</td>
<td>0.038</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom House Reach</td>
<td>0.745</td>
<td>0.035</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Town Creek Lower (w/ turning basin)</td>
<td>4.102</td>
<td>0.195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hog Island Reach</td>
<td>2.092</td>
<td>0.100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Town Creek Upper</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drum Island Reach</td>
<td>1.795</td>
<td>0.085</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myers Bend</td>
<td>0.375</td>
<td>0.034</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wando River Lower Reach</td>
<td>1.168</td>
<td>0.056</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wando Upper Turning Basin</td>
<td>1.820</td>
<td>0.087</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wando Upper Reach</td>
<td>1.720</td>
<td>0.082</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Totals</strong></td>
<td><strong>22.654</strong></td>
<td><strong>1.079</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Material from this reach is also placed at Daniel Island and Morris Island. Source: USACE 2014b
Table 1.3-2. Charleston Harbor O&M Quantities and Placement Areas for 25 Years

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Channel Reach</th>
<th>Placement Area</th>
<th>Shoaling Rate (cy/year)</th>
<th>Total O&amp;M Quantity in 25 Years (cy)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fort Sumter Reach/Entrance Channel</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>519,000</td>
<td>12,975,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mt. Pleasant Reach</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rebellion Reach</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>923</td>
<td>23,075</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bennis Reach</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>37,264</td>
<td>931,600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horse Reach</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>16,035</td>
<td>400,875</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hog Island Reach</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>179,838</td>
<td>4,495,950</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wando River Lower Reach</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>69,984</td>
<td>1,749,600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wando River Upper Reach</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>101,985</td>
<td>2,549,625</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wando River Turning Basin</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>263,097</td>
<td>6,577,425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drum Island Reach</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>131,287</td>
<td>3,282,175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myers Bend</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>55,119</td>
<td>1,377,975</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ODMDS Total</strong></td>
<td><strong>ODMDS</strong></td>
<td><strong>1,374,532</strong></td>
<td><strong>34,363,300</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daniel Island Reach</td>
<td>Clouter Creek</td>
<td>231,652</td>
<td>5,791,300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daniel Island Bend</td>
<td>Clouter Creek</td>
<td>10,497</td>
<td>262,425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clouter Creek Reach</td>
<td>Clouter Creek</td>
<td>33,501</td>
<td>837,525</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Navy Yard Reach</td>
<td>Clouter Creek</td>
<td>21,520</td>
<td>538,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>North Charleston Reach</td>
<td>Clouter Creek</td>
<td>5,104</td>
<td>127,600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Filbin Creek Reach</td>
<td>Clouter Creek</td>
<td>10,742</td>
<td>268,550</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Filbin/Port Terminal Intersect</td>
<td>Clouter Creek</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Port Terminal Reach</td>
<td>Clouter Creek</td>
<td>14,581</td>
<td>364,525</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ordnance Reach</td>
<td>Clouter Creek</td>
<td>166,433</td>
<td>4,160,825</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ordnance Reach Turning Basin</td>
<td>Clouter Creek</td>
<td>532,713</td>
<td>13,317,825</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Upland Disposal Areas</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>1,026,743</strong></td>
<td><strong>25,668,575</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Adapted from Table 4-2 from USACE 2014a

In addition to routine maintenance material being placed on an annual basis at the Charleston ODMDS, new work material from the Charleston Harbor Post 45 Deepening Project will also require disposal in the Charleston ODMDS. Table 1.3-3 summarizes how new work material from Charleston Harbor Post 45 channel deepening and widening would be distributed among the ODMDS, two mitigation sites, six reef placement sites, a SCDNR site, and upland confined disposal areas (USACE 2014a). Section 4.2.6 (Beneficial Use of Dredged Material) of the FR/EIS provides more detailed descriptions of the mitigation, reef placement, and SCDNR sites. The expected new work dredging volume based on the maximum future Charleston Harbor Post 45 deepening project is approximately 41 mcy.
Table 1.3-3. Estimated Volumes of Dredge Material from the Post 45 Deepening Project

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Channel Reach</th>
<th>Placement Area</th>
<th>Deepening Dredge Quantity (cy)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fort Sumter Reach EC1</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>2,357,022</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort Sumter Reach EC1</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>3,928,371</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort Sumter Reach EC1</td>
<td>ODMDS Berm</td>
<td>2,266,766</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort Sumter Reach EC1</td>
<td>DNR Site</td>
<td>60,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort Sumter Reach EC1</td>
<td>Reef Placement</td>
<td>420,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort Sumter Reach EC1</td>
<td>ODMDS Berm</td>
<td>660,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort Sumter Reach EC1</td>
<td>Mitigation Site</td>
<td>360,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort Sumter Reach EC1</td>
<td>DNR Site</td>
<td>180,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort Sumter Reach EC2</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>1,943,512</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort Sumter Reach EC2</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>2,915,267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort Sumter Reach EC2</td>
<td>ODMDS Berm</td>
<td>3,346,872</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort Sumter Reach EC2</td>
<td>Reef Placement</td>
<td>420,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort Sumter Reach EC2</td>
<td>Reef Placement</td>
<td>1,080,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mount Pleasant Reach</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>840,083</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rebellion Reach</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>1,081,341</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bennis Reach</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>1,942,858</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horse Reach</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>350,996</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hog Island Reach</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>2,109,994</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wando River Lower Reach</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>1,769,070</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wando River Upper Reach</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>636,251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wando River Turning Basin</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>3,284,633</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Segment 1 Total</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>31,953,036</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drum Island Reach</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>917,473</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myers Bend</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>853,889</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daniel Island Reach</td>
<td>Daniel Island</td>
<td>2,211,957</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Segment 2 Total</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>3,983,119</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daniel Island Bend</td>
<td>Daniel Island</td>
<td>74,551</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clouter Creek Reach</td>
<td>Daniel Island</td>
<td>583,150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Navy Yard Reach</td>
<td>Clouter Creek</td>
<td>358,816</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>North Charleston Reach</td>
<td>Clouter Creek</td>
<td>532,693</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Filbin Creek Reach</td>
<td>Yellowhouse</td>
<td>405,420</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Filbin/Port Terminal Intersect</td>
<td>Yellowhouse</td>
<td>31,692</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Port Terminal Reach</td>
<td>Yellowhouse</td>
<td>160,376</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ordnance Reach</td>
<td>Yellowhouse</td>
<td>118,091</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ordnance Reach Turning Basin</td>
<td>Yellowhouse</td>
<td>1,549,313</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Segment 3 Total</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>3,814,102</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>North Charleston Terminal Berthing Area Dredging</td>
<td>Yellowhouse</td>
<td>41,001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Navy Base Terminal Berthing Area Dredging</td>
<td>Daniel Island</td>
<td>474,551</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wando Terminal Berthing Area Dredging</td>
<td>Daniel Island</td>
<td>157,633</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Berthing Areas Total</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>673,185</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total Construction</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>40,423,442</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ODMDS Total</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>31,204,198</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: USACE 2014a
Table 1.3-4 summarizes the total volume of dredged material expected to be placed in the Charleston ODMDS over a 25-year period from both routine O&M dredging and proposed new work (Post 45 deepening). The expected volume from O&M projects is approximately 34.4 mcy over a 25-year timeframe (see Table 1.3-2). The O&M volume includes increased shoaling associated with the proposed Post 45 harbor deepening project. The expected volume from the deepening project is approximately 31.2 mcy (see Table 1.3-3). Therefore, the total expected disposal volume for 25 years would be approximately 65.6 mcy of material.

### Table 1.3-4. Estimated Volume of New Work and Maintenance Material to Be Disposed of in the Charleston ODMDS during a 25-year Timeframe

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Material</th>
<th>New Work (mcy)</th>
<th>O&amp;M (mcy)</th>
<th>Total (mcy)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 to 25-year estimate</td>
<td>31.2</td>
<td>34.4</td>
<td>65.6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1.3.2 CAPACITY OF THE EXISTING CHARLESTON ODMDS

The existing 4-mi² disposal zone within the Charleston ODMDS is illustrated in Figure 1-1. The current capacity of the site was estimated using Hypack and GIS software rather than capacity modeling software. Based on those calculations, it is estimated that the Charleston ODMDS currently has a capacity of approximately 25 mcy (USACE 2014b). That capacity may increase slightly to approximately 29 to 31 mcy when South Carolina State Ports Authority (SCSPA) removes approximately 4 to 6 mcy of material from the site to use for their North Charleston terminal construction under a lease agreement with Bureau of Ocean Energy Management (BOEM) (USACE 2014b, BOEM and SCSPA 2015). Since the methods used in the recent capacity analysis assume that the sediment will be deposited in a box configuration, they result in a large overestimate of the amount of capacity. Based on an estimated capacity of 29 mcy and a projected maintenance material disposal volume of 1.4 mcy per year, the Charleston ODMDS has a remaining capacity of approximately 21 years at a clearance of -25 feet MLLW. However, that calculation accounts only for maintenance material, not new work material associated with the Post 45 deepening project. Because the current capacity is an overestimate of the actual capacity, the current capacity of the Charleston ODMDS is not sufficient to accommodate the new work material while providing enough capacity for the long-term O&M needs. Based on these estimates, USACE has determined that the Post 45 deepening project and continued maintenance of Charleston Harbor would generate sufficient dredged material to affect the existing capacity of the Charleston ODMDS. Therefore, USACE has determined that modification of the existing Charleston ODMDS disposal zone will be needed to efficiently accommodate dredged material from the deepening project and to maintain existing dredged material management options for O&M dredging. The need for additional ocean disposal is based primarily on the lack of economically, logistically, and environmentally feasible alternatives for the disposal of the quantities of dredged material deemed unsuitable for beach renourishment or beach placement.

### 1.4 AGENCY GOAL OR OBJECTIVE

The Post 45 deepening project is nationally significant, as evidenced by its designation by President Obama as a "We Can't Wait" initiative project. Under the "We Can't Wait" initiative, the Office of Management and Budget is charged with overseeing a government-wide effort to make the permitting and review process for infrastructure projects more efficient and effective. This timely completion is a national priority, and the responsible expansion of the ODMDS is a critical component of that commitment.
To ensure that sufficient ocean disposal capacity is available for new work material generated from the Charleston Harbor Post 45 Deepening project, USACE is requesting an MPRSA Section 102 site modification of the existing Charleston ODMDS to modify the disposal site. In accordance with the April 30, 2007, Memorandum of Understanding (MOU) between USACE and EPA, USACE has coordinated with EPA Region 4 to prepare this EA to address the alternatives, affected environment, and environmental effects of the proposed ODMDS modification. The purpose of this proposed action is to provide Charleston Harbor with a long-term and environmentally acceptable site for disposal of maintenance dredged material and new material from proposed deepening projects.

1.5 RELATED ENVIRONMENTAL DOCUMENTS

This section provides a list of key environmental documents that were used to demonstrate the need for modifying the existing Charleston ODMDS and describe the existing environmental resources in the project area.


*An Assessment of Benthic Infaunal Assemblages and Sediments in the Vicinity of the Charleston Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Area, Marine Resources Research Institute South Carolina Department of Natural Resources, March 1997.*

*Analysis of Sediments and Habitat in the Areas Surrounding the Charleston Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site, Including Unauthorized Disposal Operations, Marine Resources Research Institute South Carolina Department of Natural Resources, February 2001.*

*Disposed Material Mobility and Transport in the Vicinity of the Charleston Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site, Georgia. Coastal Processes and Sediment Dynamics Laboratory Marine Science Program – Department of Geological Sciences University of South Carolina, June 2002.*

*An Environmental Assessment of the Charleston Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site and Surrounding Areas: Physical and Biological Conditions after Partial Completion of the Charleston Harbor Deepening Project, Marine Resources Research Institute South Carolina Department of Natural Resources, July 2002.*

*Post Disposal Areal Mapping of Sediment Chemistry at the Charleston, South Carolina ODMDS, South Carolina Department of Natural Resources, April 28, 2003.*

*An Environmental Assessment of the Charleston Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site and Surrounding Areas: Physical and Biological Conditions after Completion of the Charleston Harbor Deepening Project, Marine Resources Research Institute South Carolina Department of Natural Resources, January 2005.*

*Utilizing Gamma Isotope Tracers to Determine Sediment Source at Reef Sites near the Charleston Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site, The University of Georgia Center for Applied Isotope Studies, October 27, 2004.*

*Utilizing Gamma Isotope Tracers to Determine Sediment Source at Reef Sites near the Charleston Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site (Phase II), The University of Georgia Center for Applied Isotope Studies, August 2005.*

An Environmental Monitoring Study of Hard Bottom Reef Areas Near the Charleston Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site, South Carolina Department of Natural Resources Center for Marine and Wetland Studies, Coastal Carolina University Center for Applied Isotope Studies, University of Georgia, March 2006.

Hardbottom and Cultural Resource Surveys of the Post 45 Charleston Harbor Project Study Area, Charleston, South Carolina, Burroughs and Chapin Center for Marine and Wetland, January 2013.

Charleston Harbor ODMDS Current and Wave Measurements Regional Sediment Management Current and Wave Measurements, U.S Environmental Protection Agency Region 4 Coastal and Ocean Protection Section Water Protection Division and the Ecological Evaluation Section Science and Ecosystem Support Division, November 2012 through May 2014.


1.6 SCOPING AND ISSUES

1.6.1 NOTICE OF INTENT AND SCOPING PERIOD

A Notice of Intent (NOI) to prepare an EA for the designation of an expanded ODMDS offshore of Charleston, South Carolina, was published on December 31, 2012, in the Federal Register (Letter #5, Appendix A). The closing date for the scoping comment period was set for March 1, 2013 (60 days). EPA requested written comments from federal, state, and local governments; industry; non-governmental organizations; and the general public on the range of alternatives considered, specific environmental issues to be evaluated, and the potential impacts of the alternatives.

SCDNR submitted a response to EPA on February 13, 2013 (Letter #6, Appendix A) and expressed concern about potential adverse impacts of the proposed expansion on aquatic resources, particularly hardbottom habitats and the live-bottom communities they support. Recommendations included:

- Maximize the usefulness of existing data.
- Minimize the extent of any unavoidable impacts to hardbottom habitat.
- Extend the existing berm to include the west and south sides of the expanded disposal area to prevent the migration of disposed dredged material into hardbottom areas.
- Construct a new berm along the north side of the expanded disposal area (monitoring cells D5 and D6) if substantial areas of live-bottom habitat are found in the cells north of the disposal area.
- Minimize encroachment into previously undisturbed soft-bottom areas to the extent possible.
- Conduct capacity computer modeling to determine the size of the expansion area needed to accommodate the anticipated volume of new work and maintenance material from the Charleston Harbor Deepening Project.
• Limit expansion to the smallest area needed to achieve this goal while also maintaining a statistically comparable monitoring schematic with SCDNR.

• Avoid expansion into monitoring cells D11 and D12 if possible.

SCPA, the local sponsor for the Post 45 deepening project, submitted a response to EPA on February 21, 2013 (Letter #7, Appendix A). The SCPA supports timely and responsible expansion of the ODMDS to accommodate dredge material from the Post 45 project. The removal of approximately 4 mcy of dredge material from the existing ODMDS for beneficial reuse in the construction of the new terminal at the former Charleston Navy Base will minimize and reduce the size of the needed expansion. In conjunction with expansion to the north, south, and east, SCPA supports the proposed de-designation on the west side of the ODMDS.

National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS) submitted a response to EPA on February 26, 2013, (Letter #8, Appendix A) and expressed concern about adverse impacts to all marine habitats. Impacts to hardbottom would be of highest concern. Recommendations include the following:

• If the hardbottom supports extensive benthic communities, every effort should be made to avoid expanding the Charleston ODMDS into these areas.

• Include in the new management plan for the ODMDS substantial measures to reduce the likelihood that disposed dredged material would migrate into these habitats.

To address concerns raised by resource agencies about impacts to areas with hardbottom, surveys were conducted to identify and delineate areas of hardbottom prior to selecting the proposed expansion area.

1.6.2 INTERAGENCY COORDINATION

Prior to issuing the NOI, USACE and EPA consulted with state and federal agencies to get input on the proposed action to modify the Charleston ODMDS and resource concerns associated with that action. On January 5, 2012, USACE met with Dr. Bob Van Dolah, Director of the Marine Resources Research Institute for SCDNR (now retired), to gauge a response of how using the existing designated ODMDS and up to approximately 1 mile from the boundary perimeter would meet the Department's policies and guidelines. The general response from SCDNR about using this mostly designated area was acceptable but it was suggested to augment the plan based on the established monitoring zones. Because of the knowledge of hardbottom habitat west of the 4 mi² disposal zone, the specific SCDNR monitoring cells originally considered for expansion were the inner zones (IA-IF) and the outer zones (OA-OF). USACE understands that this site modification will involve coordination with the resource agencies to develop a new SMMP which will require approval by the EPA.

The agencies worked jointly with the South Carolina Marine Resources Research Institute to identify and design any field studies deemed necessary to support the modification. USACE also provided contractor sampling and analysis support for these studies. Extensive studies have been conducted within the current ODMDS and the surrounding area. As requested by the EPA, areas of concern that required additional research include essential fish habitat, cultural and historical resources, and a more detailed capacity analysis of the existing site and proposed expansion area. Results from these studies are presented in this EA.

This document is intended to provide sufficient information to determine compliance with the National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA), the National Historic Preservation Act (NHPA), the
Coastal Zone Management Act (CZMA), the Endangered Species Act (ESA), and the Magnuson–Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (MSA).

### 1.6.3 PROJECT COORDINATION

Although a separate FR/EIS document is being prepared for the Charleston Harbor Post 45 Deepening Project, it is closely linked to this proposed action of modifying the Charleston ODMDS because of the need to ensure there is adequate capacity for disposal of dredged material generated during the deepening. Therefore, internal coordination between these projects has been conducted with the personnel from the USACE Charleston District and EPA Region 4. The projects and NEPA documents have been planned and coordinated to the extent possible with regard to timeframes in which additional capacity may be required. Also, information has been shared between the two projects with regard to need, estimated dredged material volumes, and potential impacts associated with disposal. Without the deepening project, the need to modify the ODMDS still exists for long-term management of maintenance material, but the size of the site would not need to be as large. However, given that this project is in the final stages of the NEPA process, there is reasonable assurance that the deepening will move forward.

### 1.6.4 DRAFT EA / RESOURCE AGENCY MEETING

The complete Draft EA, including appendices, was circulated for public review and comment between December 4, 2015 and January 19, 2016 (46 days). Comments were provided in writing (by mail, facsimile, or electronic mail). Comments received on the Draft EA and appendices during the public comment period and the resource agency meeting are included in Appendix A. Comments responses are also included in Appendix A. The Final EA incorporates responses to comments as appropriate.

A resource agency meeting on the Draft EA was held on January 7, 2016, at the USACE Charleston District Headquarters, 69A Hagood Avenue, Charleston South Carolina 29403-5107 from 9:00 AM to 11:30 AM. The meeting presentation and minutes are provided in Appendix A. A follow up meeting to discuss details of the Site Management and Monitoring Plan will be conducted with the resource agencies in Spring/Summer 2016.

### 1.6.5 FINAL EA / PROPOSED RULE

The Final EA and SMMMP will be circulated for 30 days for public review and comment. Comments must be provided in writing (by mail, facsimile, or electronic mail). A Proposed Rule will be published in the Federal Register. Any comments received during the 30-day review period will be responded to and included with the Final Rulemaking.

### 1.6.6 FINAL RULE / SITE DESIGNATION

EPA will prepare a Final Rulemaking that will state what the agency decision is, identify all alternatives considered, and state whether all practical means to avoid or minimize environmental harm from the proposed action have been adopted (see 40 CFR §1505.2). Site designation will become effective 30 days after publication of the Final Rulemaking in the Federal Register.

### 1.7 PERMITS, LICENSES, AND ENTITLEMENTS

EPA Region 4 and USACE Charleston District share responsibility for management of the Charleston ODMDS under the MPRSA. The MPRSA assigns basic responsibility to EPA and USACE for ensuring that ocean dredged material disposal activities will not unreasonably
degrade or endanger human health, welfare, amenities, or the marine environment (MPRSA Sections 102 and 103). Section 102 of the MPRSA authorizes EPA to designate sites or times at which dumping may occur and to establish criteria for reviewing and evaluating permit applications. It also requires EPA, in conjunction with USACE, to develop site-specific SMMPs for each ODMDS. Section 103 of the MPRSA authorizes USACE to issue permits for the transportation of dredged material, subject to compliance with EPA environmental criteria (Ocean Dumping Criteria at 40 CFR Part 227) and EPA concurrence with USACE’s finding of compliance. Section 103(b) authorizes USACE, with EPA concurrence, to select alternative project sites of limited duration for disposal of dredged material in ocean waters when the use of a site designated by EPA is not feasible.

During preparation of this EA, a process of coordination and concurrence has been conducted through the distribution of the EA to federal and state agencies, offices, and organizations having authority over issues associated with this action. Appendix A of the Final EA includes letters of concurrence, recommendations, or approvals from the following entities:

- NMFS and USFWS: Informal consultation pursuant to Section 7 of the Endangered Species Act for species under their jurisdiction.
- NMFS: Essential fish habitat consultation and conservation recommendations pursuant to section 305(b)(2) of the MSA.
- South Carolina Department of Natural Resources – Coordination and recommendations regarding any potential impacts to aquatic resources.
- South Carolina Department of Health and Environmental Control (SCDHEC) and Office of Ocean and Coastal Resource Management (OCRM): Coastal Zone Consistency (CZC) concurrence that the proposed federal project is consistent with the policies of the South Carolina Coastal Zone Management Act.
- South Carolina State Historic Preservation Office (SHPO): Concurrence that the proposed federal project is consistent with the National Historic Preservation Act (NHPA).
- Bureau of Ocean Energy Management (BOEM) – Coordination regarding any potential overlap with offshore energy development.
This page intentionally left blank.
2 ALTERNATIVES

This chapter describes the No Action alternative and the alternatives that were considered during project planning. Section 2.1 discusses the alternatives that were carried forward and evaluated in detail. Section 2.2 discusses the alternatives that were considered but not carried forward for detailed evaluation. Based on the information and analysis presented in Sections 3 and 4 on the Affected Environment and the Environmental Effects, Section 2.6 summarizes the beneficial and adverse environmental effects of the preferred alternative (see Tables 2.6-1 and 2.6-2) and compliance with EPA selection criteria.

The process for selecting a location for the ODMDS modification involves a screening process that incorporates the best available information (e.g., studies and long-term monitoring efforts, input from resource agencies, public, and stakeholders, GIS layers) to identify sensitive and incompatible use areas. As part of the information gathering process and to help with identifying a suitable ODMDS modification area, USACE and EPA

- Discussed the proposed project among agencies and potential stakeholders
- Solicited feedback on concerns and recommendations regarding the proposed action
- Obtained additional information about potential resources that may be impacted in the region of interest
- Discussed how these impacts can be avoided and/or mitigated

Sensitive and incompatible areas include the following:

- Shipping lanes, anchorage areas, and navigation restrictions
- Essential fish habitat (EFH), including habitat areas of particular concern (HAPC)
- Breeding, spawning, nursery, feeding, or passage areas of living resources
- Geographically limited fisheries and shellfisheries
- Shrimp trawling areas
- Areas of hard and live bottom
- Artificial reefs and fish havens
- Threatened and endangered species and critical habitat
- Mineral extraction sites (sand borrow areas)
- Significant natural or cultural resources of historical importance

The description of these resources is provided in detail in Chapter 3. The goal is to use this information to identify the most economically feasible and logistically practical site possible while minimizing impacts to environmental and socioeconomic resources.

2.1 DESCRIPTION OF ALTERNATIVES EVALUATED IN DETAIL

This section describes the alternatives that were considered during project planning and carried forward for detailed evaluation.

2.1.1 NO ACTION ALTERNATIVE

The No Action Alternative is defined as not modifying the existing Charleston ODMDS disposal zone pursuant to MPRSA Section 102. The current capacity of the existing 4-m² disposal zone
within the ODMDS is approximately 29.5 mcy (USACE 2014b). If no action is taken, the estimated volume of dredge material from the Post 45 deepening project that is slated for ocean disposal will fill the existing Charleston ODMDS almost to capacity. There would not be enough capacity left for disposal of O&M projects that are expected to generate approximately 1.4 mcy of dredge material per year. The No Action Alternative could result in limiting the long-term use of the site and the amount of dredged material that could be removed from the Charleston Harbor navigation channels and berths per dredging event. This, in turn, could impact operations by restricting vessel drafts and access to areas that were unable to be dredged to authorized project depths. The No Action Alternative fails to fulfill the need and objective to provide a long-term ocean disposal option for suitable dredged material generated from new projects and maintenance projects in support of the Charleston Harbor Federal Navigation Project and other local users. The availability of suitable ocean disposal sites to support ongoing navigation channel maintenance and capital improvement projects is essential for continued efficient commerce in the region.

While NEPA requires its consideration, the No Action Alternative does not meet the proposed action’s purpose and need. The No Action Alternative does provide a basis to compare the effects of the other alternatives evaluated and is therefore carried forward in the analysis.

2.1.2 ALTERNATIVE 1: MODIFICATION OF THE CHARLESTON ODMDS

The proposed ODMDS modification (Alternative 1) consists of the addition of a 5.8-mi² area (4.4 nm²) along the northern, eastern, and southern boundaries of the existing Charleston ODMDS disposal zone (Figure 2-1). This area would be added to the existing 4-mi² (3 nm²) disposal zone and would be designated for disposal of dredged material from the future harbor deepening projects and routine maintenance material from the Charleston Harbor Navigation Project and other local users. The new Charleston ODMDS would have a total area comprising 9.8 mi². Within the larger ODMDS, a dump zone is proposed that will serve as the boundaries that ocean dumping will occur in. This dump zone within the ODMDS was modeled using Long Term Fate and Multiple Placement Fate models (described more below, Figure 2-2). As part of the final EPA rulemaking, Alternative 1 would also include de-designating the remaining area within the boundaries of the existing 12 nm² Charleston ODMDS (parallelogram) located primarily in the western portion of the site that is not included in the disposal zone or the proposed modification area (see the crosshatched area in Figure 2-1). The area to be de-designated is approximately 10.4 mi² (7.8 nm²) in size and contains documented hardbottom habitat.

The size of the proposed ODMDS modification area is based on the current capacity of the existing disposal zone within the Charleston ODMDS, historical dredging volumes, future dredging volumes for new work and maintenance projects, estimated shoaling rates, modeling of the dump zone for the site, and capacity of upland CDFs in the area. Coordinates and areas for the existing Charleston ODMDS, current disposal zone, the proposed ODMDS modification area (Alternative 1), and modified dump zone are presented in Table 2.1-1.
Figure 2-1
Alternative 1 - Charleston ODMDS Modification With Nearby Resources

Legend
- Alternative 1 - Charleston ODMDS Modification
- Charleston ODMDS Modification
- Currently Occupied Carcass ODMDS Occupied Zone
- Area To Be Euthanized
- Proposed ODMDS Farm
- Port Junction
- Invisible Heat Reject
- EODS-DOEC Area
- Seed Source Area
- Permitting Area
- Artificial Reef

Legend:
- Alternative 1 - Charleston ODMDS Modification
- Charleston ODMDS Modification
- Currently Occupied Carcass ODMDS Occupied Zone
- Area To Be Euthanized
- Proposed ODMDS Farm
- Port Junction
- Invisible Heat Reject
- EODS-DOEC Area
- Seed Source Area
- Permitting Area
- Artificial Reef

This map and/or digital data is for planning purposes only and should not be used to determine the precise location of any feature. Data provided is as is. Q = CI/NOAA Charleston ODMDS Project
Data sources: ANAMAR, USAEC, NOAA
Table 2.1-1. Coordinates and Total Area for the Existing Charleston ODMDS, the Current ODMDS Disposal Zone, the Proposed Alternative Site 1, and the Proposed Dump Site within Alternative Site 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Site</th>
<th>Geographic (NAD83, Decimal Degrees)</th>
<th>State Plane (South Carolina US Survey Feet)</th>
<th>Area (nmi²)</th>
<th>Area (mi²)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Latitude</td>
<td>Longitude</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Existing ODMDS</td>
<td>Center</td>
<td>32.64305</td>
<td>-79.76083</td>
<td>296905.944</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SE</td>
<td>32.60778</td>
<td>-79.73000</td>
<td>284189.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SW</td>
<td>32.65111</td>
<td>-79.82250</td>
<td>299616.976</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NW</td>
<td>32.67833</td>
<td>-79.79167</td>
<td>309629.826</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NE</td>
<td>32.63500</td>
<td>-79.69917</td>
<td>294211.029</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current ODMDS Disposal Zone</td>
<td>Center</td>
<td>32.63698</td>
<td>-79.75049</td>
<td>294735.672</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SE</td>
<td>32.61733</td>
<td>-79.74381</td>
<td>287612.755</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SW</td>
<td>32.63142</td>
<td>-79.77367</td>
<td>292628.223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NW</td>
<td>32.65663</td>
<td>-79.75716</td>
<td>301860.205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NE</td>
<td>32.64257</td>
<td>-79.72733</td>
<td>296857.002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alternative 1</td>
<td>Center</td>
<td>32.63522</td>
<td>-79.73939</td>
<td>294137.61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(including current disposal zone)</td>
<td>SE</td>
<td>32.60467</td>
<td>-79.72770</td>
<td>283067.786</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SW</td>
<td>32.62744</td>
<td>-79.77627</td>
<td>291170.826</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NW</td>
<td>32.66571</td>
<td>-79.75113</td>
<td>305185.821</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NE</td>
<td>32.64299</td>
<td>-79.70253</td>
<td>297104.717</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alternative 1 modeled dump zone</td>
<td>SE</td>
<td>32.62953</td>
<td>-79.76731</td>
<td>291963.450</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SW</td>
<td>32.61220</td>
<td>-79.73030</td>
<td>285797.391</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NW</td>
<td>32.63817</td>
<td>-79.71280</td>
<td>295312.397</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NE</td>
<td>32.65600</td>
<td>-79.75011</td>
<td>301659.432</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To determine if the Alternative 1 size and location would meet the project needs of accommodating the dredged material from the Post 45 deepening project and 25 years of maintenance material, an analysis was conducted using the Alternative 1 configuration (USACE 2015, Appendix D). The study modeled the long-term fate of dredged material at the Alternative 1 site over a period of 25 years to demonstrate that material would not accumulate to an elevation less than -25 feet MLLW (which could pose a navigation hazard) or exceed the 5-cm deposition contour outside the boundaries of the site (general guidance provided by EPA).

ODMDS capacity is defined as the quantity of material that can be placed within the legally designated disposal site without extending beyond the site boundaries or interfering with navigation (Poindexter-Rollings 1990). Modeling was conducted to determine the extent to which the existing Charleston ODMDS disposal zone needs to be modified/expanded to accommodate dredged material from the proposed Post 45 deepening project as well as 25 years of subsequent maintenance (USACE 2015, Appendix D). The Multiple Placement FATE (MPFATE) and Long Term FATE (LTFATE) models were used to simulate placement, erosion, and transport of dredged material over a 25-year period. The modeling effort takes into account subsequent erosion and transport due to storms, waves, and currents to help determine
the smallest ODMDS feasible for achieving the objectives and minimizing impacts to nearby habitat. The new ODMDS must be large enough to allow distribution of dredged material over a large enough area so that excessive vertical accumulation of placed dredged material is avoided (USACE and USEPA 2012). The objectives of the modeling study were to demonstrate that:

1. Dredged material disposed within the proposed ODMDS will not accumulate to an elevation less than -25 feet MLLW, which could pose a navigational hazard, and
2. Dredged material will stay within the site boundaries as defined by the 5-cm deposition contour (general guidance provided by EPA).

Figure 2-2 shows the potential MPFATE placement sites q1 and q2 that were modeled. The blue polygon in this figure represents the approximate location of the limestone rock berm that is proposed to be constructed. After construction of this berm, all subsequent material would be placed within cells q1 and q2 consistent with the SMMP. A buffer width of approximately 2000 feet from the border of the ODMDS was used for the perimeter of the placement areas. The buffer was approximately 3000 feet on the northern side of the placement areas where no berm will be constructed. The placement locations within each site were varied to optimize the disposal operation efforts and avoid disposal in shallow areas. Modeling efforts utilize existing information to make informed decisions about the potential future use. Management of the site in accordance with the SMMP provides the most efficient and flexible long term management program. The placement in MPFATE allows for some randomization in placement location, vessel speed, and vessel direction. Placement location was randomly varied within a radius of 50 feet from the target location, vessel speed and direction at time of release was varied between 1 to 3 knots and ±10 degrees (USACE 2015, Appendix D).
Figure 2-3 depicts the variation of water depths throughout the Alternative 1 site at the end of the 25-year simulation period. This figure indicates that there are no violations of the -25 feet MLLW criterion. Figure 2-4 shows the change in bottom elevations throughout the Alternative 1 site at the end of the 25-year simulation. The white areas around the perimeter and inside the ODMDS depict areas with less than 5 cm of deposition, indicating that the deposition criteria are satisfied.
After determining that the modeling study objectives would be met, an additional GIS analysis was performed to estimate the total amount of material that could be deposited in the ODMDS dump zone. The analysis was based upon the existing bathymetry in the area, the average bathymetry of the area, a 10:1 (H:V) slope, and the dump zone modeled in the MPFATE modeling analysis. Based on calculations from two different GIS technicians, the estimated capacity of the modified dump zone in the ODMDS configuration would be approximately 75 mcy. These studies confirm that the size and location of the site are adequate to accommodate the dredged material from the Post 45 deepening project and 25 years of maintenance material (approximately 65.6 mcy), and that the proposed ODMDS and dump site are reasonably minimized.
The Alternative 1 perimeter in relation to nearby resources is depicted in Figure 2-1. A survey was conducted in 2012-2013 to delineate hardbottom areas and identify possible cultural resources within the proposed ODMDS modification area (Gayes et al. 2013). The survey consisted of sidescan sonar, subbottom profiling, and magnetometer mapping. Figure 2-1 depicts the hardbottom (red) and probable hardbottom (green) areas mapped in the vicinity of the proposed ODMDS modification area. Results of these surveys identified an area of hardbottom habitat inside of the original southern boundary of the proposed modified ODMDS. In an effort to avoid impacts to hardbottom habitat, the southern boundary was moved farther north to provide a 100-meter buffer from the mapped hardbottom areas. Additionally, a 2.4-acre area straddling the northern boundary was identified as probable hardbottom. Of that 2.4-acre area, approximately 1.6 acres are within the site itself which amounts to 0.04% of the entire ODMDS modification area. More details on hardbottom resources in the vicinity of the ODMDS are provided in Section 3.4.

To help protect nearby hardbottom habitat from being buried by sediment migrating from the ODMDS, limestone rock material dredged from deepening the entrance channel will be beneficially used to construct a U-shaped berm along the east, south, and west perimeters of the modified ODMDS (Figure 2-1). Although there is probable hardbottom located north of Alternative 1, it is currently anticipated that no berm will be constructed along the northern...
boundary because scows and barges will be entering the ODMDS from the north. However, as stated above, the modeling for this project applied a 3000-foot buffer along the northern perimeter of the ODMDS where disposal will not occur. This buffer will provide adequate protection to probable hardbottom areas to the north of the site. Also, predominant net transport is generally from NE to SW and is influenced by local and regional wind and current patterns as well as periodic storm events. Therefore, sediment transport is not expected to impact probable hardbottom areas to the north of the site.

The berm area within the ODMDS represents approximately 427 acres. To comply with guidance in 40 CFR 227.28 regarding the release zone, the berm construction material would be disposed of 100 meters (328 feet) inside the edge of the ODMDS. The dimensions of the berm would be approximately 15,000 feet x 16,000 feet x 15,000 x 400 feet for the western, southern, eastern sides and width, respectively. The berm would be built on roughly a 3:1 slope. The height of the berm would be 10 feet off the bottom elevation and no higher than -25 feet MLLW. This estimated berm configuration was used in the ODMDS capacity modeling. In practice, dredging and disposal methods will not create this exact configuration; however, dredgers will be directed to dispose of rock material at this berm and place it along transects provided to the contractor by USACE. Monitoring of the berm construction will allow for USACE and EPA to verify a similar configuration to the conceptual design.

The berm would serve multiple purposes, including supplementing hardbottom habitat, providing additional fish habitat, and containment of dredged material within the site. This beneficial use project would use smaller rock material dredged with a cutterhead dredge to create the base of the berm, and the outer portion of the berm would be created with larger rock dredged with a clamshell dredge from the entrance channel. The larger rock would provide increased surface area, which would enhance the habitat value. In addition to sediment containment, the benefits from the construction of this berm are the creation of valuable fish habitat and benthic habitat for sessile corals/sponges/etc. The creation of this berm is supported by resource agencies, including the SCDNR.

Results from the cultural resources survey indicate that there are no significant cultural resources within the proposed ODMDS modification area. Most of the magnetic anomalies identified in the survey are emblematic of the modern industrial uses rather than historic past (Gayes et al. 2013). Objects such as cables, pipes, posts, crab pots, and other debris were identified in the survey. No further investigations were recommended. More details on cultural resources are provided in Section 3.14.

Local shrimpers were interviewed and shown a map of the proposed ODMDS modification area to help assess potential impacts on shrimp trawling activities. Based on these interviews, they appear to generally work within and on the edge of the entrance channel out to near the ODMDS disposal zone, and then they either head north or south and loop back inland (Mark Messersmith, pers. corr. with Wayne Magwood). If they go south, they do a loop and get close to the current ODMDS disposal zone, which indicates that the northwestern corner of the proposed ODMDS modification area is in close proximity to the shrimping grounds. Essential fish habitat for penaeid shrimp is present within Charleston Harbor.

Artificial reef locations are included in Figure 2-1. The closest artificial reef is north of the entrance channel and is approximately 2.7 nmi from the proposed ODMDS modification area.

With respect to mineral resources, sand borrow areas for the Folly Beach nourishment project are 3 to 3.5 miles offshore of Folly Beach and approximately 3.8 miles from the proposed
ODMDS modification area (Figure 2-1). As of 2015, the Folly Beach sand borrow area has been depleted. A sand search is on-going to define new borrow areas.

In 2009, BOEM (previously Minerals Management Service) prepared an EA to evaluate a request from the SCSPA to authorize the use of Outer Continental Shelf (OCS) mineral resources (sand) from the Charleston ODMDS. An amended lease agreement with the SCSPA was executed on June 15, 2015 (See Comment Letter 15, Appendix A). The negotiated agreement (OCS-A 0477) authorizes up to 6 mcy of OCS sediment resources from the Charleston ODMDS for use in the Charleston Naval Base Container Terminal Project. Two specific borrow areas have been identified within the 4 mi² Charleston ODMDS disposal zone: the West Excavation Area and the East Excavation Area (Figure 3-15). This sand borrow project should not affect the proposed Charleston ODMDS modification. The SMMP provides more detail on how future mineral leases will be incorporated into the management of the overall site (see Appendix C). Section 3.15 provides more details on mineral resources.

From an operations and site management standpoint, the proposed modification of the existing site is not expected to impact management and monitoring efforts. The modification area is contiguous with the current ODMDS disposal zone and will be managed as a single site under one Site Management and Monitoring Plan (SMMP). The monitoring plan will be similar to the existing grid that was developed in coordination with SCDNR (see Figure 3-1). The SMMP developed for this site is provided in Appendix C.

New work and O&M dredged material can be disposed randomly within the ODMDS. The objective of the placement plan is to develop a relatively flat-topped mound to maximize the ODMDS capacity and reduce transport of material from the ODMDS (USACE 2015). Hayter et al. (2012) stated that one approach towards maximizing temporary storage within the site is to avoid mounding in any particular location. To achieve this goal, the modeling simulations were configured with a placement pattern that distributed the dredged material over the site uniformly. This approach provides flexibility in the management of the site by allowing for ODMDS managers to utilize recent bathymetric data to direct disposal operations in the most efficient manner. Disposal operations within the two excavation areas may be avoided while the lease is active.

2.2 ALTERNATIVES CONSIDERED BUT ELIMINATED FROM DETAILED EVALUATION

This section describes the alternatives that were considered in the 1983 Charleston ODMDS designation EIS and during the project planning process for this proposed action but are not being carried forward for further analysis and the rationale for eliminating them. Alternatives to ocean disposal were considered, as required by MPRSA Section 102 and NEPA. Based on the current conditions and need, the following alternatives were eliminated from detailed analysis in the EA.

2.2.1 ALTERNATIVE 2: USE EXISTING CHARLESTON ODMDS AND REMOVE DISPOSAL ZONE RESTRICTION

Alternative 2 proposes to remove the disposal zone restriction and use the existing designated Charleston ODMDS (12-nmi² parallelogram) for disposal (Table 2.2-1, Figure 2-5). This alternative would require a new ruling that would supersede the June 6, 2002, ruling published by EPA in the Federal Register that defined the 4-mi² disposal zone as the only area within the ODMDS in which disposal can continue but did not formally de-authorize the remaining area within the ODMDS.
Table 2.2-1. Coordinates and Total Area for Alternative 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Site</th>
<th>Geographic (NAD83, Decimal Degrees)</th>
<th>State Plane (South Carolina US Survey Feet)</th>
<th>Area (nmi²)</th>
<th>Area (mi²)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Latitude                  Longitude</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>E</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Existing ODMDS</td>
<td>Center 32.64305 -79.76083</td>
<td>296905.944</td>
<td>2381425.999</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SE 32.60778 -79.73000</td>
<td>284189.67</td>
<td>2391073.341</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SW 32.65111 -79.82250</td>
<td>299616.976</td>
<td>2362411.019</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NW 32.67833 -79.79167</td>
<td>309629.826</td>
<td>2371784.788</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NE 32.63500 -79.69917</td>
<td>294211.029</td>
<td>2400442.847</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For this alternative to be a viable option, the live-bottom habitat in the western portion of the site that was discovered during baseline surveys in 1987 (Winn et al. 1989) would require further assessment and delineation. A suitable area similar in size and capacity as the Alternative 1 modification area would need to be identified and include a sufficient buffer zone to minimize impacts to live-bottom resources. Depending on the distribution of hardbottom, it is possible that several smaller disposal zones would need to be designated to meet size requirements and capacity to avoid hardbottom impacts. If that was the case, the ODMDS could not be managed as a single, contiguous site with the current disposal zone. From an operations and site management standpoint, a non-contiguous site would be more difficult and costly to manage and monitor.

As mentioned in Section 2.1-1, shrimpers appear to generally work within and on the edge of the entrance channel out to near the ODMDS disposal zone, and then they either head north or south and loop back inland (Mark Messersmith, pers. corr. with Wayne Magwood). Therefore, using the area west of the current disposal zone may impact shrimp trawling grounds.

With respect to mineral resources, the southwestern corner of this site is 0.6 mi (0.5 nmi) from the sand borrow area for the Folly Beach nourishment project. Given the relatively close proximity to the sand borrow area, there may be some potential for transport of dredged material into the sand borrow area if material was placed in the southwestern corner of this site.

Alternative 2 was considered during initial alternatives analysis. However, primarily due to the presence of widespread live-bottom habitat in the western portion of the ODMDS and potential impacts to shrimping areas and sand borrow areas, this alternative is eliminated from further consideration for this proposed action.
Figure 2-5
Alternative 2 – Charleston ODMDS With Nearby Resources

Legend
- Alternative 2 – Charleston ODMDS
- Nearby Resources
- Protected Habitat
- Proposed Habitat
- Existing Habitat
- Other

Source: Esri Digital Globe, GeoEye-Imagery, Earthstar Geographics, CNES (2011), USGS, AEX, GeoEye, i-cubed, All rights reserved.

This map is for planning purposes only and should not be used to determine the precise location of any feature. Depth provided in fathoms.
### ALTERNATIVE 3: NEW ODMDS NORTH OF THE ENTRANCE CHANNEL

Alternative 3 proposes to designate a new ODMDS north of the entrance channel of the same size and configuration as Alternative 1 (Table 2.2-2, Figure 2-6). This site is located approximately 16 mi (14 nmi) offshore of the entrance to Charleston Harbor and 1.6 mi (1.4 nmi) east of the anchorage area.

#### Table 2.2-2. Coordinates and Total Area for Alternative 3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Site</th>
<th>Geographic (NAD83, Decimal Degrees)</th>
<th>State Plane (South Carolina US Survey Feet)</th>
<th>Area (nmi²)</th>
<th>Area (mi²)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Latitude</td>
<td>Longitude</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Center</td>
<td>32.6756</td>
<td>-79.6035</td>
<td>309354.637</td>
<td>2429697.723</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SE</td>
<td>32.6450</td>
<td>-79.5917</td>
<td>298295.585</td>
<td>2433445.201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SW</td>
<td>32.6628</td>
<td>-79.64037</td>
<td>306374.517</td>
<td>2418388.750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NW</td>
<td>32.7060</td>
<td>-79.6152</td>
<td>320392.785</td>
<td>2425938.273</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE</td>
<td>32.6833</td>
<td>-79.5666</td>
<td>312336.871</td>
<td>2440998.496</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

No hardbottom or cultural resource surveys have been conducted in this area. Therefore, the presence of hardbottom and cultural resources within and adjacent to this site are unknown and would require additional surveys. As mentioned in Section 2.1-1, shrimpers appear to generally work within and on the edge of the entrance channel out to near the ODMDS disposal zone, and then they either head north or south and loop back inland (Mark Messersmith, pers. corr. with Wayne Magwood). Based on this information, it appears this site is outside of primary shrimping grounds.

Alternative 3 was considered during initial alternatives analysis; however, it was not carried forward for detailed evaluation for several reasons. As evidenced by the Section 111 study documenting the impact of the federal navigation channel jetties on Folly Beach to the south, the predominant net transport is generally from NE to SW and is influenced by local and regional wind and current patterns as well as periodic storm events. Therefore, disposal of dredged material in a site located on the north side of the entrance channel may result in sediment transport into the channel. Alternative 3 is 7 mi (6 nmi) farther offshore than Alternative 1, which would significantly increase transit times and fuel costs. This site is also in close proximity to the anchorage area, which could impact transit routes to and from the ODMDS. Primarily due to concerns about dredged material being deposited back into the entrance channel, increased transportation costs, and the need for additional surveys to assess hardbottom and cultural resources, this alternative is eliminated from further consideration for this proposed action.
Figure 2-6
Alternative 3 - New ODMDS North Of Entrance Channel With Nearby Resources

Legend
- Alternative 3 - New ODMDS
- Sand Bottom
- Protection Rook Island
- Permanent Shrimp - SEF
- Sand-Water Area
- Artificial Reef

Source: Esri, DigitalGlobe, Geofeedia, HERE, Panasonic, Mapbox, GeoEye, Earthstar Geographics, CNES/Airbus DS, USDA, USGS, AEX, Getmapping, Aerogrid, IGN, BKG, Heath, IGN, GeoBasis-DE / DMG; SSIMI, MapmyIndia; & Map Resources; Data 

33
This page intentionally left blank.
2.2.3 ALTERNATIVE 4: DISPOSAL OFF THE CONTINENTAL SHELF

The continental slope is approximately 55 nmi offshore of Charleston. Disposal off the continental shelf (shelf break) was evaluated in detail the 1983 ODMDS Designation EIS document. In comparison to locating the site in the nearshore region, it was determined that monitoring and surveillance would be more difficult and expensive in the shelf break area because of the distance from shore to the deeper waters. There would be a likelihood of a higher frequency of rough weather that could hinder disposal and monitoring operations.

Alternative 4 was considered during initial alternatives analysis; however, transporting material to and performing long-term monitoring of a site located off the continental shelf is not economically or operationally feasible; therefore, disposal off the continental shelf is eliminated from further consideration for this proposed action.

2.2.4 ALTERNATIVE 5: UPLAND DISPOSAL

Upland disposal is an important option for maintenance dredged material removed from the federal navigation channel. To ensure that adequate project depth is maintained throughout the navigation channel within Charleston Harbor, USACE uses several upland placement areas to meet dredged material disposal needs within certain reaches of the harbor. Figure 2.7 shows the locations of the upland placement areas within Charleston Harbor. The sites are adjacent to the Cooper River in the vicinity of the shoaling areas, allowing for the economical transfer of dredged material from the shoaled areas. The upland placement areas require the maintenance and construction of dikes to contain dredged material and monitoring to provide conformance with environmental requirements. Dredged material is pumped into the sites and the excess surface water is clarified by ponding and then released through weir structures.

Upland and ocean disposal site capacity were evaluated as part of the Charleston Harbor Post 45 Deepening IFR/EIS. Upland sites will continue to be used and dikes will need to be raised to provide additional capacity at these sites. Based on recent analysis conducted in 2014, assuming on-going dike raising efforts continue, there is sufficient capacity for at least the next 20 years (USACE 2014a, USACE 2014b). However even with dike raising, it was determined that additional ocean disposal capacity will be needed to accommodate continued dredged material operations and maintenance in the future (USACE 2014a).

Alternative 5 was considered during initial alternatives analysis; however, even with dike raising efforts upland capacity and land for new disposal areas are limited. Although upland disposal has been eliminated from further evaluation in this EA, it remains an option for disposal of maintenance material from various reaches when economically feasible and capacity is available or if dredged material is unsuitable for ocean disposal. Each dredging project will be evaluated separately to determine if upland disposal is an option. A MPRSA Section 103 evaluation was conducted on the new work material, and it was determined to be suitable for ocean disposal (ANAMAR 2013, USACE 2014a). Therefore, dredged material generated from the deepening project is expected to be disposed at the ODMDS.
Figure 2-7. Charleston Upland Dredged Material Placement Areas

Source: USACE 2014b
2.2.5 ALTERNATIVE 6: BEACH NOURISHMENT, NEARSHORE PLACEMENT, AND OTHER BENEFICIAL USES

The Federal Government has placed considerable emphasis on using dredged material in a beneficial manner. Statutes such as the Water Resources Development Acts of 1992, 1996, 2000, and 2007 demonstrate that beneficial use has been a Congressional priority. USACE has emphasized the use of dredged material for beneficial use through such regulations as 33 CFR Part 335, ER 1105-2-100, and ER 1130-2-520 and by Policy Guidance Letter No. 56. ER 1105-2-100 states that “all dredged material management studies include an assessment of potential beneficial uses for environmental purposes including fish and wildlife habitat creation, ecosystem restoration and enhancement and/or hurricane and storm damage reduction.” In accordance with ER 1105-2-100, USACE is considering beneficial use of dredged material as part of the Charleston Harbor Post 45 Project. Potential beneficial uses include:

- ODMDS berm creation
- Reef placement
- Crab Bank enhancement
- Shutes Folly enhancement
- Nearshore placement off Morris Island
- Protection of Ft. Sumter

Table 1.3-3 provides estimated volumes associated with the berm creation, reef placement, mitigation site, and DNR site. Details on volumes and construction methods for other beneficial use projects will be evaluated during the pre-construction, engineering, and design (PED) phase.

Alternative 6 was considered during initial alternatives analysis; however, the majority of the material dredged from the Charleston Harbor Navigation Project is not suitable for beach nourishment, nearshore placement, or other beneficial uses. This alternative alone does not meet the project need for additional disposal capacity for material dredged during the proposed deepening project or annual maintenance material. Therefore, this alternative is eliminated from further consideration for this proposed action. However, a portion of rock material dredged from the entrance channel is proposed to be used to construct the berms along the perimeter of the Alternative 1 site to minimize sediment transport from the site. The added benefit associated with berm construction includes hardbottom habitat creation.

2.3 ALTERNATIVES NOT WITHIN JURISDICTION OF LEAD AGENCY

Upland and beach placement are not within EPA’s jurisdiction, but rather are under the jurisdiction of USACE, a cooperating agency. EPA has the authority to review beach placement activities pursuant to Section 404 of the Clean Water Act. Upland and beach placement alternatives are summarized in Section 2.2.5 and are discussed in detail in the FR/EIS for the Charleston Harbor Post 45 Deepening Project.

2.4 ISSUES AND BASIS FOR CHOICE

The alternatives were evaluated based on their ability to provide the required capacity for disposing of dredged material for the proposed new work projects and for ongoing and future O&M dredging operations, their location in relation to other environmental and socioeconomic resources, and compliance with EPA’s 5 general and 11 specific criteria.
2.5 PREFERRED ALTERNATIVE

Based on the analysis provided in this EA and the evaluation of the alternatives with respect to the project need and potential issues identified, Alternative 1 is recommended as the Preferred Alternative. Alternative 1 – Modification of the Charleston ODMDS:

- Provides a long-term ocean disposal option for suitable dredged material from new work and O&M projects in support of the Charleston Harbor Federal Navigation Project.
- Meets EPA’s general and specific criteria for site selection.
- Complies with all international, federal, state, and local regulations.
- Minimizes environmental and socioeconomic impacts because it is sufficiently removed from amenities such as beaches, heavily used shrimping grounds, shipping lanes, areas of hardbottom, artificial reefs, and sand borrow areas.
- Does not contain historic cultural resources.
- Is not located within designated critical habitat for threatened or endangered species.
- Formally de-designates 10.4 mi² (7.8 nmi²) of restricted disposal area within the current Charleston ODMDS primarily west of the current disposal zone that contains widespread hardbottom habitat.
- Creates additional fish and benthic habitat as a result of berm construction.

2.6 COMPLIANCE WITH EPA CRITERIA

Five general regulatory criteria are used in the selection and approval of ocean disposal sites for continuing use (see 40 CFR 228.5). Eleven specific criteria are used in evaluating a proposed disposal site to ensure that the general criteria are met. Section 2.6.1 describes compliance of the preferred alternative with the five general criteria for designation outlined in 40 CFR 228.5. Section 2.6.2 describes compliance of the preferred alternative with the 11 specific criteria for designation outlined in 40 CFR 228.6. Table 2.6-2 provides a summary of direct and indirect impacts associated with the proposed action. Chapter 4, Environmental Effects, provides a more detailed discussion of the impacts associated with the proposed action.

2.6.1 GENERAL SITE SELECTION CRITERIA (40 CFR § 228.5)

2.6.1.1 General Site Selection Criteria 40 CFR § 228.5(a)

*The dumping of materials into the ocean will be permitted only at sites or in areas selected to minimize the interference of disposal activities with other activities in the marine environment, particularly avoiding areas of existing fisheries or shellfisheries, and regions of heavy commercial or recreational navigation.*

Dredged material disposal within the existing Charleston ODMDS has been confined to the eastern side of the designated site within a defined 4-mi² disposal zone to avoid impacts to live hardbottom. During this time, dredged material disposal at the site has not interfered with commercial or recreational navigation, commercial fishing, or sportfishing activities. The proposed action (Alternative 1), modification of the site boundaries to the north, east, and south is not expected to change these conditions. The proposed action avoids major fisheries, natural and artificial reefs, and areas of recreational use. Modification of the site to the east will minimize interference with shellfisheries by avoiding areas located primarily to the west of the ODMDS that are frequently used by commercial shrimpers. Construction of the berm will
provide an additional approximately 427 acres of hardbottom habitat and will protect existing hardbottom habitat by minimizing sediment transport. There will be a 3000-foot buffer along the northern perimeter of the ODMDS where dumping will not occur. Modeling results indicate that this buffer should be sufficient to protect probable hardbottom areas to the north of the site (Figure 2-1). Therefore, this site is considered to be in compliance with 40 CFR § 228.5(a).

2.6.1.2 General Site Selection Criteria 40 CFR § 228.5(b)

Locations and boundaries of disposal sites will be chosen so that temporary perturbations in water quality or other environmental conditions during initial mixing caused by disposal operations anywhere within the site can be expected to be reduced to normal ambient seawater levels or to undetectable contaminant concentrations or effects before reaching any beach, shoreline, marine sanctuary, or known geographically limited fishery or shellfishery.

The proposed ODMDS modification area will be used for disposal of suitable dredged material as determined by application of national and regional testing protocols and evaluated under Section 103 of the MPRSA. No significant contaminant or suspended solids releases are expected. Based on the USACE and EPA sediment testing and evaluation of dredged maintenance material and proposed new work material from the Post 45 deepening project, disposal is not expected to have any long-term impact on the water quality (ANAMAR 2013). Results of the maximum concentration found outside the disposal area after 4 hours of mixing for each dredging unit was 0. Based on these results, water quality perturbations that could reach any beach, shoreline, marine sanctuary, or known geographically limited fishery or shellfishery are not expected. The western edge of Alternative 1 is approximately 7 miles offshore such that prevailing current will not transport dredged material to beaches. Water quality perturbations caused by dispersion of disposal material will be reduced to ambient conditions before reaching any environmentally sensitive areas. Therefore, this site is considered to be in compliance with 40 CFR § 228.5(b).

2.6.1.3 General Site Selection Criteria 40 CFR § 228.5(c)

If at any time during or after disposal site evaluation studies, it is determined that existing disposal sites presently approved on an interim basis for ocean dumping do not meet the criteria for site selection set forth in Sections 228.5 through 228.6, the use of such sites will be terminated as soon as suitable alternate disposal sites can be designated.

These criteria do not apply as no existing sites are approved on an interim basis in the region.

2.6.1.4 General Site Selection Criteria 40 CFR § 228.5(d)

The sizes of the ocean disposal sites will be limited in order to localize for identification and control any immediate adverse impacts and permit the implementation of effective monitoring and surveillance programs to prevent adverse long-range impacts. The size, configuration, and location of any disposal site will be determined as a part of the disposal site evaluation or designation study.

The location, size, and configuration of the proposed ODMDS modification area (Alternative 1) provides long-term capacity, site management, and site monitoring while limiting environmental impacts to the surrounding area. Based on 25 years of projected new work and maintenance dredged material disposal needs (see Section 1.3), it is estimated that the ODMDS modification
area should accommodate approximately 66.5 mcy of dredged material in order to meet the long-term disposal needs of the area. The dump zone within the proposed ODMDS is estimated to have approximately 75 mcy of capacity. The capacity in the dump zone provides a reasonable amount of additional capacity to manage risk, account for future unknown disposal operations from private entities, and provides a margin of navigation safety. The remaining area within the boundaries of the existing 12 nmi² Charleston ODMDS (parallelogram) would be de-designated (see the crosshatched area in Figure 2-1). The area to be de-designated is approximately 10.4 mi² (7.8 nmi²) in size and contains documented hardbottom habitat.

By adding 5.8 mi² (4.4 nmi²) to the existing ODMDS disposal zone, the total area of the modified Charleston ODMDS would be 9.8 mi² (7.4 nmi²), with a dump zone area of 5.1 mi² (3.9 nmi²). An ODMDS of this size and capacity will provide a long-term ocean disposal option for the region.

To help protect nearby hardbottom habitat from being buried by sediment migrating from the ODMDS, a U-shaped berm along the east, south, and west perimeters of the modified ODMDS will be constructed (Figure 2-1). Although there is probable hardbottom located north of Alternative 1, no berm will be constructed along the northern boundary. However, there will be a 3000-foot buffer along the northern perimeter of the ODMDS where dumping will not occur. Fate modeling indicates that this buffer should be sufficient to protect probable hardbottom areas to the north of the site.

When determining the size of the proposed site, the ability to implement effective monitoring and surveillance programs, among other things, was factored in to ensure that navigational safety would not be compromised and to prevent mounding of dredged material, which could result in adverse wave conditions. A site management and monitoring program will be implemented to determine if disposal at the site is significantly affecting adjacent areas and to detect the presence of long-term adverse effects. At a minimum, the monitoring program will consist of bathymetric surveys, sediment grain size analysis, chemical analysis of constituents of concern in the sediments, and a health assessment of the benthic community. The SMMP is included in Appendix C.

This site is considered to be in compliance with 40 CFR § 228.5(d).

2.6.1.5 General Site Selection Criteria 40 CFR § 228.5(e)

EPA will, whenever feasible, designate ocean dumping sites beyond the edge of the continental shelf and other such sites that have been historically used.

The continental slope is approximately 55 nmi offshore of Charleston. Disposal off the continental shelf (shelf break) was evaluated in detail the 1983 ODMDS Designation EIS document. In comparison to locating the site in the nearshore region, it was determined that monitoring and surveillance would be more difficult and expensive in the shelf break area because of the distance from shore to the deeper waters. There would be an increased likelihood of rough weather that could hinder disposal and monitoring operations. Transporting material to and performing long-term monitoring of a site located off the continental shelf is not economically or operationally feasible; therefore, disposal off the continental shelf is eliminated from further consideration for this proposed action.

The historically used ocean dumping site, Charleston ODMDS, is not located beyond the continental shelf. A portion of the proposed modification area in Alternative 1 encompasses an
area previously designated for disposal. Therefore, this site is considered to be in compliance with 40 CFR § 228.5(e).

2.6.2 SPECIFIC SITE SELECTION CRITERIA (40 CFR 228.6)

The characteristics of Alternative 1 with respect to EPA’s 11 specific criteria for site selection are compared in Table 2.6-1. EPA established these 11 criteria to constitute “…an environmental assessment of the impact of the site for disposal.” These comparisons support the decision-making process in selecting the preferred alternative over the other viable alternatives. Detailed information on the physical, chemical, biological, and socioeconomic environment and potential impacts of the proposed action is presented in Chapter 3: Affected Environment and Chapter 4: Environmental Effects.
Table 2.6-1. Comparison of the Proposed Alternatives and Compliance with the Specific Criteria for Designation Outlined in 40 CFR 228.6.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>40 CFR 228.6(a) Criteria</th>
<th>Alternative 1: Modification of the Charleston ODMDS</th>
<th>No Action Alternative: No Modification to the Charleston ODMDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Geographical position, depth of water, bottom topography, and distance from the coast</td>
<td>e) Geographical position: Located on the shallow continental shelf offshore of Charleston, South Carolina. f) Depth of water: Range = -25 to -45 feet MLW, average depth = ~40 feet g) Characteristics of the South Atlantic Bight seafloor include low relief, relatively gentle gradients, and smooth bottom surfaces exhibiting physiographic features contoured by erosional processes. Sediments largely consist of fine to coarse sands. Some areas contain extensive coarse grains and shell hash. Fines were typically less than 10% (Gayes et al. 2013). h) Distance from coast = Approximately 7 mi (6 nmi)</td>
<td>a) Geographical position: The Charleston ODMDS is located on the shallow continental shelf offshore of Charleston, South Carolina. b) The Charleston ODMDS is in water depths ranging from -35 feet to -45 feet mean low water (MLW). c) Results from sub-bottom profile data indicate that the general seafloor morphology across the ODMDS consists of a series of NE/SW trending sediment ridges (Gayes et al. 2013). The surface sediments throughout the ODMDS consist of fire sands (71%) and silts, with a median grain size of 0.25 mm (S&amp;ME 2007). d) Distance from coast = approximately 7 mi (6 nmi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Location in relation to breeding, spawning, nursery, feeding, or passage areas of living resources in adult or juvenile phases.</td>
<td>Similar to the No Action Alternative. The proposed ODMDS modification area is contiguous with the existing Charleston ODMDS.</td>
<td>The Charleston ODMDS is not located in exclusive breeding, spawning, nursery, feeding, or passage areas for adult or juvenile phases of living resources. The intensity of these activities within the vicinity of the ODMDS is seasonally variable, with peaks typically occurring in the spring and early fall for most commercially important finfish and shellfish species (USEPA 1983). The ODMDS is not located within North Atlantic right whale critical habitat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Location in relation to beaches and other amenities such as natural and artificial reefs and fishing spots.</td>
<td>Similar to the No Action Alternative. The proposed ODMDS modification area is contiguous with the existing Charleston ODMDS.</td>
<td>The center of the Charleston ODMDS disposal zone is approximately 7 mi (6 nmi) from the nearest coastal beach. The site is approximately 3.1 mi (2.7 nmi) south of the nearest artificial reef (Figure 2-1). No significant impacts to beaches or amenity areas associated with the existing ODMDS have been documented.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Types and quantities of wastes proposed to be disposed of and proposed methods of release, including methods of packaging the waste, if any.</td>
<td>Only material that meets EPA Ocean Dumping Criteria in 40 CFR 220-229 will be placed in the proposed site. Average annual maintenance material is approximately 1.4 mcy and approximately 31.2 mcy of new work material is expected from the Charleston Harbor Deepening Project. Sediments dredged from Charleston Harbor and the entrance channel are a mixture of silt, sand, and rock. Hopper dredge, barge, and scow combinations are the usual vehicles of transport for the dredged material. None of the material is packaged in any manner.</td>
<td>Similar to Alternative 1. However, the volume of material that can be disposed of would be limited to approximately 29 to 31 mcy, which is the current estimated capacity of the Charleston ODMDS disposal zone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Feasibility of surveillance and monitoring.</td>
<td>Site monitoring is feasible and is described in the SMMP (Appendix C).</td>
<td>Same as Alternative 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Dispersal, horizontal transport, and vertical mixing characteristics of the area, including prevailing current direction and velocity, if any.</td>
<td>A study conducted by EPA (2014) indicated that currents in the vicinity of the Charleston ODMDS tend to have a significant tidal component with predominant currents in the cross-shore direction. The depth-averaged median current velocity was 18 cm/sec (0.6 ft/sec) with 50% of the measurements below 30 cm/sec (1.1 ft/sec). Wind-driven circulation is the most important factor in controlling sediment transport. Strong winds generate waves that steer the sediment on the seabed and create large nearbed suspended sediment concentrations. Suspended sediment transport is directed mainly NE and SW in response to local wind climate and the wind-generated alongshore flows (Voulgaris 2002) (See Sections 3.1.2 and 3.1.3 for more details). LTFATE and MPFATE modeling results over a 25-year period indicate depths of sediment deposited outside the boundaries of the ODMDS will not exceed the 5 cm deposition contour guidance provided by EPA (USACE 2015).</td>
<td>Same as Alternative 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Existence and effects of current and previous discharges and dumping in the area (including cumulative effects).</td>
<td>Short-term, long-term, and cumulative effects of dredged material disposal in the proposed ODMDS modification area would be similar to those for the existing ODMDS.</td>
<td>Previous disposal of dredged material resulted in temporary increases in suspended sediment concentrations during disposal operations, localized mounding within the site, burial of benthic organisms within the site, changes in the abundance and composition of benthic assemblages, and changes in the sediment composition from sandy sediments to finer-grained silts. Impacts to live bottoms were identified in the western portion of the 12-m³ ODMDS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40 CFR 228.6(a) Criteria</td>
<td>Alternative 1: Modification of the Charleston ODMDS</td>
<td>No Action Alternative: No Modification to the Charleston ODMDS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>8. Interference with shipping, fishing, recreation, mineral extraction, desalination, fish and shellfish culture, areas of special scientific importance, and other legitimate uses of the ocean.</strong></td>
<td>Similar to the No Action Alternative, since the proposed ODMDS modification area is contiguous with the existing ODMDS.</td>
<td>The existing ODMDS disposal zone has not interfered with shipping, fishing, recreation, mineral extraction, fish and shellfish culture, areas of special scientific importance, or other legitimate uses of the ocean.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>9. Existing water quality and ecology of the site as determined by available data or by trend assessment or baseline surveys.</strong></td>
<td>Similar to the No Action Alternative, since the proposed ODMDS modification area is contiguous with the existing ODMDS.</td>
<td>Water quality of the existing site is typical of the Atlantic Ocean. Water and sediment quality analyses conducted in the study area and experience with past disposals in the Charleston ODMDS have not identified any adverse water quality impacts from ocean disposal of dredged material. The site supports benthic and epibenthic fauna characteristic of the South Atlantic Bight. Neither the pelagic (mobile) or benthic (non-mobile) communities should sustain irreparable harm due to their widespread occurrence off the South Carolina coast.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>10. Potentiality for the development or recruitment of nuisance species in the disposal site.</strong></td>
<td>Similar to the No Action Alternative, since the proposed ODMDS modification area is contiguous with the existing ODMDS.</td>
<td>Nuisance species are considered to be any undesirable organism not previously existing at the disposal site. They are either transported to or recruited to the site because the disposal of dredged material creates an environment where they can establish. Habitat conditions have changed somewhat at the Charleston ODMDS because of the disposal of some silty material on what was predominately sandy sediments. While it can be expected that organisms will become established at the site which were not there previously, this new community is not regarded as a nuisance, or “undesirable,” community.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>11. Existence at or in close proximity to the site of any significant natural or cultural features of historical importance.</strong></td>
<td>Surveys conducted in 2012-2013 did not identify any cultural features of historical importance.</td>
<td>No significant cultural features were identified within the existing ODMDS.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2.6-2. Summary of Direct and Indirect Impacts of Alternatives Considered

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environmental Factor</th>
<th>Alternative 1: Modification of the Charleston ODMDS</th>
<th>No Action Alternative: No Modification to the Charleston ODMDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Threatened and Endangered Species – Sea Turtles</td>
<td>Impacts to sea turtles associated with dredged material disposal include possible collisions with dredge and support vessels, temporary decreases in foraging due to turbidity and burial of food resources, and underwater noise from dredging equipment. Impacts are expected to be short-term and localized. No significant impacts to sea turtles are expected as a result of the proposed action. The project will not modify Loggerhead sea turtle Critical Habitat.</td>
<td>Potential impacts to sea turtles associated with use of the Charleston ODMDS are similar to Alternative 1. No impacts have been reported to date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Threatened and Endangered Species – Manatees</td>
<td>Impacts to manatees associated with dredged material disposal include possible, but unlikely, encounters with dredge and support vessels during hauling and disposal operations. No significant impacts to manatees are expected as a result of the proposed action.</td>
<td>Potential impacts to manatees associated with use of the Charleston ODMDS are similar to Alternative 1. No impacts have been reported to date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Threatened and Endangered Species – Whales</td>
<td>Impacts to the North Atlantic right whale and humpback whale associated with dredged material disposal include possible collisions with dredge and support vessels, temporary decreases in foraging due to turbidity and burial of food resources, and underwater noise from dredging equipment. Impacts are expected to be short-term and localized. No significant impacts to whales are expected as a result of the proposed action. The project will have no effect on proposed Critical Habitat for right whales.</td>
<td>Potential impacts to whales associated with the use of the Charleston ODMDS are similar to Alternative 1. No impacts have been reported to date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Threatened and Endangered Species – Fish</td>
<td>Shortnose sturgeon, Atlantic sturgeon, and smalltooth sawfish are not likely to be present in the project area. Therefore, no significant impacts to protected fish are expected as a result of the proposed action.</td>
<td>Potential impacts to protected fish associated with use of the Charleston ODMDS are similar to Alternative 1. No impacts have been reported to date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fish and Wildlife Resources – Benthic Fauna</td>
<td>Potential impacts include direct burial of benthic organisms and change in composition of sediments reducing abundance and diversity of the benthic communities within the site. Suspended sediments can also affect filter-feeding organisms and abrade gill tissues. Effects of turbidity would be short-term and localized. Effects of burial and change in sediment composition can potentially be long-term depending upon the frequency of disturbance and depth of burial.</td>
<td>Potential impacts to protected benthic fauna associated with use of the Charleston ODMDS are similar to Alternative 1. A general trend of decreased benthic abundance, reduced species numbers, and decreased diversity has been observed in areas within and adjacent to the ODMDS.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2.6-2. Summary of Direct and Indirect Impacts of Alternatives Considered

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environmental Factor</th>
<th>Alternative 1: Modification of the Charleston ODMDS</th>
<th>No Action Alternative: No Modification to the Charleston ODMDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fish and Wildlife Resources – Fish</td>
<td>Potential impacts include temporary decreases in foraging due to turbidity and burial of food resources. Adult fishes within the disposal area may experience a short-term reduction in dissolved oxygen uptake through the gills due to the presence of suspended particles. Impacts are expected to be short-term and localized. No significant impacts to fishes are expected as a result of the proposed action.</td>
<td>Potential impacts to fish associated with use of the Charleston ODMDS are similar to Alternative 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fish and Wildlife Resources – Marine Mammals</td>
<td>See protected whale species above.</td>
<td>See protected whale species above.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fish and Wildlife Resources – Seabirds</td>
<td>Potential indirect impacts may include ship-following behavior, temporary reductions in prey items, and visual impairment of marine birds foraging in the vicinity of the disposal plume. No significant impacts to protected seabirds are expected as a result of the proposed action.</td>
<td>Potential impacts to seabirds associated with use of the Charleston ODMDS are similar to Alternative 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hardbottoms</td>
<td>Potential impacts include burial of hardbottom, increased turbidity and sedimentation, loss of sessile biota and finfish assemblages, and loss of productivity. To help protect nearby hardbottom habitat from being buried by sediment migrating from the ODMDS, a U-shaped berm along the east, south, and west perimeters of the modified ODMDS will be constructed. LTFATE and MPFATE modeling results over a 25-year period indicate depths of sediment deposited outside the boundaries of the ODMDS will not exceed the 5 cm deposition contour guidance provided by EPA (Figure 2-3, USACE 2015).</td>
<td>Impacts to hardbottom resources west of the Charleston ODMDS have been previously documented. Impacts are primarily due to sedimentation and mis-dumps. Boundaries of the ODMDS were modified to address the problem and minimize effects of dredged material disposal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Essential Fish Habitat</td>
<td>Direct effects of sedimentation and turbidity are not expected to be substantial due to the mobility of the majority of federally managed species that may occur within the site and the lack of geographic constraints within the vicinity of the project area. There are 1.6 acres of hardbottom within the ODMDS site. Construction of the berm (~427 acres) will create additional hardbottom habitat and EFH. No significant impacts to EFH are expected as a result of the proposed action.</td>
<td>Potential impacts to EFH associated with use of the Charleston ODMDS are similar to Alternative 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cultural Resources</td>
<td>Based on survey findings, there are no targets of significance within the proposed ODMDS modification area. No properties listed in or eligible for listing in the National Register of Historic Places will be affected by this project.</td>
<td>No effects to cultural resources have been documented.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2.6-2. Summary of Direct and Indirect Impacts of Alternatives Considered

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environmental Factor</th>
<th>Alternative 1: Modification of the Charleston ODMDS</th>
<th>No Action Alternative: No Modification to the Charleston ODMDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Economics</td>
<td>No anticipated negative effects related to shipping or commercial fisheries.</td>
<td>The No Action Alternative could have significant impacts on commercial shipping if dredging projects needed to facilitate those operations are delayed or become infeasible due to limited disposal capacity at the ODMDS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recreation</td>
<td>The closest artificial reefs are located approximately 3.1 mi (2.7 nmi) north of the site. There are no anticipated effects.</td>
<td>Same as Alternative 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coastal Barrier Resources</td>
<td>Given that the proposed ODMDS modification area is approximately 7 mi (6 nmi) from shore, there are no anticipated effects.</td>
<td>Same as Alternative 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water Quality</td>
<td>Short-term, localized increases in turbidity will occur in the vicinity of the disposal site during disposal operations. No significant or long-term impacts to water quality are expected as a result of the proposed action.</td>
<td>Potential impacts to water quality associated with use of the Charleston ODMDS are similar to Alternative 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hazardous, Toxic, and Radioactive Wastes</td>
<td>No anticipated effects. Dredged material will be suitable for ocean disposal as per MPRSA regulations.</td>
<td>Same as Alternative 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air Quality</td>
<td>Short-term, localized increases in concentrations of NO₂, SO₂, CO₂, VOCs, and particulate matter (PM) associated with transport of dredged material to the disposal site may occur. No significant impacts to air quality are expected as a result of the proposed action.</td>
<td>Potential impacts to air quality associated with use of the Charleston ODMDS are similar to Alternative 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noise</td>
<td>No significant effects from noise generated during disposal operations are anticipated.</td>
<td>Same as Alternative 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Navigation</td>
<td>No anticipated negative effects.</td>
<td>The No Action Alternative could have significant impacts on navigation if dredging projects needed to keep channels at authorize depths are delayed or become infeasible due to limited disposal capacity at the ODMDS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Energy Requirements and Conservation</td>
<td>Fuel would be consumed during the transport of the dredged material to the disposal site.</td>
<td>Same as Alternative 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Natural and Depletable Resources</td>
<td>Fuel would be consumed during the transport of the dredged material to the disposal site.</td>
<td>Same as Alternative 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scientific Resources</td>
<td>No anticipated effects.</td>
<td>Same as Alternative 1.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
This page intentionally left blank.
3 AFFECTED ENVIRONMENT

This chapter describes the existing environment within and adjacent to the proposed ODMDS modification area that may be affected by dredged material disposal operations if Alternative 1 were implemented. This chapter, in conjunction with the description of the No Action Alternative, presents the baseline conditions for assessing and comparing the potential impacts of the proposed action. This proposed action benefits from a substantial amount of existing information about the project area as a result of a robust monitoring plan that includes the 4-mi² disposal zone and surrounding areas. The monitoring plan includes three zones: the disposal zone, the inner boundary zone, and the outer boundary zone (Figure 3-1), which were further subdivided into 20 discrete strata of comparable size (1 mi²). Previous studies in and around the existing ODMDS evaluated changes in the composition of surficial sediments, bathymetry, sediment mobility and transport, surficial sediment chemistry, hardbottom habitat, benthic macrofaunal assemblages, and contaminants in the existing ODMDS and surrounding areas. These efforts included a baseline survey of conditions in and around the ODMDS during 1993-1994 (Van Dolah et al. 1996, 1997), an interim documentation of the same area during the deepening project (Zimmerman et al. 2002), and a post-disposal assessment (Jutte et al. 2005). In addition, recent hardbottom and cultural resources studies were performed within the project area.

Figure 3-1. Monitoring Scheme of the Permitted Disposal Zone within the Charleston ODMDS and the Surrounding Boundary Zones
This chapter includes the findings of previous studies and describes the resources present in the project area. Characteristics or resources that are susceptible to significant adverse impacts generally are categorized as either physical, chemical, biological, or socioeconomic. Additional information, such as physical oceanography, is presented because these natural processes also influence the fate and impact of the released dredged material. Commercial, recreational, and cultural resources that may be affected by dredged material disposal are also discussed. The vicinity of the proposed ODMDS expansion is open ocean within U.S. territorial waters used for navigation, commerce, fisheries, and recreation.

3.1 PHYSICAL OCEANOGRAPHY
3.1.1 GEOLOGY AND TOPOGRAPHY
The physical environment in the study region includes waters offshore of Charleston, South Carolina, from the surface to the seafloor and the associated physical and oceanographic characteristics of this environment. The broad, shallow continental shelf extends from a minimum distance of 15 nmi off the coast of Cape Hatteras, North Carolina, to a maximum distance of 65 nmi off Jacksonville, Florida. The South Atlantic Bight is the term used to describe the U.S. coastal ocean from Cape Hatteras to Cape Canaveral (Pequegnat et al. 1990). Characteristics of the South Atlantic Bight seafloor include low relief, relatively gentle gradients, and smooth bottom surfaces exhibiting physiographic features contoured by erosional processes. The physical and biological characteristics of the nearshore region of the South Atlantic Bight are influenced by coastal processes such as runoff from rivers and salt marshes, longshore sediment transport, winter storm effects, and anthropogenic inputs. The Charleston ODMDS is in water depths ranging from -35 feet to -45 feet mean low water (MLW). The Charleston Bump deflects the Gulf Stream eastward and flows out to sea (Bane and Dewar 2012).

Between 2012 and 2013, the Center for Marine and Wetland Studies (CMWS) at Coastal Carolina University conducted geophysical mapping (sidescan sonar, sub-bottom profiling, and magnetic mapping) in the proposed ODMDS modification area. Sub-bottom profiles were used to contour the seafloor, the top of modern sediment, and the top of rock surfaces. Results from sub-bottom profile data collected indicate that the general seafloor morphology across the ODMDS consists of a series of NE/SW trending sediment ridges (Gayes et al. 2013), which appear to be part of a surficial sand sheet that contains most of the modern sediment in this region. The base of surficial modern sediment is defined as the most recent transgressive surface. Isopach maps of sediment thickness above this layer (modern sediment thickness) indicate the minimum thickness of sediment that is mostly unconsolidated. Locally, modern sediment accumulation across the ridges is up to 10 to 15 feet, while elsewhere the surficial sediment thickness decreases to 1 foot or less. Elsewhere, the sub-bottom is often relatively homogenous. In many cases, these areas are indicative of hardbottom or consolidated seafloor
sediments (Gayes et al. 2013). Hardbottom habitats mapped during this survey are discussed in detail in Section 3.4.

3.1.2 WAVES AND CURRENTS
Data on waves and ocean currents at the Charleston ODMDS and in the vicinity have been collected on several occasions:

- 1983 Charleston ODMDS Designation EIS
- EPA collected ocean current data in the summer and winter in 1991.
- In 2001, a study was conducted to provide information on sediment mobility in the vicinity of the ODMDS (Voulgaris 2002).
- In 2012/2013, EPA collected one year of current and wave data at multiple locations offshore of Charleston.

Results from these studies vary and indicate that the wave and current climate is dynamic in this area. Factors such as seasonal storms and fronts and hurricanes can impact short-term wave and current climate. In general, Charleston longshore currents flow southward across the disposal site; therefore, disposal plumes will typically be transported southwestward away from the mouth of the channel (USEPA 1983). The long-term and predominant current direction is generally from NE to SW.

The design and initial planning of the Charleston ODMDS were based on ocean current data collected by EPA in summer and winter 1991 and NOAA NOS in conjunction with a circulation survey of Charleston Harbor (Wilmot 1988). These data showed that during most of the year a NNE flow prevails, while during the winter there is an additional western component of flow in response to NE winds.

NOAA NOS (Williams et al. 1997) carried out additional long-term current measurements covering the period January 20, 1994, to September 28, 1995. Wind-driven flows were found to be towards the NE or SW in a direction parallel to the coastline.

The current regime of the ODMDS and vicinity was also characterized by Voulgaris (2002), who found that wind-driven circulation dominates over tidal circulation and that the primary wind-driven current directions are NE, in response to winter onshore winds, and SW, in response to summer offshore winds. The wind-generated waves and wind-driven currents dominate sediment transport; strong winds generate waves that suspend fine sediment and currents steer sediment along the direction of the mean current. Residual flows offshore of Folly Beach have been observed to be predominantly shore-parallel, responding to seasonal winds and tides (Work et al. 2004).

Between 2012 and 2013, current and wave data were collected by EPA in the vicinity of the proposed ODMDS expansion area to provide additional information regarding the need for a larger ODMDS (USEPA 2014). Data from this study have been used to assess current disposal site capacity, assess ODMDS sizing requirements, and develop appropriate water quality model input parameters for future dredge material suitability determinations.

Study results indicated that currents in the vicinity of the Charleston ODMDS tend to have a significant tidal component, with predominant currents in the cross-shore direction. Non-tidal
currents show periodic oscillations (see Figures 30 and 31 of USEPA 2014) that may be related to overtides. There was a consistent northeasterly drift to the non-tidal currents until September 2013, when the drift shifted southwesterly (see Figure 28 of USEPA 2014). The depth-averaged median current velocity was 18 cm/sec (0.6 ft/sec) with 90% of the measurements below 30 cm/sec (1.1 ft/sec). Waves in the vicinity of the Charleston ODMDS are out of the east-southeast. The highest measured waves were out of the east in excess of 2.5 meters (8.2 feet) and occurred in the spring (April to June). Ninety percent of the wave measurements were less than 1.6 meters (5.2 feet) with wave periods in the 4- to 11-second range.

3.1.3 SEDIMENT TRANSPORT

Inner continental shelves are dynamic systems under constant reworking by the effects of tides, bottom currents, and waves. Free sediment, therefore, has the potential to migrate as it is influenced by the changing energy conditions imposed by these processes. Although the bulk of the material disposed of at any ODMDS is likely to remain in place after disposal, the most mobile portion of the disposed sediment may eventually exit the site and migrate to adjacent areas (USEPA 2005). To assist in defining dredged material placement and migration within the Charleston ODMDS, several surveys of the seafloor sediments in the ODMDS and surrounding areas have been conducted.

The Coastal Estuarine and Oceanography Branch (CEOB) of the NOS deployed an ADCP in the larger ODMDS from January 1994 through September 1995 in an effort to measure ocean currents in the vicinity of the site. The results of the study found currents flowing toward the southwest or west could potentially transport dredged material to the benthic communities in the southwest corner of the larger ODMDS (Williams et al. 1997).

The results of sediment analyses conducted on samples collected in the boundary areas surrounding the Charleston ODMDS in 2000 (Jutte et al. 2001, Zimmerman et al. 2002, 2003) indicated that disposal activities associated with the 1996-2002 deepening project have resulted in changes in sediment composition outside the ODMDS. The sediment composition in the boundary areas to the west of the disposal site displayed, in most cases, higher silt/clay content than samples collected in 1993 and 1994. Areal mapping of sediment chemistry in October 2000 and 2002 (Noakes 2003) also identified dredged material outside the disposal area. Dredged material was clearly indicated in areas to the west and northwest of the disposal area based on isotopic signatures.

A study conducted July 6 to August 20, 2001, was aimed at providing data and some insight on sediment mobility in the vicinity of the permitted disposal zone within the Charleston ODMDS (Voulgaris 2002). The study focused primarily on monitoring bottom turbulence due to the combined action of waves and currents and of sediment remobilization and transport. Additional data included measurements of water density and spatial variability of flow along the western berm for a period of two tidal cycles.

The major findings of this study were the following:

- Wind-driven circulation is the most important factor in controlling sediment transport. The winds also drive wind-driven flows that transport the resuspended sediment along the direction of the mean current.
• Suspended sediment transport is directed mainly NE and SW in response to local wind climate and the wind-generated alongshore flows. The observed sediment transport direction is typical for the area. However, analysis of 8 years of wind data revealed that more sediment transport towards the SW should occur in response to NE winds, which were very weak during the study period.

Based on linear wave theory, wave periods in excess of 4.4 seconds are of sufficient length to influence bottom velocities at the depths of the ODMDS (USACE 1984), and therefore waves are likely to frequently affect re-suspension and transport of dredged material at the ODMDS (USEPA 2014). USACE used wave and current data from the USEPA (2014) study to model the short-term and long-term fate of dredged material at the Alternative 1 site over a period of 25 years (USACE 2015, Appendix D). The study accounted for subsequent erosion and transport due to storms, waves, and currents and was conducted to demonstrate that dredged material disposed within the modified ODMDS will not exceed the 5-cm deposition contour outside the boundaries of the site (general guidance provided by EPA). Figure 2-3 shows the change in bottom elevations throughout the Alternative 1 site at the end of the 25-year simulation. The white areas around the perimeter and inside the ODMDS depict areas with less than 5 cm of deposition, indicating that the deposition criteria are satisfied. This study confirms that the size and location of the site are adequate to accommodate the dredged material from the Post 45 deepening project and 25 years of maintenance material.

3.2 SEDIMENT CHARACTERISTICS

3.2.1 PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS

3.2.1.1 Native Nearshore Sediments

Numerous nearshore studies have evaluated the distribution of sediments for a variety of purposes. These include core and sub-bottom sonar profiling to evaluate the thickness of the surficial sand lens and studies that have evaluated the characteristics of surficial sediments collected in conjunction with benthic community sampling for various environmental investigations. In general, nearshore sediments consist mainly of fine to very fine-grained sands with some river-derived silts (USACE 1987). A reference sample for the Charleston Harbor Post 45 Section 103 Evaluation collected approximately 7 miles northeast of the ODMDS was comprised primarily of sand (>93% sand) and was classified as poorly-graded sand/silty sand (ANAMAR 2013). Sediment grab samples collected as part of the 2012-2013 hardbottom and cultural resources survey largely consisted of fine to coarse sands, with some areas containing extensive coarse grains and shell hash. Fines were typically less than 10% (Gayes et al. 2013). Figure 3-2 summarizes surficial sediment data describing the percent sand composition collected from various studies.
3.2.1.2 ODMDS and Monitoring Zone Sediments

Surface sediments throughout the ODMDS consist of fine sands (71%) and silts, with a median grain size of 0.25 mm (S&ME 2007). Those results are supported by a 2000 study by Zimmerman et al. (2002), which reported that the majority of sediments were medium to fine-grained sands (mean = 78.0% sand content) mixed with moderate amounts of shell hash. The siltiest sediments were concentrated within the disposal zone itself and in the northwestern outer boundary area (i.e., the boundary area closest to the track of barges bringing material from Charleston Harbor to the disposal site).
Results from the 2002 study by Jutte et al. (2005) indicate sediment composition in the study area was dominated by sand (mean = 75.2%) mixed with moderate amounts of shell hash/calcium carbonate (mean = 18.1%). When sediment composition is analyzed by zone (Figure 3-3), a trend of decreasing silt/clay content is observed when moving from the disposal area (mean silt/clay = 15.6%) and through the inner (mean = 4.6%) and outer boundary zones (4.5%). Silt/clay content was significantly higher in the disposal zone than in the inner and outer boundary zones in 2002 (p < 0.001).

Figure 3-3. Sediment Composition of Each Strata. Data Are Based on the Average of 10 Grab Samples Per Stratum Collected in 2002.
Source: Jutte et al. 2005

An analysis of change in sand content from the 1994 baseline assessment through the 2002 post-disposal assessment shows decreasing sand content within the disposal zone and in the monitoring strata to the west of the disposal zone. Statistical analyses of sediment composition over time found that silt/clay and shell hash content within the disposal area were significantly greater, and sand content was significantly lower in 2002 than in 1993 and 1994 (p < 0.05). Sediments collected in the inner boundary zone in 2002 had significantly lower sand content and higher silt/clay content than sediments collected in 1994 (p = 0.003). Likewise, outer boundary sediments collected in 2002 had significantly lower sand content and higher silt/clay content than sediments from the baseline assessment (p < 0.001). In addition, significantly higher levels of silt/clay were observed in 2002 in the inner and outer boundary zones than were observed in the interim assessment in 2000. No significant differences in the percent composition of shell hash (calcium carbonate) was observed between the study years (p > 0.05) (Jutte et al. 2005). These results indicate that the sediments aren’t generally suitable for beach nourishment (i.e., they are less than 90% sand). Typically, Charleston Harbor maintenance dredged material is not of sufficient grain size to be used for beach placement. In the Draft IFR/EIS for the Post 45 Deepening Study, USACE indicates that beneficial use analyses will be performed during the Preconstruction Engineering and Design phase.
Several hardbottom areas that support reef communities are located in and just outside the ODMDS boundary zones, generally to the west of the ODMDS. Sediment migration caused by disposal operations and natural processes has been detected outside the ODMDS to the west and northwest (Zimmerman et al. 2003, Crowe et al. 2006) (see Section 3.1.3).

3.2.1.3 Charleston Harbor Dredge Material

The grain size in the navigation channel for Charleston Harbor is mostly fine-grain sediments (silt), with some sand in the entrance channel (USACE 2009).

3.2.2 CHEMICAL CHARACTERISTICS

An assessment of bottom sediment characteristics and sediment contaminant levels in the area was first completed in 1978 by the South Carolina Wildlife and Marine Resources Department. (SCWMRD 1979, now the South Carolina Department of Natural Resources). Interstate Electronics Corporation (IEC) tested sediments in the area of the larger ODMDS during 1979 (USEPA 1983). These studies did not find elevated levels of contaminants.

Winn et al. (1989) tested samples in the larger ODMDS and surrounding areas. None of the stations displayed contaminant levels above the range observed in the 1978 SCWMRD study. Minor changes in sediment characteristics were detected, with some movement of material away from the disposal site. However, surficial sediment composition outside the disposal site did not appear to be altered.

A baseline assessment of the current 4-mi² disposal zone was completed in 1993 and 1994, sediment samples were collected in and around the disposal zone during both years (Van Dolah et al. 1996, 1997). Bottom sediments in the area were comprised primarily of medium to fine-grained sands, with variable concentrations of silt/clay and shell hash. Metal contaminants were detected in several strata, but concentrations were generally below known bioeffects levels.

In 2000, the sediment characteristics and sediment contaminants within and surrounding the Charleston ODMDS were assessed approximately halfway through the 1999-2002 Charleston Harbor Deepening Project (Zimmerman et al. 2002). Study results indicate that sediment contaminant levels were low within the disposal zone and surrounding areas. Trace metal, PAH, PCB, and pesticide concentrations were found above the detection limit in several of the monitoring and disposal cells, with the highest levels consistently in disposal zone sediments. Contaminant concentrations were all below published bioeffects guidelines. These findings indicate that sediments containing detectable contaminants were largely limited to the disposal zone and comprised a small proportion of the deposited material.

In 2002, sediment characteristics and sediment contaminants within and surrounding the Charleston ODMDS were assessed after completion of the Charleston Harbor Deepening Project (Jutte et al. 2005). This deepening project involved placement of approximately 20 to 25 mcy of material at the ODMDS. Levels of contaminants within the disposal zone and surrounding areas were low. Trace metal, PAH, PCB, and pesticide concentrations were below published bioeffects guidelines, with the exception of cadmium levels in one stratum within the disposal area. These findings suggest that the presence of contaminated sediments was low and limited to the designated disposal zone. Published bioeffects guidelines used in both the 2000 and 2002 studies included effects range-low (ERL) and effect-range medium (ERM) from Long et al. (1995) and Long and Morgan (1990). Threshold effects level (TEL) and probable effects level (PEL) values were taken from McDonald et al. (1996).
3.3 THREATENED AND ENDANGERED SPECIES

The ESA of 1973 (16 USC § 1531–1534) establishes protection and conservation of threatened and endangered species and the ecosystems upon which they depend. USFWS and the NOAA Fisheries Service (NOAA Fisheries) administer the ESA and may designate critical habitat for each species it protects. Under the ESA, an endangered species is defined as a species in danger of extinction throughout all or a significant portion of its range. A threatened species is defined as a species likely to become an endangered species in the foreseeable future. Section 7 of the ESA requires all federal agencies to consult with USFWS or NOAA Fisheries, as applicable, before initiating any action that could affect a listed species. Threatened and endangered species that may occur in the ODMDS modification area are listed in Table 3.3-1.

The action area (or region of influence) is defined as the geographic area in which listed species could potentially be affected by the proposed action. Since vessels will be transiting between the Charleston Harbor entrance channel and the proposed ODMDS modification area during dredged material disposal activities, the marine habitats inshore of the proposed ODMDS modification area are also considered in this assessment.

Critical habitat is a specific geographic area(s) that is essential for the conservation of a threatened or endangered species and that may require special management and protection. It is designated separately by USFWS or NOAA Fisheries under the ESA. Critical habitat may include an area that is not currently occupied by the species, but that will be needed for its recovery. Critical habitat within the action area is discussed for each species as applicable in the following sections.
Table 3.3-1. Threatened (T) and Endangered (E) Species in the Project Vicinity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Scientific Name</th>
<th>Occurrence in Action Area</th>
<th>Federal Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sea Turtles</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green Turtle</td>
<td><em>Chelonia mydas</em></td>
<td>Occasional at ODMDS</td>
<td>T(^1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loggerhead</td>
<td><em>Caretta caretta</em></td>
<td>Common at ODMDS</td>
<td>T(^2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leatherback</td>
<td><em>Dermochelys coriacea</em></td>
<td>Rare at ODMDS</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kemp's Ridley</td>
<td><em>Lepidochelys kempii</em></td>
<td>Occasional at ODMDS</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hawksbill</td>
<td><em>Eretmochelys imbricata</em></td>
<td>Rare at ODMDS</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marine Mammals</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>North Atlantic Right Whale</td>
<td><em>Eubalaena glacialis</em></td>
<td>Occasional at ODMDS</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Humpback Whale</td>
<td><em>Megaptera novaeangliae</em></td>
<td>Occasional at ODMDS</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finback Whale</td>
<td><em>Balaenoptera physalus</em></td>
<td>Unlikely at ODMDS</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sei Whale</td>
<td><em>Balaenoptera borealis</em></td>
<td>Unlikely at ODMDS</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blue Whale</td>
<td><em>Balaenoptera musculus</em></td>
<td>Unlikely at ODMDS</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sperm Whale</td>
<td><em>Physeter macrocephalus</em></td>
<td>Unlikely at ODMDS</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>West Indian Manatee</td>
<td><em>Trichechus manatus</em></td>
<td>Rare at ODMDS</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fish</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atlantic Sturgeon</td>
<td><em>Acipenser oxyrhinchus oxyrhynchus</em></td>
<td>Occasional at ODMDS</td>
<td>E(^3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shortnose Sturgeon</td>
<td><em>Acipenser brevirostrum</em></td>
<td>Unlikely at ODMDS</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Green turtles are listed as threatened, except for breeding populations of green turtles in Florida and on the Pacific Coast of Mexico, which are listed as endangered.

2 Northwest Atlantic Ocean Distinct Population Segment (DPS) was listed as threatened. NMFS and USFWS issued a final rule changing the listing of loggerhead sea turtles from a single threatened species to nine DPSs listed as either threatened or endangered in 2012 (76 FR 58868).

3 NMFS listed two Atlantic sturgeon DPSs that spawn in the Southeast (the Carolina and the South Atlantic bights) (77 FR 5919).


The following sections briefly summarize important life history traits and distribution of species listed in Table 3.3-1 within the project area.

### 3.3.1 SEA TURTLES

Five of the six species of sea turtles in U.S. waters can be found in the proposed ODMDS modification area and are federally protected under the ESA. These species include the green, loggerhead, leatherback, Kemp’s Ridley, and hawksbill sea turtles. Of these, the loggerhead is the most common in South Carolina waters. The hawksbill is considered rare in the project area.

#### 3.3.1.1 Green Turtle

Green sea turtles are globally distributed within tropical and subtropical waters. Along the Atlantic and Gulf coasts of the United States, they can be found from Texas to Massachusetts and around the U.S. Virgin Islands and Puerto Rico. This species uses beaches for nesting and coastal areas and open ocean convergence zones for feeding. Green turtles’ preferred habitats are seagrass beds and worm-rock reefs, which are located primarily in shallow-water environments along the Atlantic coast. South of North Carolina, green sea turtles are expected to occur year-round in waters between the shoreline and the 50-meter isobath. Green sea
turtles are known to nest in substantial numbers in the southeastern United States. Nesting takes place from April through September, with an incubation period of approximately 2 months (FWC 2002, DoN 2007b). In 2014, eight stranded green turtles were recorded in Charleston County (www.seaturtle.org/strand). Green sea turtles are expected to occur within the vicinity of the proposed ODMDS modification area throughout the year. No critical habitat has been designated for this species in the project area.

3.3.1.2 Loggerhead Turtle

In the project area, the loggerhead is listed as the Northwest Atlantic Ocean Distinct Population Segment (DPS) and is the most common sea turtle in South Carolina. Loggerhead sea turtles are circumglobal, inhabiting continental shelves, bays, estuaries, and lagoons in temperate, subtropical, and tropical waters. The species has been observed as far as 500 miles offshore. They are the most abundant sea turtle found in U.S. coastal waters. About 90% of the total nesting in the United States occurs on the south Atlantic coast of Florida (Fritts et al. 1983). Loggerhead densities seem to be highest during summer months (Fritts et al. 1983), and they forage on benthic invertebrates, fish, and aquatic vegetation.

South Carolina's coastal waters are a migration path for loggerheads at all times of the year, and South Carolina's beaches are within the species’ nesting range in the United States (North Carolina to Mexico). Loggerheads consistently occur off Charleston Harbor during spring, summer, and fall and sporadically occur in the Charleston Harbor estuarine system (USACE 2006). They have been thoroughly monitored in the southeastern region, both in terms of monitoring nesting density and sampling for juvenile loggerhead turtles in shallow coastal waters. SCDNR has been monitoring sea turtle nests since the 1970s. The relative abundance of sea turtle nests on the various beaches surveyed along the South Carolina coastline have been summarized in the GIS layer files to represent turtle nest densities/km of beach (Figure 3-4). Loggerhead sea turtles regularly strand along the coast of South Carolina. In 2014, 21 stranded loggerhead turtles were recorded in Charleston County (www.seaturtle.org/strand). Loggerheads are expected to occur within the vicinity of the proposed ODMDS modification area throughout the year. Critical habitat for the loggerhead exists south of the navigation channel in the nearshore environment off Folly Beach and Morris Island.

Critical habitat has been designated in the action area for the Northwest Atlantic Ocean loggerhead sea turtle Distinct Population Segment. The critical habitat in the action area includes nearshore reproductive habitat in areas just south of the Charleston Harbor entrance channel (Figure 3-5).
Figure 3-4. Example of the Data Summary of the Relative Abundance (#nests/km) and Distribution of Loggerhead Sea Turtle Nests along the South Carolina Coastline, and Juvenile Loggerhead Sea Turtles Caught by Trawl in the In-Water Sea Turtle Surveys and SEAMAP Trawl Surveys

Source: Van Dolah et al. 2011
3.3.1.3 Leatherback Turtle

The leatherback sea turtle is the most widely distributed sea turtle species and is probably the most oceanic of all sea turtles, preferring deep waters (Rebel 1974). Leatherback sea turtles migrate widely and have been reported as far north as Nova Scotia (Lazell 1980). Although generally a deep-diving pelagic species that feeds on jellyfish, they do move seasonally into coastal waters to feed on large jellyfish that are associated with rivers and frontal boundaries. Major rookeries are rare for this species, and dispersed nesting is common. Nesting occurs from March through July, with an incubation period of 55 to 75 days (DoN 2007b).
Leatherbacks are present off the coast of South Carolina. In 2014, three stranded leatherback turtles have been recorded in Charleston County (www.seaturtle.org/strand, accessed September 2014). While there is potential for leatherbacks to be present off the coast of South Carolina during migration, they are not expected to be common within the proposed ODMDS modification area. No critical habitat has been designated for this species in the project area.

3.3.1.4 Kemp's Ridley Turtle
The Kemp's Ridley sea turtle is probably the most endangered of the sea turtles. They are shallow-water benthic feeders and primarily inhabit the Gulf coasts of Mexico and the United States, but are occasionally found as far north as Nova Scotia and Newfoundland in the North Atlantic. This species is found in submerged habitats where there is muddy or sandy substrate where they feed on crabs, fish and mollusks.

Kemp’s Ridley sea turtles are not common off the coast of South Carolina; however, immature individuals are encountered in the nearshore and coastal water of South Carolina (USFWS 1998). Juvenile Kemp’s Ridelies use South Carolina waters as developmental foraging grounds (www.dnr.sc.gov/seaturtle/kl.htm). Subsequently, sub-adult turtles return to neritic zones of the Gulf of Mexico or northwestern Atlantic Ocean to feed and develop until they reach adulthood (www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/species/turtles/kempsridley.htm). In 2014, 15 stranded Kemp's Ridelies were recorded in Charleston County (www.seaturtle.org/strand, accessed September 2014). Accordingly, Kemp's Ridley sea turtles could be present in the proposed ODMDS modification area. No critical habitat has been designated for this species in the project area.

3.3.1.5 Hawksbill Turtle
The hawksbill sea turtle occurs in the tropical and sub-tropical waters of the Atlantic, Pacific, and Indian oceans. They are most commonly associated with coral reefs; however, juveniles are thought to spend time in the pelagic environment. Population estimates and trends are difficult to determine due to its habit of solitary nesting.

While there is some potential for hawksbills to be present off the coast of South Carolina during migration, no nesting beaches are known within South Carolina (Sea Turtle Organization; USACE 2006). In 2014, no stranded hawksbill turtles have been recorded in Charleston County (www.seaturtle.org/strand, accessed September 2014). Outside of an occasional occurrence, hawksbill turtles are not expected within the project area. No critical habitat has been designated for this species in the project area.

3.3.2 MARINE MAMMALS
All marine mammals are protected under the Marine Mammal Protection Act of 1972 (MMPA) and are under the jurisdiction of NMFS or USFWS. With certain exceptions, the MMPA prohibits the taking of marine mammals in U.S. waters by U.S. citizens on the high seas and the importation of marine mammals and marine mammal products into the United States. (NMFS 2005). Therefore, all marine mammals encountered in the offshore region of Charleston must be given due consideration. The emergence of terms, legislation, and monitoring organizations created after the MMPA, such as the ESA of 1973, the USFWS Endangered Species Program, and the International Union for the Conservation of Nature, require that certain species be given greater protection and consideration (IUNC 2008). These populations are more sensitive to and are negatively impacted by factors such as habitat loss, pollution, harvesting, and vessel traffic. Therefore, regulation that protects these species from extinction is fundamental.
3.3.2.1 North Atlantic Right Whale

The historic range of the North Atlantic right whale was from temperate areas to subarctic locations in the North Atlantic Ocean (NAVFAC 2008). Some individuals have been sighted migrating over extremely deep waters, but most sightings occur in coastal and continental shelf waters. Individuals have been reported as far south as the Gulf of Mexico, although these occurrences are rare. Currently, their distribution is highly influenced by season and specific activities. Calving occurs between November and April in southeastern U.S. waters. In February 2015, NOAA Fisheries proposed to expand the designated critical habitat for endangered North Atlantic right whales in the northwestern Atlantic Ocean, including areas that will support calving and nursing. The rule would expand the critical habitat to roughly 29,945 nm², and includes northeast feeding areas in the Gulf of Maine/Georges Bank region and calving grounds from southern North Carolina to northern Florida (Figure 3-6).

![North Atlantic Right Whale Critical Habitat](image)

Figure 3-6. Proposed Southeastern Calving Critical Habitat for North Atlantic Right Whales

*Source: NOAA Fisheries (2015)*
Feeding primarily occurs from spring until fall in coastal waters of the northeastern United States and Canada where their prey (zooplankton) is abundant. When North Atlantic right whales are not occupied with reproductive or paternal duties, their distribution is strongly linked to the distribution of their prey, which is comprised of various zooplankton species, particularly those with high lipid content. Migration for feeding is a critical activity, as both the quality and quantity of their food source are important. Although general distributional patterns do exist, information for many individuals throughout the winter is not well documented (NMFS 2004, 2006a).

Ship collisions and entanglement in fishing gear are the primary causes of injury and death in the population. According to the NMFS Large Whale Ship Strike Database, as of 2004, North Atlantic right whales were the fourth most commonly struck whale species in the world. The region comprised of the southeastern United States and Caribbean had the fifth highest number of vessel strikes on all whale species in the world and was the leader in vessel strikes for all of North America. When speed was recorded for individual vessel strike events, the most common vessel speed was 13 to 15 knots. Substantially fewer strikes occurred for vessels traveling at speeds less than 10 knots (Jensen and Silber 2004). Additional factors such as habitat degradation, contaminants, predators, and past whaling activities have all contributed to the endangered status of the North Atlantic right whale (NMFS 2007b). Of particular concern are dredging activities, as individuals have been sighted in shipping channels and other areas where dredging is common. This has led to agencies encouraging dredging operations to adopt protective measures, such as posting lookouts on hopper dredge vessels and adhering to recommended precautionary guidelines for operations to reduce the risk of collision (NMFS 2004).

According to NMFS, a census of the western North Atlantic right whale population was performed using photo identification techniques and yielded a minimum population count of 455 individuals on October 29, 2012 (NMFS 2014). Figure 3-7 shows the distribution of sightings of known North Atlantic right whales along the U.S. Atlantic coastline from 2007 to 2011. Figure 3-8 provides a summary of the whale sightings along the South Carolina coastline from November and April from 2002-2010.

South Carolina is not currently within designated critical habitat, but right whales would be expected to occur off the coast of South Carolina during their seasonal migrations. Charleston is within the Mid-Atlantic Region, for the purposes of right whale management, an area that extends approximately from Block Island Sound, Rhode Island, to Port of Savannah, Georgia, between known right whale high-use areas in the northeast and winter calving areas in the southeast (MMS 2009). The Mid-Atlantic Region is a migratory corridor for pregnant females moving from northeast to southeast in fall (September to November) and for mother/calf pairs departing winter calving area in the southeast headed for the northeastern United States (March through May), and is likely used by calving females from December to March. The mother-calf pairs stay close to shore, with 94% of sightings within 30 nmi (56 km) of shore and 80% of sightings in depths less than 90 feet (27 m) (MMS 2009). Based on this occurrence data, North Atlantic right whales may be present in the vicinity of the proposed ODMDS modification area.
Figure 3-7. Distribution of Sightings of Known North Atlantic Right Whales, 2007-2011. Isobaths Are the 100-m, 1000-m and 4000-m Depth Contours
Source: NMFS 2014
3.3.2.2 Humpback Whale

Humpback whales are found in all of the world’s oceans and were listed as endangered in 1973. In general, summers are spent at high-latitude feeding grounds from southern New England to Norway, and migration during the winter is to the West Indies, over shallow banks and along continental coasts, where calving occurs. Most humpback whale sightings are in nearshore and continental shelf waters; however, humpback whales frequently travel across deep water during migration. Calving peaks from January through March, but some animals have been documented arriving as early as December, and a few not leaving until June. Strandings occur each year, for which over 50% of the animals exhibit scarring or fresh wounds due to fishing gear entanglement or boat collisions (DoN 2002).

Humpback whales migrate south to calving grounds during the fall and make return migrations to the northern feeding grounds in spring. The habitat in the proposed ODMDS modification area is not ideal for foraging or breeding humpback whales, but would serve as a migration corridor to feeding and breeding grounds. Given their coastal habits and their pattern of distribution and migration, humpback whales can be expected to pass through the vicinity of the

Figure 3-8. Example of the Relative Abundance and Distribution of North American Right Whale Sightings along the Coast of South Carolina

Source: Van Dolah et al. 2011
proposed ODMDS modification area in spring and fall during their migration to and from the Caribbean, and a few may winter in or near the area.

3.3.2.3 West Indian Manatee

The West Indian manatee can be found along coasts and inland waters of the southeastern United States, eastern Mexico, the Greater Antilles (Hispaniola, Cuba, Puerto Rico, Jamaica), and Central America down to as far as northern Brazil. Manatees inhabit both salt and fresh water of sufficient depth (5 feet to usually less than 20 feet) throughout their range (USACE 2006). Manatees may be encountered in shallow, slow-moving water bodies such as canals, rivers, estuarine habitats, and saltwater bays, although on occasion they have been observed as much as 3.7 miles (6 km) off the Florida Gulf coast. Manatees require warm water, migrating to warmer waters whenever the temperature falls below 20°C. They are herbivorous, subsisting on seagrasses, large algae, and freshwater plants. Manatees reproduce slowly, reaching sexual maturity at 5 to 9 years of age and bearing a single young (rarely twins) every 2 to 5 years.

Threats to the manatee include natural mortality due to cold and red tide poisoning and human-induced mortality from loss of habitat, watercraft collisions, pollution, litter, and water control structures. According to Waring et al. (2009), roughly a third of documented manatee mortality is due to human-related causes, the vast majority from collisions with watercraft.

Manatees are known to visit the Charleston Harbor area in the summer months (April through November) as they migrate up and down the coast (USACE 2006). Given their migratory habits, manatees can be assumed to occur in nearshore ocean waters between Charleston Harbor and the ODMDS, although it is unlikely that they would be found at the proposed ODMDS modification area, given the site’s distance from land.

3.3.2.4 Blue Whales

There are insufficient data to determine population trends for blue whales. Their distribution in the western North Atlantic generally extends from the Arctic to at least mid-latitude waters. Blue whales are most frequently sighted in the waters off eastern Canada, with the majority of recent records from the Gulf of St. Lawrence. According to Waring et al. (2009), the blue whale is best considered as an occasional visitor in the U.S. Atlantic EEZ (within 200 miles of the coastline) waters, which may represent the current southern limit of its feeding range. Waring et al. (2009) presents data suggesting that the population in the western North Atlantic may be as low as a few hundred individuals. As a deep-water species (MMS 2003), blue whales are unlikely to be in water as shallow as the proposed ODMDS modification area.

3.3.2.5 Fin Whales

Fin whales are common in waters of the North Atlantic, from the Gulf of Mexico (rarely – they are most abundant north of Cape Hatteras) northward to the edge of the Arctic ice pack (NMFS 2006b). Fin whales accounted for 46% of the large whales and 24% of all cetaceans sighted over the continental shelf during aerial surveys between Cape Hatteras and Nova Scotia during the period 1978 to 1982 (MMS 2009). The latest stock assessment report (Waring et al. 2009) gives a figure of 2,269 as the best abundance estimate available for the western North Atlantic fin whale stock.

The major threats to fin whales in U.S. waters are entanglement in fishing gear and collision with ocean-going vessels. According to MMS (2003), fin whales are typically a deep-water species unlikely to occur close to shore. In addition fin whales, like blue whales, are essentially
a northern species: the survey data presented in Waring et al. (2009) shows relatively few
individuals sighted south of Cape Cod. Accordingly, fin whales would not be expected to occur
in the proposed ODMDS modification area except as very rare stray individuals.

3.3.2.6 Sei Whales
The sei whale population in the North Atlantic constitutes a strategic stock because the species
is listed as endangered under the ESA. The southern portion of the sei whale’s range during
spring and summer includes the northern portions of the U.S. Atlantic EEZ in the Gulf of Maine
and Georges Bank. According to Waring et al. (2009), the size of the population is unknown, as
there have been no reliable surveys since the 1970s.

There are few data on fishery interactions or human impacts. NMFS reported no observed
fishery-related mortality or serious injury to sei whales during the period 1991 to 1999, and there
are no reports of mortality, entanglement, or injury in the NEFSC or NE Regional Office
databases; however, there is a report of a ship strike by a container ship that docked in Boston
in 1994 (MMS 2009). Though sei whales occasionally feed in shallower waters, they are a
northern species that rarely, if ever, occurs south of the Gulf of Maine (Waring et al. 2009). For
these reasons, sei whales are very unlikely to be encountered in coastal waters of South
Carolina, including the proposed ODMDS modification area.

3.3.2.7 Sperm Whales
According to Waring et al. (2009), total numbers of sperm whales off the U.S. Atlantic coast are
unknown, although an abundance estimate for the western North Atlantic from 2004 puts that
population at approximately 4,800 individuals.

Sperm whales are predatory carnivores, consuming fish and large mollusks, particularly squid.
Although sperm whales are deep-water animals rarely venturing close to shore (MMS 2003) and
not often caught by fishery gear, they are regularly stranded on beaches along the Atlantic
Coast for reasons that are still unclear (MMS 2009). Total fishery-related mortality and serious
injury for this stock can be considered to be insignificant and approaching a zero mortality and
serious injury rate. Because sperm whales are open-ocean, deep-water animals, it is unlikely
that any would be found in the shallow waters of the proposed ODMDS modification area.

3.3.3 FISH
3.3.3.1 Atlantic Sturgeon
The historic range of the Atlantic sturgeon is from St. Croix, Maine, to the St. Johns River,
Florida. They spend most of their lives in marine waters and migrate up rivers in February and
March to spawn. A large U.S. commercial fishery (100,000 to 250,000 lbs/year) existed for the
Atlantic sturgeon from the 1950s through the mid-1990s; the origin of the fishery dates back to
colonial times (NOAA NMFS 2009). The Atlantic sturgeon is managed under a fishery
management plan (FMP) implemented by the Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission
(ASMFC). They implemented a coast-wide moratorium on the harvest of wild Atlantic sturgeon
in late 1997/early 1998. This moratorium is to remain in effect until there are at least 20
protected-year classes in each spawning stock (anticipated to take up to 40 or more years).
NMFS followed this with a similar moratorium for federal waters.

Threats from dredging, water quality, and commercial by-catch likely contribute to the population
decline of this species. The status of Atlantic sturgeon was initially reviewed in 1998 after
USFWS and NMFS received a petition to list the species under the ESA; it was determined at
that time that listing was not warranted. In 2003, a workshop sponsored by NMFS and USFWS was held to review the status of the Atlantic sturgeon. The workshop concluded that some populations seemed to be recovering while others continued to be depressed (NOAA NMFS 2009). As a result, NMFS initiated a second status review of the Atlantic sturgeon in 2005 to re-evaluate whether this species required protection under the ESA. That status review was completed in 2007, and the Status Review Team recommended that Atlantic sturgeon in the United States be divided into the following five DPSs: Gulf of Maine; New York Bight; Chesapeake Bay; Carolina; and South Atlantic. After reviewing the available information on the two DPSs located within the NMFS Southeast Region (Carolina and South Atlantic), NMFS determined that listing these two DPSs as endangered is warranted. The Final Listing Rule for South Atlantic and Carolina DPSs of Atlantic sturgeon in the southeast region was published in the Federal Register on February 6, 2012 (77 FR 5914).

The Atlantic sturgeon may be present in the vicinity of the proposed ODMDS modification area.

### 3.3.3.2 Shortnose Sturgeon

The shortnose sturgeon is the smallest of the three sturgeon species that occur in eastern North America. It is an anadromous fish that spawns in coastal rivers along the east coast of North America from the St. John River in Canada to the St. Johns River in Florida (http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/species/fish/shortnosesturgeon.htm, accessed September 9, 2014). In the southern portion of the range, they are found in the St. Johns River in Florida; the Altamaha, Ogeechee, and Savannah rivers in Georgia; and in South Carolina, the river systems that empty into Winyah Bay and the Santee/Cooper River complex that forms Lake Marion. It prefers the nearshore marine, estuarine, and riverine habitats of large river systems. Shortnose sturgeon, unlike other anadromous species in the region such as shad or salmon, do not appear to make long-distance offshore migrations. They are benthic feeders. Juveniles are believed to feed on benthic insects and crustaceans, and adults primarily feed on mollusks and large crustaceans.

Shortnose sturgeon are not expected to occur in the offshore areas in the vicinity of the proposed ODMDS modification area.

### 3.4 HARDBOTTOM HABITATS

Low relief hardbottom areas are scattered throughout the nearshore region of South Carolina and are subject to temporary burial by mobile nearshore sediments and disturbance from scouring. Hardbottom habitats (hardgrounds or live bottoms) are areas of rock or consolidated sediment that can be distinguished from surrounding unconsolidated sediments. These habitats can vary in topography from a relatively flat, smooth surface to a scarped ledge with stepped relief. The extent and diversity of colonization also vary according to topography, habitat diversity, currents, light availability, and location on the shelf. Hardbottom areas near the Charleston ODMDS and elsewhere along the South Carolina coast support low-profile reefs characterized primarily by soft corals (e.g., *Leptogorgia virgulata* and *Titanideum* sp.), the massive sponge *Ircinia* sp., and various encrusting sponges (MMS 2009). These areas are typically rocky outcroppings that support the growth of attached and encrusting invertebrates (as opposed to the burrowing and epibenthic organisms characteristic of soft bottoms) and are considered valuable fish habitat. Hardbottom habitats provide habitat, food, and shelter to a large variety of organisms, including sponges, mollusks, crustaceans, sea worms, echinoderms, sea turtles, and many species of fishes (CSA International, Inc. 2009). Although uncolonized hardbottom habitats do not support attached faunal organisms, they are biologically important as fish refuge habitat. These areas attract many recreationally and commercially important
fishes such as black sea bass, porgies, snappers, and groupers (SCWMRD 1984). Hardbottom reef habitats represent an important biological resource in the South Atlantic Bight and are considered by the South Atlantic Fishery Management Council (SAFMC) as a habitat area of particular concern (HAPC). Live bottoms in the South Atlantic area also represent EFH for the snapper-grouper complex and spiny lobsters (MMS 2008b) (See Section 3.6).

Figure 3-9 depicts results from a regional bottom habitat mapping and database compilation effort that was published in 2001 (SEAMAP-SA 2001, MMS 2008a). Data were based on historical reports using various positioning techniques and bottom habitat may change over time (SEAMAP-SA 2001). Figure 3-9 demonstrates that, in general, known live-bottom habitat occurs mostly outside the 3-mile limit in water deeper than approximately 30 feet (9 m), but potential hardbottom habitat is widely distributed along the coast, even in waters less than approximately 20 feet (6 m) deep. A baseline monitoring study initiated in 1987 discovered hardbottom reef habitats near the ODMDS area, and forced the smaller ODMDS to be de-designated and moved to the current disposal location farther offshore (Winn et al. 1989). Since then, additional hardbottom habitats in the areas surrounding the ODMDS have been reported (Jutte et al. 2003).

Existing sidescan sonar and sub-bottom profiling data from SCDNR and Coastal Carolina University show hardbottom ledges northward and westward of the current disposal area, and possibly to the south. To provide most recent survey data within the project area, CMWS at Coastal Carolina University conducted mapping to delineate hardbottom areas in the proposed ODMDS expansion area between October and December 2012 (Gayes et al. 2014). A combination of geophysical data, sediment grabs, and video tows revealed areas of known, probable, and possible hardbottom within the study area. Results indicate there is a paucity of hardbottom resources within the proposed ODMDS modification area. A 2.4-acre polygon identified as hardbottom straddles the north boundary of the proposed ODMDS modification area (Figure 2-1). Of the 2.4-acre polygon, approximately 1.6 acres are contained within the site itself, with the remaining 1.2 acres occurring just outside and north of the boundary. The 1.6 acres of hardbottom amounts to only 0.04% of the area within the proposed ODMDS modification area and appears to be the only known hardbottom within the site. Areas thought to possibly be hardbottom (termed “possible hardbottom”) constitute 247.4 acres of the proposed ODMDS modification area (6.6% of the area within the site). Outside the site, polygons of known hardbottom lie 0.6 nmi outside the western boundary and amount to 144.5 acres. An additional 46.0 acres of “probable hardbottom” also lie 0.6 nmi outside of the western boundary of the site. In addition, Crowe et al. (2006) stated that hardbottom reef areas are present within 2.2 nmi to the west of the disposal zone.
3.5 FISH AND WILDLIFE RESOURCES

3.5.1 MARINE HABITATS

Habitats in the vicinity of the ODMDS consist of open-ocean water and bottom sediments; the latter include both hardbottom and soft-bottom areas outside the ODMDS, as well as coarse marls, sand, and silty sands deposited inside the ODMDS by dredging projects (see Section 3.2). Habitats adjacent to the ODMDS would be similar except that the soft-bottom habitat would be native sands and silty sands rather than dredged material.
3.5.1.1 Water Column
The nearshore water column supports zooplankton and phytoplankton assemblages that serve as food for juvenile fish and commercially important invertebrates. Plankton are described in more detail in Section 3.5.5.2. The water column is inhabited by demersal and pelagic fish (see Section 3.5.6), including a number of managed species, and several species of marine mammals and sea turtles pass through the site in the water column (see Sections 3.3 and 3.5.3). Temperature, salinity, density, nutrient, and light gradients in the water column create distinct habitats (Barnette 2001; SAFMC 1998), providing environments suitable for various life stages of different species (SAFMC 1998).

3.5.1.2 Benthic Habitat
Benthic habitats are comprised of a variety of sediments, substrates, and marine life that are commercially and economically valuable. The structural foundation of sand and mud in soft-bottom (sedimentary) areas can be enhanced by sand waves or shell aggregations created by physical processes and by tube assemblages, burrows, or depressions created by plants or animals (Lindholm et al. 1998). Soft-bottom habitats contain epifauna (organisms that live on the sediment), infauna (organisms that live within the sediment), and pelagic species (free-swimming species that migrate in and out of the area), whereas hardbottom habitats typically contain only epifaunal and pelagic assemblages. The benthos within the project area are described in more detail in Section 3.5.5.1.

3.5.2 AREAS OF SPECIAL CONCERN

3.5.2.1 Marine Protected Areas
The Marine Protected Area (MPA) inventory is a comprehensive catalog that provides detailed information for existing marine protected areas. Figure 3-10 depicts the MPAs along the South Carolina coastline. Many of the managed MPAs off South Carolina are in relatively deep waters of the continental shelf. Bottom fishing in these areas is restricted by the SAFMC, and any bottom disturbance activities would also be prohibited. There are other managed areas identified in the region that are relatively large in scale, such as the Charleston Bump Closed Area, but it is unclear what restrictions might be in effect in those areas that are not related to fishery efforts (Van Dolah et al. 2011).

3.5.2.2 Artificial Reefs
SCDNR’s artificial reef program was created to enhance recreational fishing and sport diving opportunities in coastal waters, but future uses may emphasize increasing the amount of productive hardbottom fish habitat in the form of sanctuaries or reserves. SCDNR currently maintains 38 artificial reef zones and has identified five known wrecks that are good for fishing activities (Van Dolah et al 2011). Artificial reefs in the vicinity of the proposed ODMDS modification area are depicted in Figure 2-1. The nearest artificial reef is 2.7 nmi north of the site. With the construction of the proposed Charleston Harbor Deepening Project, eight 33-acre reefs will be created adjacent to the entrance channel (four on the north side, and four on the south side).
3.5.3 MARINE MAMMALS

The 2011 Environmental Assessment for the Charleston offshore dredged material disposal site sand borrow project (MMS 2011) and the 2006 Final EIS for the proposed Marine Container Terminal at Charleston Naval Complex (USACE 2006) discuss all marine mammals that are known to have occurred or might reasonably occur in the vicinity of the ODMDS. Based on the findings from those assessments, marine mammals may be present in the coastal waters of the proposed ODMDS modification area. This section considers marine mammals not listed under the ESA. There are 19 non-threatened marine mammal species that could possibly occur in the proposed ODMDS modification area; they are summarized in Table 3.5-1. Most of the marine mammal species are typically found in deeper offshore waters. Key aspects of the biology of in the following sections.
**Table 3.5-1. Marine Mammals That May Occur in the Proposed ODMDS Modification Area**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Scientific Name</th>
<th>Occurrence in Action Area¹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Minke Whales</td>
<td><em>Balaenoptera acutorostrata</em></td>
<td>Unlikely to occur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bryde’s Whales</td>
<td><em>Balaenoptera edeni/brydei</em></td>
<td>Unlikely to occur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pygmy and Dwarf Sperm Whales</td>
<td><em>Kogia breviceps, K. sima</em></td>
<td>Unlikely to occur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beaked Whales – Cuvier’s, True’s, Gervais’, Blainville’s, Sowerby’s</td>
<td>Family: Ziphiidae</td>
<td>Unlikely to occur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rough-Toothed Dolphin</td>
<td><em>Steno bredanensis</em></td>
<td>Unlikely to occur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bottlenose Dolphin</td>
<td><em>Tursiops truncatus</em></td>
<td>Likely to occur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pantropical Spotted Dolphin</td>
<td><em>Stenella attenuata</em></td>
<td>Unlikely to occur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atlantic Spotted Dolphin</td>
<td><em>Stenella frontalis</em></td>
<td>Unlikely to occur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinner Dolphin</td>
<td><em>Stenella longirostris</em></td>
<td>Unlikely to occur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Striped Dolphin</td>
<td><em>Stenella coeruleoalba</em></td>
<td>Unlikely to occur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clymene Dolphin</td>
<td><em>Stenella clymene</em></td>
<td>Unlikely to occur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short-Beaked Common Dolphin</td>
<td><em>Delphinus delphis</em></td>
<td>Unlikely to occur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fraser’s Dolphin</td>
<td><em>Lagenodelphis hosei</em></td>
<td>Unlikely to occur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Risso’s Dolphin</td>
<td><em>Grampus griseus</em></td>
<td>Unlikely to occur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Melon-Headed Whale</td>
<td><em>Peponocephala electra</em></td>
<td>Unlikely to occur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pygmy Killer Whale</td>
<td><em>Feresa attenuata</em></td>
<td>Unlikely to occur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>False Killer Whale</td>
<td><em>Pseudorca crassidsens</em></td>
<td>Unlikely to occur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Killer Whale</td>
<td><em>Orcinus orca</em></td>
<td>Unlikely to occur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short-Finned and Long-Finned Pilot Whales</td>
<td><em>Globicephala macrorhynchus/G. melas</em></td>
<td>Unlikely to occur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ The species that may occur, but are unlikely to occur in the project area are primarily based on their distribution and depths.

Source: MMS 2011

3.5.3.1 Bottlenose Dolphin

Of all dolphin species in the western North Atlantic, the species most commonly found in the project area is the bottlenose dolphin (*Tursiops truncatus*). Scientists currently recognize several nearshore (coastal) and one offshore morphotype or form of bottlenose dolphins, which are distinguished by external and cranial morphology, parasite load, hematology, and diet (Duffield et al. 1983; Hersh and Duffield 1990; Mead and Potter 1995; Curry and Smith 1997). This is further broken down into seven discrete MUs (or stocks) that have distinct spatial and temporal components. NMFS provides abundance estimates for each MU by season. The South Carolina MU is believed to be comprised of 2,325 bottlenose dolphins, with a minimum of 1,963 individuals (Waring et al. 2009). Currently, a single western North Atlantic offshore stock is recognized seaward of 21 miles (34 km) from the U.S. coastline (Waring et al. 2009). The best population estimate is 81,588 individuals, and the minimum population estimate for this stock is 70,775 individuals (Waring et al. 2009).

The MUs of the coastal morphotype show a temperature-limited distribution, occurring in significantly warmer waters than the offshore stock and having a distinct northern boundary (Kenney 1990). Surface water temperature may influence seasonal movements of migrating coastal dolphins along the western North Atlantic coast (Barco et al. 1999); these seasonal movements are likely also influenced by movements of prey resources. In the western North
Atlantic, the greatest concentrations of the offshore stock are along the continental shelf break (Kenney 1990). Evidence suggests that the offshore stock does not inhabit waters closer than 7 miles (12 km) from shore during summer and 17 miles (27 km) from shore during winter (Garrison and Yeung 2001). During CETAP surveys, offshore bottlenose dolphins generally were distributed between the 660- and the 6,600-foot (200- and 2,000-m) isobaths in waters with a mean bottom depth of 2,780 feet (846 m) from Cape Hatteras to the eastern end of Georges Bank. Geography and temperature also influence the distribution of offshore bottlenose dolphins (Kenney 1990). Bottlenose dolphins are expected to be the most common marine mammal species in the project area.

3.5.4 AVIAN RESOURCES

Avian resources within the project area would consist of seabirds, the most common of which, according to Jodice et al. (2007), would be laughing gulls (Larus auritus), brown pelicans (Pelecanus occidentalis), royal terns (Sterna maxima), and Sandwich terns (Sterna sandvicensis). Pelicans and terns maintain several nesting colonies along the coast of South Carolina, including Crab Bank and Castle Pinckney in Charleston Harbor and Bird Key approximately 15 miles southwest of Charleston Harbor (Jodice et al. 2007). These species and gulls typically feed in coastal waters, foraging on bait fish such as menhaden, sardines, anchovies, and mullet. Far-ranging pelagic seabirds such as tropicbirds, petrels, jaegers, gannets, and shearwaters would also be expected in coastal waters at various times of the year, feeding on schools of bait fish and squid (Lee and McDonough 2001).

3.5.5 AQUATIC RESOURCES

3.5.5.1 Benthos

Benthic organisms provide an important food source for many species. Temporal and spatial variations in benthic communities affect the distribution and abundance of bottom-feeding fish. The abundance and species composition of benthic communities are affected by environmental factors, including temperature, sediment type, and the availability of organic matter (Stevenson et al. 2004). In general, nearshore biological communities are characterized by benthic infaunal assemblages with low abundances and high diversity, productive panaeid shrimp and anadromous fish species, and hardbottom assemblages.

Overview—2000 Benthic Data

Zimmerman et al. (2002) assessed the bottom habitats within and surrounding the Charleston ODMDS approximately halfway through the 1999-2002 Charleston Harbor Deepening Project. The ODMDS disposal zone and surrounding boundary area were divided into 20 discrete strata of comparable size, approximately 1 mi². Benthic grabs were collected at 10 randomly selected locations within each of the 20 strata (Figure 3-11).

The soft-bottom benthic assemblages of the coastal ocean off South Carolina, which include the proposed ODMDS modification area, are typical of the subtropical continental shelf. During the 2000 study, 402 taxa were collected with a site-wide mean density of 3,939 individuals per square meter. Polychaetes were the most abundant taxonomic group, comprising 56% of all organisms identified in samples collected during the survey. The category ‘other taxa’ (e.g., Nemertina, Branchiostoma sp., Polygordiidae) made up 21% of the total abundance, and amphipods and mollusks comprised 13% and 10% of the total abundance, respectively. Table 3.5-2 summarizes the 25 numerically dominant taxa collected in and around the ODMDS. The first 14 taxa made up 50% of the total number of individuals.
At the ODMDS, the monitoring cells affected by disposal activities had benthic assemblages somewhat different from those of the non-impacted cells. A statistical comparison showed that while seven of the 11 numerically dominant taxa were common to both non-impacted and impacted cells, the impacted cells had fewer *Prionospio cristata* and Polygordiidae and more *P. dayi* and Nemertina than the non-impacted cells. Furthermore, *Branchiostoma* sp. and *Eudevenopus honduranus* were among the top 11 taxa for the non-impacted cells but not for the impacted cells. Both of these taxa, according to Zimmerman et al. (2002), are not characteristic of muddy sediments. *Magelona* sp. and *Protohaustorius deichmannae*, both associated with muddy sediments, were among the dominants in the impacted cells but not in the non-impacted cells. These changes indicate that the disposal of fine-grained material, which has occurred almost every year since 1988 (USACE et al. 2005), has somewhat changed the composition of the benthic infaunal community at the ODMDS, although Zimmerman et al. (2002) characterize the changes as subtle.
Overview—2002 Benthic Data
Jutte et al. (2005) assessed the biological condition of bottom habitats within and surrounding the Charleston ODMDS after the conclusion of disposal activities associated with the 1999-2002 Charleston Harbor Deepening Project. During the 2002 study, more than 18,600 organisms representing 448 taxa were collected. The general taxonomic structure of the benthic assemblage was dominated by polychaetes, which comprised 35% of the total number of individuals collected. Dominant polychaetes included *Prionospio cristata*, *Microspio pigmentata*, *P. dayi*, *Prionospio* sp., *Mediomastus* sp., *Myriochele oculata*, *Bhawania heteroseta*, and *Magelona* sp. Amphipods composed approximately 14% of the total abundance, with mollusks and other taxa contributing 26% and 25% of the total number of individuals collected, respectively. Table 3.5-2 summarizes the 25 numerically dominant taxa from the 2000 and 2002 studies.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Species Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Total Abundance</th>
<th>Species Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Total Abundance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Prionospio dayi</em></td>
<td>P</td>
<td>3078</td>
<td>Polygordiidae</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>4785</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Prionospio cristata</em></td>
<td>P</td>
<td>2413</td>
<td><em>Crassinella martinicensis</em></td>
<td>M</td>
<td>2180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Branchiostoma</em> sp.</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>1840</td>
<td><em>Prionospio cristata</em></td>
<td>P</td>
<td>2078</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Rhepoxynius epistomus</em></td>
<td>A</td>
<td>1818</td>
<td><em>Rhepoxynius epistomus</em></td>
<td>A</td>
<td>2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Sabellaria vulgaris</em></td>
<td>P</td>
<td>1728</td>
<td><em>Nemertea</em></td>
<td>O</td>
<td>1560</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nemertinea</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>1633</td>
<td><em>Parvilucina multiilineata</em></td>
<td>M</td>
<td>1260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Prionospio</em> sp.</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>1163</td>
<td><em>Crassinella lunalata</em></td>
<td>M</td>
<td>1233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Sabellaridae</em></td>
<td>P</td>
<td>1103</td>
<td><em>Eudevenopus honduranus</em></td>
<td>A</td>
<td>1030</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Magelona</em> sp.</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>1018</td>
<td><em>Branchiostoma</em> sp.</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>913</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polygordiidae</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>1008</td>
<td><em>Caecum pulchellum</em></td>
<td>M</td>
<td>865</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Mediomastus</em> sp.</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>870</td>
<td><em>Microspio pigmentata</em></td>
<td>P</td>
<td>825</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Eudevenopus honduranus</em></td>
<td>A</td>
<td>835</td>
<td><em>Prionospio dayi</em></td>
<td>P</td>
<td>788</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protohaustorius deichmannae</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>800</td>
<td>Tellinidae</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>758</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Myriochele oculata</em></td>
<td>P</td>
<td>633</td>
<td><em>Strigilla mirabilis</em></td>
<td>M</td>
<td>720</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Bhawania heteroseta</em></td>
<td>P</td>
<td>578</td>
<td><em>Cylchnella bidentata</em></td>
<td>M</td>
<td>663</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Mediomastus californiensis</em></td>
<td>P</td>
<td>555</td>
<td><em>Prionospio</em> sp.</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>663</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Mellita</em> sp.</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>555</td>
<td><em>Sipuncula</em></td>
<td>O</td>
<td>628</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Goniada littorea</em></td>
<td>P</td>
<td>495</td>
<td><em>Mediomastus</em> sp.</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>590</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ophiuroidea</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>493</td>
<td><em>Oligochaeta</em></td>
<td>O</td>
<td>568</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Acanthohaustorius itermedius</em></td>
<td>OA</td>
<td>455</td>
<td><em>Myriochele oculata</em></td>
<td>P</td>
<td>560</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Oligochaeta</em></td>
<td>PO</td>
<td>453</td>
<td><em>Tellina agilis</em></td>
<td>M</td>
<td>553</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Synelmis ewingi</em></td>
<td>P</td>
<td>435</td>
<td><em>Bhawania heteroseta</em></td>
<td>P</td>
<td>540</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Armandia maculate</em></td>
<td>P</td>
<td>380</td>
<td><em>Pelecypoda</em></td>
<td>M</td>
<td>523</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Natica pusilla</em></td>
<td>M</td>
<td>370</td>
<td><em>Aspidosiphon gosnoldi</em></td>
<td>O</td>
<td>485</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Crassinella martinicensis</em></td>
<td>M</td>
<td>343</td>
<td><em>Magelona</em> sp.</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>450</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

P = Polychaete, A = Amphipod, M = Mollusk, O = Other

Sources: Zimmerman et al. (2002), Jutte et al. (2005)
Spatial comparisons of the 2002 benthic community data included a variety of metrics and statistical techniques and documented patterns in the benthic community structure indicating that disposal-related effects are still present and detectable in the boundary areas surrounding the Charleston ODMDS. Comparisons between non-impacted (east of the disposal area) and impacted strata (west and northwest of the disposal area) found significantly greater abundance of mollusks and amphipods and a greater diversity of polychaetes, amphipods, mollusks, and other taxa in non-impacted areas compared to impacted areas. Cluster analyses revealed that the benthic community structure in most impacted strata was similar based on species composition and relative abundance. A second strata group resulted from the cluster analysis and was composed of both impacted and non-impacted strata, suggesting either recovery of benthic communities in some impacted strata or the occurrence of disposal-related effects in non-impacted strata.

Analyses of the ten dominant taxa collected in 2002 indicated that five of these species were found in significantly fewer numbers in impacted strata than in non-impacted strata, and one species was found in significantly greater numbers in impacted strata than in non-impacted strata. The remaining species showed no significant differences among strata types. Patterns in the abundance of individual species are likely consequences of physiological or behavioral responses to alterations in sediment characteristics caused by disposal operations.

### 3.5.5.2 Plankton

Plankton are defined as organisms that float or drift and cannot maintain their direction against the movement of currents (Parsons et al. 1984). There are three main groups of plankton: bacterioplankton, phytoplankton, and zooplankton (Knox 2001). Plankton communities have important roles in marine waters. Bacterioplankton are primarily decomposers. Phytoplankton are single-celled organisms that float in the open ocean and are similar to plants because they photosynthesize using sunlight and chlorophyll. Zooplankton are small, mostly microscopic animals such as crustaceans and fish larvae that inhabit the water column.

**Phytoplankton**
Phytoplankton are often referred to as primary producers because they are at the base of the food chain and are essential to the overall productivity of the ocean. Phytoplankton standing crops generally are higher nearshore than offshore; however, considerable patchiness occurs and is correlated with nutrient availability. Salinity tolerances combined with limited photosynthetic capabilities are the main influences regarding what species inhabit the area, and abundance of certain species fluctuates throughout the year. In general, diatoms dominate the phytoplankton in nearshore and continental shelf waters (Roberts 1974, BLM 1977). Marshall (1971) identified approximately 100 diatoms species in the shelf waters. Dominant species include *Skeletonema costatum*, *Leptocylindrus danicus*, and *Nitzschia seriata*.

**Zooplankton**
Zooplankton are faunal components of the plankton, and their biomass is influenced by seasonal fluctuations in hydrography and phytoplankton abundance (Lalli and Parsons 1997). Zooplankton in nearshore waters are abundant and are dominated by copepods and meroplankton. *Acartia tonsa* is a dominant nearshore copepod species (USEPA 1983). Meroplankton are seasonally dominated by shrimp (mainly *Penaeus*), crab, and fish larvae (USEPA 1983).
3.5.6 FISHERIES RESOURCES

Federally managed species and non-managed species are found in the proposed ODMDS modification area. This section describes general finfish, epifauna, and shellfish resources in the project area, as well as species observed in the area.

3.5.6.1 Finfish

South Carolina’s open coastal waters in the vicinity of the ODMDS support two major fish habitats, as defined by Oakley and Pugliese (2001): the live/hard-bottom areas and the flat, soft-bottom area that comprises most of the nearshore shelf. The live/hard-bottom fish assemblage is dominated by snapper-grouper species, notably black sea bass (*Centropristis striata*), which are very abundant over South Carolina nearshore hardbottoms (SCDNR website). These species have a variety of feeding habitats, although they all depend heavily on reef resources. Black sea bass and most of the groupers, top predators in hardbottom habitats as adults, are opportunistic feeders on fish and benthic invertebrates, including shrimp and crabs (SAFMC 2009, SMS 2005). Lower-order predators such as scup (*Stenotomus chrysops*), hogfish (*Lachnolaimus maximus*), and porgy (*Pagrus* spp.) tend to pick encrusting invertebrates off of hard substrates (SAFMC 2009). Grunts (*Haemulon* spp.) are bottom-feeders on small invertebrates associated with the reefs and adjacent soft bottoms (SAFMC 2009). Small forage fish such as gobies (Gobiidae), blennies (Labrisomidae), damselfish (Pomacenthidae), and the young of larger species feed on reef algae, small invertebrates, and zooplankton and serve as food for larger fish, including open-water species that forage over the reefs.

The soft-bottom assemblage includes nearshore demersals, coastal pelagics, and open-ocean pelagics that migrate through the study area. Abundant demersal species include drums and croakers (e.g., *Cynoscion regalis*, *Leiostomus xanthurus*, *Micropogonias undulatus*, *Pogonias cromis*, *Sciaenops ocellatus*, *Stellifer lanceolatus*), seashad (*Centropristis* spp.), grunts (*Haemulidae*), several species of flounders (*Paralichthys* spp.), small forage fish such as searobin (*Prionotus carolinus*), lizardfish (*Synodus foetens*), toadfish (*Opsanus tau*), and skates and rays (e.g., *Raja eglanteri*, *Dasyatis americana*). The demersal fish tend to be bottom-feeders that depend heavily upon the benthic habitat for their food base. Drums, croakers, skates, and rays prey on the infauna (e.g., worms, clams, amphipods, and small burrowing fish such as lizardfish and gobies) and epifauna (e.g., shrimp, crabs, snails, toadfish, and searobins) of the soft bottom (SAFMC 2009, SMS 2005). Flounders, top predators in the demersal habitat (SMS 2005), are largely piscivorous as adults but tend to feed on epibenthic invertebrates as juveniles (SCDNR website, 2005).

Pelagic fish include small, schooling forage fish such as Atlantic menhaden (*Brevoortia tyrannus*), shad (*Alosa* spp.), anchovies and sardines, and mullet (*Mugil cephalus*) that feed largely on plankton, algae, and organic detritus (SMS 2005), as well as larger predatory species such as silver perch (*Bairdiella chrysoura*), barracuda (*Sphyraena barracuda*), mackerel species (*Scomberomorus maculatus*, *S. cavalla*, *Acanthocybium solandri*), bluefish (*Pomatomus saltatrix*), and various sharks (e.g., *Carcharhinus limbatis*, *Isurus oxyrinchus*, *Squalus acantias*). The forage fish feed largely on plankton and are themselves fed upon by most of the predatory organisms of the open coastal habitat (SMS 2005); anchovies, sardines, and menhaden are important food for many predatory fish and seabirds. Bluefish, barracuda, and mackerel, important coastal predators, feed on the forage fish, on squid, and on other another, and are in turn fed upon by larger predators such as sharks and billfish (SMS 2005). Oceanodromous species that are encountered in shelf waters include several members of the tuna family (e.g., *Thunnus* spp., *Euthunnus* spp.), occasional billfish such as marlins and swordfish, and dolphins (*Coryphaena hippurus*), all of which are piscivorous top predators.
NMFS requires all commercial fishermen with a permit to harvest finfish collected in federal waters to report their landings and identify the location of harvest. Based on the average number of pounds of fish landed in South Carolina from 2005 to 2009 that included all species reported to the NMFS, 20 species comprised 80% of the total landings, with individual species catch totals ranging from a high of 1,306,034 pounds for vermilion snapper to a low of 111,785 pounds for red snapper among the top 20 species. The order of catch landings in decreasing order of poundage was vermilion snapper, gag, scamp, swordfish, black sea bass, wreckfish, red grouper, triggerfishes, amberjack, dolphin, almaco jack, tilefish (SC Golden), snowy grouper, red porgy, white grunt, sandbar shark, king mackerel, perch-like fish, rock hind, and red snapper (Van Dolah et al. 2011).

3.5.6.2 Epifauna

The diversity and biomass of nearshore infaunal communities exhibit considerable spatial and temporal variability; thus, seasonal patterns are unpredictable (Frankenberg and Leiper 1977). Common macroinfaunal organisms of nearshore, fine-sand substrates include polychaetes (*Spiophanes bombyx*), bivalves (*Tellina* spp.), and cumaceans (*Oxyurostylis smithi*) (Boesch 1977). Dominant sessile invertebrates observed by Crowe et al. (2006) during the diver surveys from fall 2000 through spring 2005 consisted of soft corals (sea fingers [*Titanideum* sp.], sea whips [*Leptogorgia* sp.]), and various massive and encrusting sponges. Fishes observed during diver surveys included the black sea bass (*Centropristis striata*), bank sea bass (*Centropristis ocyurus*), scup (*Stenotomus chrysops*), sheepshead (*Archosargus probatocephalus*), slippery dick (*Halichoeres bivittatus*), and tomtate (*Haemulon aurolineatum*).

3.5.6.3 Shellfish

Three species of penaeid shrimp are commercially harvested in South Carolina, with the majority of the catch caught offshore by trawlers working in the nearshore zone. The two most abundant species are brown shrimp (*Farfantepenaeus aztecus*) and white shrimp (*Litopenaeus setiferus*). The third species, which is only incidentally caught, is pink shrimp (*Farfantepenaeus duorarum*).

Commercial shrimp harvests are reported to the SCDNR Office of Fisheries Management for 10 trawling areas within the general trawling zone of South Carolina (Figure 3-12). Shrimp trawling is generally limited to the state’s coastal boundary (3-mile limit), although some shrimping activity occurs seaward of that line unless it is closed by SAFMC. In order to provide summary information on the relative amount of shrimp landings in each zone, the average annual reported weights (in pounds, heads on) of the commercial trawl landings for both brown and white shrimp, collectively, from 2005 to 2009 are shown in Figure 3-12 (Van Dolah et al. 2011). The brown shrimp season generally runs from June to August, and the white shrimp season generally runs from August to December.
3.5.6.4 Invasive/Non-Indigenous Species

Jutte et al. (2005) assessed the biological condition within and surrounding the Charleston ODMDS after the conclusion of disposal activities associated with the 1999-2002 Charleston Harbor Deepening Project. During the 2002 study, more than 18,600 organisms representing 448 taxa were collected. There is no mention in the results section of presence of invasive or non-indigenous species.

3.6 ESSENTIAL FISH HABITAT

The EFH within and adjacent to the proposed ODMDS modification area was assessed in accordance with the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (MSA) (MSA 16 U.S.C. 1855 (b)) including the Sustainable Fisheries Act (SFA [16 U.S.C. 1801]) amendment of 1996. The MSA was reauthorized in 2006. The SFA requires identifying habitats needed to create sustainable fisheries and comprehensive fishery management plans with habitat inclusions. EFH is defined by National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS) (2004) and approved by the Secretary of Commerce acting through NMFS (50 CFR 600.10) as "...those waters and substrate necessary to fish for spawning, breeding, feeding, or growth to maturity (MSA § 3(10))."
The South Atlantic Fishery Management Council (SAFMC) implements regulations through NMFS for species in its management region. This council is responsible for managing and conserving 79 fish, 8 crustacea, 2 macroalgae, and various soft and hard coral species’ stocks and associated habitats between state waters and the eastern extent of the exclusive economic zone (200 nmi offshore) off the coast of South Carolina and neighboring states (SAFMC [no date]; Table 1, Appendix B). The NMFS Office of Sustainable Fisheries provides oversight and support for SAFMC through the development of national policies, guidance, and regulations. The Highly Migratory Species Management Division of NMFS manages an additional four major groups of pelagic fishes: 41 species of sharks, 5 tunas, 1 swordfish, and 5 billfishes (NMFS 2009). Table 2 in Appendix B provides a complete list of Atlantic highly migratory species and fishery management plans (FMPs) managed by NMFS. Although the Mid-Atlantic Fishery Management Council (MAFMC) does not have jurisdiction off South Carolina, some species managed by MAFMC have EFH identified off South Carolina and farther south (NMFS 2008) since councils have the ability to designate EFH outside their region of jurisdiction (Geo-Marine 2008). EFH for MAFMC-managed species relevant to the alternative site area will be addressed are part of this EFH assessment. Table 3 in Appendix B lists species and FMPs managed or co-managed by MAFMC.

This section identifies EFH and HAPC based on descriptions from several guidance documents by NOAA and fishery management councils. These documents include:

- SAFMC (1998a, b)
- NOAA (2009)
- MAFMC and NMFS (2011)

The NOAA Fisheries Essential Fish Habitat Mapper (NOAA Fisheries 2014) online resource was used as supplemental information. HAPC represent a more limited habitat designation for a given species or managed group. HAPC are described as ecologically important rare subsets of EFH and are particularly susceptible to environmental degradation due to proximity to human activities. Such areas may serve as key habitats for migrations, spawning, or rearing of fishes and invertebrates. Some HAPC are geographically-defined or habitat-specific, while others are taxa-specific or even life-stage-specific. EFH identified by SAFMC that may be present in the proposed ODMDS modification area is summarized below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Essential Fish Habitat Important to a Variety of Managed Taxa and Applicable to the Alternative Site¹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Live/hardbottom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water column</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹Source: Appendix 4 in NMFS (2008) and SAFMC (2009).

### 3.6.1 MANAGED HABITATS

#### 3.6.1.1 Marine Water Column

SAFMC (1998b) describes habitats within the water column as “gradients and discontinuities in temperature, salinity, density, nutrients, light, [and other parameters]” that are affected by spatial and temporal forces. This fluidly structured habitat is identified as EFH by SAFMC and NMFS in various FMP amendments (SAFMC 1998a, NMFS 2008, SAFMC and NMFS 2011).
Pelagic species of the brown seaweed Sargassum are an important habitat in the water column and near-surface waters. Large quantities of Sargassum are frequently found on the continental shelf off the southeastern United States. Sargassum supports a diverse assemblage of marine organisms, including fungi, macro- and micro-epiphytes, at least 145 species of invertebrates, over 100 species of fish, four species of sea turtles, and numerous marine birds. Sargassum provides refuge from predators for small species and early life stages; these organisms also feed on the Sargassum and associated invertebrates. Sargassum is a habitat type managed by SAFMC as EFH (Section 3.6; SAFMC 1998). It is susceptible to various pollution sources such as petroleum from ships creating oil slicks that enter gaps in the mat and remain trapped, ultimately leading to mortality in the Sargassum mat (Butler et al. 1983). Sargassum may be present in the vicinity of the proposed ODMDS modification area, but it is mobile and patchy due to movement with physical features such as currents and wind.

3.6.1.2 Live/Hardbottom

Hardbottom within and adjacent to the proposed ODMDS modification area is discussed in detail in Section 3.4. Live/hardbottom habitat is included in the Coral, Coral Reefs, and Live/Hardbottom Habitat (Coral) FMP (SAFMC [no date] and 2009) and is also managed as habitat (SAFMC 1998a, b, 2009). The Coral FMP includes all taxa belonging to the classes hydrozoa and anthozoa including those not strictly considered corals, along with habitats broadly termed coral reefs, and assemblages of live organisms attached to hardbottom (termed ‘live rock’) (SAFMC [no date] and 2009). This complex of mineral and biological factors that make up hardbottom habitat provide shelter and other necessities for innumerable species, both managed and non-managed.

The Coral FMP defines coral reefs and coral communities as habitats with corals as important contributors and includes outer bank coral reefs, coral communities, and patch reefs (SAFMC 2009). The continuum of communities that fit within this FMP also includes habitats outside those listed above (such as solitary corals over soft substrates), as long as corals provide important contributions (SAFMC 2009). The live rock component of this FMP refers specifically to any living organism assembled or attached to a hard substrate, including dead coral or rock, but excluding individual mollusk shells (SAFMC [no date]).

EFH for anthozoans (excepting pennatulaceans [sea pansies and sea pens]) consists of rough, hard, exposed, stable substrate in depths from nearshore to the outer continental shelf throughout the U.S. South Atlantic management area (SAFMC 1998a). EFH for sea pansies and sea pens includes soft substrates (e.g., mud, silt) in nearshore to outer shelf waters (SAFMC 1998a).

Small EFH polygons appear to be within the vicinity of the alternative site and possibly contained within the alternative site based on the NOAA Fisheries EFH Mapper which appears to be in agreement with the study conducted by Gayes et al. 2013 (Figure 2-1). HAPC for coral reefs and hardbottom are farther south of the alternative site, off Georgia and Florida. The nearest Oculina Bank HAPC is located far southeast of the alternative site and is associated with the edge of the continental shelf off Palm Beach County, Florida (SAFMC 1998a, NOAA Fisheries 2014). The spatial data in NOAA Fisheries (2014) compares well with the written description of EFH provided by SAFMC (1998a).
3.6.2 MANAGED TAXA

3.6.2.1 Shrimp

The Shrimp FMP consists of six species: brown shrimp (*Farfantepenaeus aztecus*), pink shrimp (*Farfantepenaeus duorarum*), white shrimp (*Litopenaeus setiferus*), seabob (*Xiphopenaeus kroyeri*), brown rock shrimp (*Sicyonia brevirostris*) and royal red shrimp (*Pleoticus robustus*) (SAFMC, 2009). All four of the managed species of penaeid shrimp include the proposed ODMDS modification area within their respective ranges and occur from inshore waters to about 110 meters depth (Tavares 2002b). Preferred substrates include mud, sand, peat, and shell bottoms (Tavares 2002b). The four managed species can occur within estuaries during at least their early life history stages (Tavares 2002b). The white shrimp is most abundant in brackish water estuaries over soft mud and clay bottoms (Tavares 2002b). Post-larvae and juveniles live and grow within estuaries (Tavares 2002b).

The abundance of penaeid shrimp may correspond with the availability of favored substrates offshore (SAFMC 1998b). For instance, pink shrimp appear to show a positive correlation with coarse-grained and calcareous substrate (SAFMC 1998b). White and brown shrimp appear to favor soft sediment (muddy or peaty bottoms) near to shore and occur in dense concentrations there (SAFMC 1998b, 2009).

EFH for penaeid shrimp include estuarine nursery areas, offshore habitats, and connecting waterways for spawning and growth to maturity (SAFMC 1998a). Nursery areas included as EFH consist of tidal freshwater, coastal wetlands (e.g., intertidal marshes, tidal forests, and mangroves), estuaries, nearshore flats, and submerged aquatic vegetation (SAFMC 1998a). HAPCs include all coastal inlets, all state-identified nursery habitats of importance to this group, and state-identified overwintering areas (SAFMC 1998a). Tidal creeks and salt marshes serving as nurseries are perhaps the most important habitats for penaeid shrimp (SAFMC 1998a, b).

There is no HAPC for penaeid shrimp identified in or near the proposed ODMDS modification area based on spatial data in NOAA Fisheries (2014) and the written description of EFH provided by SAFMC (1998a).

The brown rock shrimp is a nocturnal species most often found on white sand bottom with shell fragments and in water depths from nearshore to at least 190 meters (Huff and Cobb 1979, Tavares 2002b). The species is most abundant in depths of less than 100 meters (Tavares 2002b). EFH for brown rock shrimp consists of terrigenous and biogenic sand substrate in offshore waters from 18 to 182 meters deep, including waters off South Carolina (SAFMC 1998a). The Gulf Stream is EFH due to its significant role in larval dispersal (SAFMC 1998a). There are no HAPCs for brown rock shrimp identified in or near the alternative site based on SAFMC (1998a). EFH is not currently identified on the NOAA EFH Mapper (NOAA Fisheries 2014).

3.6.2.2 Spiny Lobster

The Caribbean spiny lobster is the most important commercial spiny lobster species in the western central Atlantic (Tavares 2002a). In South Carolina, the Caribbean spiny lobster occurs from inshore to at least 90 meters depth (Tavares 2002a). These lobsters are shelter-seekers, relying on rocks, reefs, seagrass beds, or artificial shelter as habitat (Tavares 2002a). Females migrate to deeper water for spawning (Tavares 2002a).
EFH for this species includes nearshore shelf and oceanic waters, shallow subtidal bottom, seagrass beds, unconsolidated bottom (soft sediment), coral and live/hardbottom, sponges, algal communities (e.g., Laurencia spp.), and mangrove habitat (e.g., red mangrove prop roots) (SAFMC 1998a). The Gulf Stream also provides EFH due to its role in dispersion of larvae (SAFMC 1998a, b).

EFH includes the proposed ODMDS modification area and surrounding area for all life stages combined, including much of the inshore, nearshore, and offshore waters of the area (NOAA Fisheries 2014). HAPC is not identified in or near the proposed ODMDS modification area based on NOAA Fisheries (2014) and SAFMC (1998a).

3.6.2.3 Snapper-Grouper Complex

A total of 73 species representing 10 families in two orders are contained within the Snapper-Grouper Complex FMP (SAFMC [no date]). Of the 73 species managed on this FMP, 66 may be found in and around the proposed ODMDS modification area, while the remaining seven have known depth or geographic ranges that are far outside those of the alternative site. Table 1 in Appendix B provides a complete list of managed species and indicates those species not found in the proposed ODMDS modification area due to depth or geographic range constraints. Most species are demersal, while some, such as the jacks (Carangidae), are pelagic. There is substantial variation in life history patterns and habitat usage among this diverse multi-family and multi-order group (SAFMC 1998b, 2009).

Members of this FMP are generally benthic during later life stages, but many have pelagic early life stages (SAFMC 1998b, 2009). Many of these species have a planktonic larval stage, while sub-adults and adults are generally associated with structured benthic habitat (SAFMC 1998b, 2009). Some of the more obvious structures are coral reefs, artificial reefs, hardbottom, ledges, cavities, and sloping soft-bottom surfaces (SAFMC 1998b, 2009). Juveniles of some species may inhabit inshore and estuarine habits such as seagrass beds, mangroves, lagoons, and bays (SAFMC 1998b, 2009).

Freeman and Walford (1976) identified scup, sheepshead, and other porgies as significant components of fishing catches within the vicinity of the proposed ODMDS modification area based on hundreds of interview records.

Pelagic structures such as the moon jelly (Aurelia aurita) and sargassum, which may occasionally drift through the area, may harbor juvenile jacks. The proposed ODMDS modification area lacks large structures favored by these species.

The NOAA Fisheries EFH Mapper includes the proposed ODMDS modification area and surrounding waters in the EFH for the Snapper-Grouper Complex, including inshore, nearshore, and most offshore waters from Virginia to Florida. The EFH includes all life stages for the complex (NOAA Fisheries 2014). Table 4 in Appendix B outlines the EFH and HAPC as identified in the NOAA EFH Mapper. The spatial data in NOAA Fisheries (2014) compare well with the written description of EFH provided by SAFMC (1998a).

3.6.2.4 Coastal Migratory Pelagics

The Coastal Migratory Pelagics FMP consists of cobia (Rachycentron canadum) and four scombroid species (cero [Scomberomorus regalis], little tunny [Euthynnus alleteratus], king mackerel [Scomberomorus cavalla], and Spanish mackerel [Scomberomorus maculatus]) (SAFMC [no date] and 2009).
Freeman and Walford (1976) identified Spanish mackerel as a significant component of fishing catches within the vicinity of the alternative site based on hundreds of interview records.

SAFMC (1998a) defines EFH for this group as a whole. Habitat deemed essential consists of sandy shoals associated with capes and offshore sandbars, high-profile rocky bottom, and the windward sides of barrier islands (SAFMC 1998a).

Although SAFMC (1998a) treats this group as a whole when defining EFH, there is additional EFH assigned to certain species within the group. EFH specific to cobia includes high-salinity bays, estuaries, and seagrass beds (SAFMC 1998a). EFH for king mackerel, Spanish mackerel, and cobia include the South Atlantic and Mid-Atlantic bights (SAFMC 1998a). The Gulf Stream is EFH for this group given its important role in larval dispersal (SAFMC 1998a).

There is no EFH for Coastal Migratory Pelagics in or near the proposed ODMDS modification area based on the NOAA EFH Mapper (NOAA Fisheries 2014) and SAFMC (1998a).

3.6.2.5 Large Coastal Sharks
The Large Coastal Sharks FMP addresses the nurse shark (*Ginglymostoma cirratum*), seven species of carcharhinids (blacktip shark [*Carcharinus limbatus*], bull shark [*C. leucas*], lemon shark [*Negaprion brevirostris*], sandbar shark [*C. plumbius*], silky shark [*C. falciformis*], spinner shark [*C. brevipedalis*], and tiger shark [*Galeocerdo cuvier*]), and three species of sphyrnids (great hammerhead [*Sphyra mokarran*], scalloped hammerhead [*S. lewini*], and smooth hammerhead [*S. zygaena*]) (NMFS 2009).

The nurse shark is uncommon off South Carolina (Castro 2011), is only present off Charleston during the warm months (Bigelow and Schroeder 1948), and the nearest EFH is off Jacksonville, Florida (NOAA Fisheries 2014). Many of the remaining species are generally common in South Carolina waters at least seasonally, and many have important nursery areas or other EFH within the state. Table 2 in Appendix B provides a list of managed species. NOAA (2009) and NOAA Fisheries (2014) address EFH and HAPC for this group on a per-species basis. Table 5 in Appendix B outlines EFH and HAPC identified in the NOAA EFH Mapper. EFH for one or more life stages for most members of the Large Coastal Sharks FMP include the alternative site and surrounding waters based on NOAA (2009) and NOAA Fisheries (2014). No HAPC were identified in or near the alternative site based on NOAA Fisheries (2014).

3.6.2.6 Small Coastal Sharks
Small coastal carcharhinids include the Atlantic sharpnose shark (*Rhizoprionodon terraenovae*), blacknose shark (*Carcharhinus acronotus*), and finetooth shark (*Carcharhinus isodon*) (NMFS 2009). These species are abundant along the U.S. east coast (Castro et al. 1999). The Atlantic sharpnose shark is sometimes used for bait by shark longline fishers seeking larger shark species. Commercial fishers often refer to this species as the "puppy shark". The bonnethead (*Sphyra tiburo*) is the only sphyrnid included in this FMP.

Atlantic sharpnose shark neonate, young-of-year, juvenile, and adult EFH includes the proposed ODMDS modification area and surrounding areas based on NOAA (2009). The NOAA EFH Mapper did not identify an EFH for the Atlantic sharpnose at the time the site was accessed on September 22 and 23, 2014, and again on October 14, 2014. No HAPC is currently identified by NOAA (NOAA 2009, NOAA Fisheries 2014).
Blacknose shark nursery areas consist of an extensive range along the Atlantic coastline from South Carolina to southern Florida and associated with shallow water depths (Castro 2011). Gravid females were reported by Castro (2011) from off McClellanville, South Carolina. Blacknose shark juvenile and adult EFH include the alternative site and surrounding waters based on NOAA (2009) and NOAA Fisheries (2014). The nearest neonate EFH is closer to shore along the South Carolina coastline according to NOAA (2009). However, the NOAA EFH Mapper shows neonate EFH to include the proposed ODMDS modification area (NOAA Fisheries 2014). No HAPC is currently identified by NOAA (NOAA 2009, NOAA Fisheries 2014).

Finetooth shark neonate, young-of-year, juvenile, and adult EFH include the proposed ODMDS modification area and surrounding areas based on NOAA (2009) and NOAA Fisheries (2014). However, neonatal finetooth sharks use shallower water depths according to Castro (1993, 2011) than what is indicated by NOAA (2009) and NOAA Fisheries (2014). No HAPC is currently identified in the EFH Mapper (NOAA Fisheries 2014).

Bonnethead shark nursery areas are found throughout its range (from at least as far north as Chesapeake Bay south to Brazil) according to Castro (2011). McCandless et al. (2002) identified juvenile nursery areas to include nearshore and estuarine habitats from North Carolina south through the proposed ODMDS modification area to Cape Canaveral, Florida. Neonate and young-of-year bonnethead EFH do not include the proposed ODMDS modification area based on NOAA (2009). However, juvenile and adult EFH appears to include the proposed ODMDS modification area and surrounding waters based on NOAA (2009). The NOAA EFH Mapper (NOAA Fisheries 2014) did not identify EFH for this species at the time the site was accessed on October 16, 2014. No HAPC is currently identified by NOAA (NOAA 2009, NOAA Fisheries 2014).

### 3.6.2.7 Prohibited Sharks

Prohibited sharks are prohibited from all harvest, possession, landing, purchase, sale or exchange. This group consists of the bigeye sand tiger (*Odontaspis noronhai*), sand tiger (*Carcharias taurus*), white shark (*Carcharodon carcharias*), longfin mako (*Isurus paucus*), bignose shark (*Carcharhinus altimus*), Caribbean reef shark (*C. perezi*), Caribbean sharpnose shark (*Rhizoprionodon porosus*), dusky shark (*C. obscurus*), Galapagos shark (*C. galapagensis*), narrowtooth shark (*C. brachyurus*), night shark (*C. signatus*), and the smalltail shark (*C. porosus*) (NMFS 2009). Only species likely to occur within the proposed ODMDS modification area are discussed below.

Sand tiger juvenile nursery areas off South Carolina appear to include the proposed ODMDS modification area based on McCandless et al. (2002). Sand tiger neonate, juvenile, and adult EFH includes the proposed ODMDS modification area and surrounding areas based on NOAA (2009) and NOAA Fisheries (2014). No HAPC is currently identified (NOAA 2009, NOAA Fisheries 2014).

Evidence of a possible white shark nursery area off South Carolina consists of a 131-cm-TL neonate caught there (Castro 2011). White shark EFH (for all life stages combined) appears to include the proposed ODMDS modification area and surrounding areas based on NOAA (2009). The NOAA EFH Mapper did not identify any EFH for the white shark in the western Atlantic at the time the site was accessed on October 16, 2014. White shark HAPC is not identified by NOAA (2009) or NOAA Fisheries (2014).
Nursery areas are in coastal waters, including Bulls Bay, South Carolina (Castro et al. 1999). Dusk shark nursery areas appear to include the proposed ODMDS modification area and surrounding areas based on McCandless et al. (2002). Neonate, young-of-year, juvenile, and adult dusky shark EFH appears to include the proposed ODMDS modification area and surrounding areas based on NOAA (2009) and NOAA Fisheries (2014). No HAPCs are currently identified (NOAA 2009, NOAA Fisheries 2014).

3.6.2.8 Billfishes

Blue marlin (Makaira nigricans), longbill spearfish (Tetrapturus pfluegeri), roundscale spearfish (Tetrapturus georgii), sailfish (Istiophorus albicans), and white marlin (Tetrapturus [Kajikia] albidus) are included in this FMP (NMFS 2009).

No billfishes were collected or observed during surveys in and around the proposed ODMDS modification area. Only the sailfish is expected to occasionally occur within the proposed ODMDS modification area. This species is known to often migrate into nearshore waters and is the least oceanic of the istiophorids (Nakamura 1985, Robins and Ray 1986, Nakamura 2002). Migrations along the U.S. east coast appear to be influenced by wind and temperature (Nakamura 1985). Off the southeastern United States, spawning takes place near the surface in nearshore waters during warm weather, but may also occur over deep offshore waters (Nakamura 1985).

Juvenile EFH appears to include the proposed ODMDS modification area (NOAA 2009, NOAA Fisheries 2014). Adult EFH is identified farther offshore over the continental slope (NOAA 2009, NOAA Fisheries 2014). Spawning EFH is located many miles south of the proposed ODMDS modification area, off southeastern Florida and the Florida Keys (NOAA 2009, NOAA Fisheries 2014). No HAPC is currently identified (NOAA 2009, NOAA Fisheries 2014).

3.6.2.9 Atlantic Mackerel, Squid, and Butterfish

This FMP manages stocks of two species of squid, each representing a separate family, along with the butterfish (Peprilus triacanthus) and the Atlantic mackerel (Scomber scombrus) (NMFS 2008). It appears that water temperatures at the proposed ODMDS modification area are too warm for the northern shortfin squid (Illex illecebrosus) except during winter months based on results of USEPA (1983) and Jutte et al. (2005) and will not be discussed further. The Atlantic mackerel is absent from South Carolina waters (Robins and Ray 1986) and will not be discussed further.

Longfin inshore squid (Loligo pealeii) EFH does not include the proposed ODMDS modification area or surrounding areas based on NOAA Fisheries (2014). However, pre-recruit and recruit EFH consists of bay waters and inshore and offshore shelf waters between South Carolina and the Gulf of Maine, along with bays within this region (MAFMC and NMFS 2011) and may include the proposed ODMDS modification area.

EFH for butterfish eggs, larvae, or juvenile do not include the proposed ODMDS modification area or surrounding areas based on MAFMC and NMFS (2011). Adult butterfish EFH consists of estuaries, bays, inshore, and continental shelf waters from South Carolina to Massachusetts Bay, Massachusetts, and appears to include the proposed ODMDS modification area based on MAFMC and NMFS (2011). The NOAA EFH Mapper did not identify butterfish EFH at the time the site was accessed on October 16, 2014.
3.6.2.10 Bluefish
The species occurs throughout South Carolina waters and in many other areas of the western Atlantic, although it is absent from the Bahamas, West Indies, and most of the Caribbean (Collette 2002a). Adults are highly migratory, are found in salinities above 21 ppt (MAFMC 2006), and favor shallow water adjacent to drop-offs from shoals and banks (Shipp 1986).

Egg, larval, juvenile, and adult bluefish EFH includes the proposed ODMDS modification area and spans from shore to the continental slope and beyond, as well as north and south along the Atlantic coast as identified on the EFH Mapper (NOAA Fisheries 2014). The delineation of bluefish EFH by NOAA Fisheries (2014) compares well to the written description in MAFMC (2006).

3.6.2.11 Summer Flounder
Summer Flounder (*Paralichthys dentatus*) occurs from nearshore to a depth of 185 meters, but typically occurs in depths of 40 meters or less (Munroe 2002). Along the U.S. coast, the species ranges from Maine to at least northeastern Florida (Robins and Ray 1986). The center of primary abundance is between Cape Cod, Massachusetts, and Cape Hatteras, North Carolina (Packer et al. 1999). Soft substrates such as sand or silt are often used (Packer et al. 1999). Spawning takes place in continental shelf waters from September through January and peaks in October and November (Packer et al. 1999). Post-larval and juvenile summer flounder use salt marshes and tidal flats in high-salinity estuaries as nursery areas (Packer et al. 1999).

The Charleston area appears to be outside of important summer flounder habitat as described in Packer et al. (1999) based on an analysis of capture frequency data. However, Packer et al. (1999) did not clearly define EFH over non-essential habitat. Larval, juvenile, and adult EFH includes the proposed ODMDS modification area and spans from inshore waters (including rivers) out to the continental shelf waters as well as far northward and southward along the coastline according to the NOAA EFH Mapper (NOAA Fisheries 2014).

3.7 COASTAL BARRIER RESOURCES
The primary land-based regulatory boundary that can influence activities in the nearshore coastal zone is the Coastal Barrier Resources System (CBRS) established by the Coastal Barrier Resources Act of 1982 (CBRA). The CBRS is comprised of undeveloped coastal barriers along the Atlantic, Gulf, and Great Lakes coasts. The law encourages the conservation of hurricane-prone, biologically rich coastal barriers by restricting federal expenditures that encourage development, such as federal flood insurance through the National Flood Insurance Program. Activities that could adversely affect the biological resources or stability of CBRS sites are a concern to USFWS. The location of CBRS sites along the South Carolina coast is shown in Figure 3-13 (Van Dolah et al. 2011). Parallel to the coastline there is the 3-mile boundary line that represents the limit of the state’s jurisdiction under the Submerged Lands Act (SLA). Approximately 3-miles seaward of that boundary is the Revenue Sharing Boundary (Section 8(g) of the OCS Lands Act).

There are no CBRS sites located in the vicinity of the proposed ODMDS modification area. However, there are several CBRA zones located near Charleston Harbor, most notably the Morris Island Complex and the Bird Key Complex. These sites are discussed in detail in the Charleston Harbor Post 45 FR/EIS.
3.8 WATER QUALITY

3.8.1 HYDROGRAPHIC DATA

Hydrographic data have been collected as part of most assessments of the Charleston ODMDSs. Hydrographic measurements were collected September 2002 in the Charleston ODMDS and surrounding boundary zones (Jutte et al. 2005). Readings were as follows:

- Mean water temperature was 27.6° ± 0.2°C at the surface and 27.7° ± 0.1°C at the seafloor.
- Mean pH was 7.9 ± 0.1 pH unit and did not differ between the surface and seafloor.
- Mean dissolved oxygen was 6.6 ± 0.5 mg/L at the surface and 6.5 ± 0.4 mg/L at the seafloor.
- Mean salinity was 36.6 ± 0.6 ppt at the surface and 36.7 ± 0.2 ppt at the seafloor.

EPA also conducted two site designation surveys in March and December 1979 that included sampling at 10 stations in and around the Charleston ODMDS. The following mean values were calculated from data in Appendix A of USEPA (1983):
Mean salinity was 32.1 ± 1.3 ppt in March and 32.9 ± 1.1 ppt in December.
Mean temperature was 12.76° ± 0.59°C in March and 16.40° ± 2.05°C in December.
Mean total suspended solids was 1.25 ± 0.52 mg/L in March and 1.97 ± 0.72 mg/L in December.
Mean turbidity was 1.18 ± 0.41 NTU in March and 1.36 ± 0.44 NTU in December.
Mean pH was 8.21 ± 0.02 in March and 8.18 ± 0.09 in December.

Dissolved oxygen is an important indicator of water quality and is critical to ecosystem health. Dissolved oxygen concentrations of 5 ppt or higher are considered optimal. Fish and other animals become stressed when the dissolved oxygen concentration dips below 2 ppt. Concentrations of dissolved oxygen in surface waters of the South Atlantic Bight area are uniform and typically at or above saturation levels (USACE 1983). Concentrations are influenced by water temperature and oxidation of organic matter. Dissolved oxygen in nearshore waters range from 5 to 7 ml/L in surface waters and 4 to 7 ml/L in bottom waters, with the highest concentrations in winter and lowest concentrations in summer (USACE 1983).

Turbidity is a measure of how much the material suspended in water decreases the passage of light through the water. Suspended materials include soil particles (clay, silt, and sand), algae, plankton, microbes, and other substances. High levels of turbidity and total suspended solids (TSS) can negatively affect water quality by reducing light penetration, limiting the ability of aquatic organisms to find food, degrading available habitat, and fouling the gills of fish and invertebrates.

3.8.2 WATER CHEMISTRY
3.8.2.1 Nutrients
Major nutrient inputs in the South Atlantic Bight are from upwelling of nutrient-rich Gulf Stream water and discharge from coastal rivers and salt marshes and is seasonally variable. Nitrate concentrations in nearshore surface waters are generally less than 1 µmole/L (Atkinson 1978). River runoff, nitrogen fixation, and nutrient recycling processes also supply nitrate to nearshore waters. Phosphate concentrations in coastal waters from river inputs can be up to 0.5 µmole/L (USEPA 1983).

3.8.2.2 Trace Metals, Pesticides, and PAHs
Trace metals concentrations in nearshore waters are influenced by river and salt marsh discharge. Concentrations of total and dissolved trace metals in waters overlying the Charleston ODMDS during the 1979 IEC and 2012 ANAMAR surveys are presented in Tables 3.8-1 and 3.8-2. No pesticides were detected above the method detection limit (MDL) in the 2012 ODMDS surface water samples (ANAMAR 2012). Naphthalene (0.013 µg/L) was the only PAH detected above the MDL.
Table 3.8-1. Concentration of Trace Metals in Waters Overlying the Charleston ODMDS during IEC Surveys

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Total (µg/L)</th>
<th>Dissolved (ng/L)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mercury</td>
<td>0.009-0.019</td>
<td>&lt;0.03-0.076</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cadmium</td>
<td>0.002-0.005</td>
<td>0.040-0.493</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lead</td>
<td>0.023-0.079</td>
<td>0.032-3.20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: USEPA 1983

Table 3.8-2. Concentration of Trace Metals in the ODMDS Surface Water Sample Collected in October 2012

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Total (µg/L)</th>
<th>CMC (µg/L)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Antimony</td>
<td>&lt;0.40</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arsenic</td>
<td>1.44</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beryllium</td>
<td>0.0051</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cadmium</td>
<td>0.025</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chromium</td>
<td>0.35</td>
<td>1100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copper</td>
<td>0.516</td>
<td>4.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lead</td>
<td>0.045</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mercury</td>
<td>0.02</td>
<td>1.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nickel</td>
<td>0.40</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selenium</td>
<td>&lt;0.2</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Silver</td>
<td>0.005</td>
<td>1.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thallium</td>
<td>0.013</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zinc</td>
<td>0.55</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: ANAMAR 2013

3.8.3 HUMAN-RELATED DISCHARGES

Potential sources of human-related discharges in the Charleston area include vessels (cruise ships) and ocean outfalls. A description of the various outfalls can be found in Appendix A of the Charleston Harbor Post 45 draft FR/EIS. A single cruise ship with 3,000 passengers can generate 25,000 gallons of raw sewage and 143,000 gallons of sanitary wastewater every day (Oceana 2007). Ships may discharge raw sewage to the ocean once they are at least 3 miles from the coastline. The impact of this discharge to water quality in the vicinity of the proposed ODMDS modification area depends on the current regime at any given time.

3.9 HAZARDOUS, TOXIC, AND RADIOACTIVE WASTE

Toxic or radioactive materials cannot be disposed of in the ODMDS. Previous surveys of the proposed ODMDS did not indicate the presence of any hazardous, toxic, or radioactive waste in the proposed ODMDS modification area.
3.10 AIR QUALITY

EPA, in accordance with the Clean Air Act, set National Ambient Air Quality Standards (NAAQS) for pollutants considered harmful to public health and the environment. The Clean Air Act identified two types of NAAQS. Primary standards set limits to protect public health, including the health of sensitive populations such as asthmatics, children, and the elderly. Secondary standards set limits to protect public welfare, including protection against decreased visibility and damage to animals, crops, vegetation, and buildings.

EPA Region 4 and the South Carolina Department of Health and Environmental Control (SCDHEC), Bureau of Air Quality regulate air quality in South Carolina. On the basis of the severity of the pollution problem, areas that do not attain the standards are categorized as marginal, moderate, serious, severe, or extreme. Each state has the authority to adopt standards stricter than those established under the federal program; however, South Carolina accepts the federal standards. The air quality in Charleston and surrounding counties in South Carolina are designated by SCDHEC as an attainment area for all six criteria pollutants. The ambient air quality for Charleston County has been determined to be in compliance with the NAAQS.

3.11 NOISE

Ambient noise levels offshore are generally low. Noise in this area is limited to that of the vessels passing through the region. Recreational boaters contribute minimally to the amount of noise in the area. Noise levels fluctuate during the year, but the highest levels usually occur during the spring and summer months due to increased coastal activities. The proposed ODMDS modification area does not encompass any noise-sensitive institutions, structures, or facilities.

3.12 RECREATION RESOURCES

Recreational resources are natural or man-made lands or waters designated or managed by local, state, or federal agencies for leisure use by visitors and local residents. Offshore recreational resources in the vicinity of the project area include recreational fishing, sailing, and boating areas, diving areas, and other water sport areas. Recreational fishing primarily includes red drum and some of the coastal pelagic and Mid-Atlantic species (mackerel species, bluefish, spotted seatrout; SCDNR 2001). Artificial reef dive sites are not located in the immediate vicinity of the proposed ODMDS modification area (Figure 2-1).

3.13 NAVIGATION AND PUBLIC SAFETY

The Charleston ODMDS lies offshore of the Port of Charleston, which is one of the busiest ports on the Atlantic coast. The northern boundary of the Charleston ODMDS is approximately 2 nmi south of the entrance channel. Cargo vessels engaged in maritime commerce, both domestic and international, may navigate through or near the ODMDS, although the larger vessels are restricted to the navigational channel north of the ODMDS. Past conversations with the US Coast Guard regarding ODMDS management have led to a target depth of -25 ft to provide a reasonable level of navigation safety. Larger, deep draft vessel coordinate with harbor pilots who meet the ships at the entrance channel seabouy. The harbor pilots escort the vessels through the navigation channel. The existing channel depths within the Charleston Harbor accommodate vessels drafting up to 48 feet (limited to a tide window of about 2 hours per day) (USACE 2014b). Large ships experience delays. To reach port terminals, these ships must either be lightly loaded, wait for favorable tide conditions, or both. Table 3.13-1 illustrates the
approximate time available to transit the harbor based on tide-related delays for various vessel drafts.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Approximate Hours/Day Available for Transit</th>
<th>Vessel Draft (feet)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: USACE 2014b

3.14 HISTORIC AND CULTURAL RESOURCES

Proposed modification of the Charleston ODMDS includes potentially significant areas for maritime cultural heritage. As part of the Charleston Harbor Post 45 FR/EIS, USACE consulted with the South Carolina Department of Archives and History and the South Carolina Institute for Archaeology and Anthropology (SCIAA) to perform a background investigation and remote sensing survey of the project area. Between October 2012 and January 2013, a remote sensing survey, with limited ground-truthing through video acquisition, was conducted within and 50 m outside the proposed ODMDS modification area to identify any cultural resources present in the study area. Magnetic and sidescan sonar data were evaluated to identify anomalies consistent with cultural resources in accordance with provisions of Section 106 of the NHPA of 1966 and the Abandoned Shipwreck Act of 1987.

The ODMDS survey area consists of three sub-areas (Box 1 – north of the ODMDS; Box 2 – east of the ODMDS; Box 3 – south of the ODMDS). A total of 40 anomalies were identified within the survey area. Magnetic anomaly maps were constructed and targets were evaluated and found to be largely consistent with cables, pipe, debris, posts, and derelict crab pots (Gayes et al. 2013). These anomalies are emblematic of the modern industrial use of the area rather than its historic past; therefore, none of the anomalies were recommended by the research team for further evaluation. By letter dated October 3, 2013, the SCIAA concurred with the findings and recommendations and had no objections to dredging or disposal operations associated with the project (Appendix Q; USACE 2014a).

3.15 MINERAL RESOURCES

3.15.1 SAND BORROW AREAS

Sand resources are extremely important for renourishment projects that are needed for the majority of South Carolina’s developed beaches. These renourishment projects are either completed by USACE in cooperation with local municipalities or by the municipalities themselves as non-federally funded projects. The number of sites that are actually available with sufficient sand resources compatible with the receiving beach and located in areas that can be mined economically is limited. Figures 2-1 and 3-14 show the locations of areas that have or will be mined for sand (termed borrow areas). The sand borrow areas closest to the proposed ODMDS modification area are the ones used for the Folly Beach nourishment project located between 3 and 3.5 miles offshore of Folly Beach and approximately 3.8 miles from the proposed
ODMDS modification area (Figure 2-1). As of 2015, the Folly Beach sand borrow areas have been depleted. A new sand source search is underway.

In 2009, BOEM (previously Minerals Management Service) prepared an EA to evaluate a request from the SCSPA to authorize the use of Outer Continental Shelf (OCS) mineral resources (sand) from the Charleston ODMDS. Under the proposed action, approximately 4 to 6 mcy of OCS material would be removed from the ODMDS by dredging and transported to the Marine Container Terminal site for placement as fill (MMS 2009, USACE 2014b). The material would be removed from portions of the ODMDS that contain suitable material. The dredge footprint and bottom-disturbing activities would be confined to the interior of the ODMDS.

An amended lease agreement with the SCSPA was executed on June 15, 2015 (See Comment Letter 15 attachment, Appendix A). The negotiated agreement (OCS-A 0477) authorizes up to 6 mcy of OCS sediment resources from the Charleston ODMDS for use in the Charleston Naval Base Container Terminal Project. Two specific borrow areas have been identified within the 4-mi² Charleston ODMDS disposal zone: the West Excavation Area and the East Excavation...
Area (Figure 3-15). The SMMP provides more detail on how the excavation sites will be managed to avoid dumping within the currently leased area (see Appendix C).

Figure 3-15. Detailed Map of the Charleston (ODMDS) Borrow Areas
Source: BOEM 2015 (Letter 15, Appendix A)
3.15.2 OIL, GAS, AND WIND ENERGY RESOURCES

With regard to offshore oil and gas operations and wind energy resources, the Charleston ODMDS is located within the BOEM South Atlantic Planning Area along the Atlantic seaboard. Currently, there are no oil and gas leases off the Atlantic Coast (Table 3.15-1). On June 16, 2014, BOEM published a request for information and comments regarding the upcoming 2017-2022 Outer Continental Shelf Oil and Gas Leasing Program (79 FR 34349). On January 29, 2015, BOEM released its Draft Proposed 2017-2022 Oil and Gas Leasing Program, which included one sale in 2021 in portions of the Mid- and South Atlantic Planning Areas (80 FR 4941). The Draft Proposed Program is the first step in a multi-stage process to determine areas available for leasing during the 2017-2022 Program. The next step is release of the Proposed Program in early 2016, followed by a Proposed Final Program in late 2016.

BOEM has already committed significant resources to support the evaluation of potentially recoverable oil and gas resources in the Mid- and South Atlantic planning areas. In February 2014, BOEM completed a Programmatic Environmental Impact Statement for geological and geophysical surveys that would provide information about the location and extent of oil and gas reserves in those areas (BOEM 2014). BOEM has received several permit applications for geological and geophysical surveys; there are currently no active, approved permits.

Table 3.15-1. Offshore Natural Gas and Oil Operations within the South Atlantic Planning Area

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Planning Area</th>
<th>Total OCS Acreage</th>
<th>Historical Leased Blocks Active and Terminated</th>
<th>Active Leases</th>
<th>Active Lease Acreage</th>
<th>Adjacent Coastal States</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>South Atlantic</td>
<td>54.34 million</td>
<td>109</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>South Carolina, Georgia, Florida</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

BOEM is also researching wind energy of the coast of South Carolina. Figure 3-16 shows areas that have been excluded from wind energy exploration based on spatial planning with GIS for initial area reduction with identifies marine activities conflicting with offshore wind projects (http://www.boem.gov/South-Carolina-Spatial-Data-Offshore-Renewable-Energy-Planning/). Ocean dumping areas are considered incompatible with wind energy development are being excluded from further study.

3.16 MILITARY USAGE

The military has several bases in South Carolina and conducts extensive training activities along South Carolina’s coastal zone and farther offshore (Figure 3-17). The military operations can be separated into training routes for aircraft, warning areas that are primarily located in federal waters and are used for both air and naval training exercises, and additional DOD operational areas. The area also lies within the U.S. Navy’s Charleston Operating Area (U.S. Navy 2008), which is used for naval operations associated with the Marine Corps Naval Air Station Beaufort (South Carolina), Marine Corps Base Camp Lejeune (North Carolina), Kings Bay Naval Submarine Support Base (Georgia), and Naval Air Station Jacksonville (Florida). No details of operational activity are available, but it is likely that naval vessels conducting exercises involving amphibious and anti-submarine warfare periodically operate in the vicinity of the proposed ODMDS modification area.
4 ENVIRONMENTAL EFFECTS

This chapter is the scientific and analytic basis for comparing and contrast ing the alternatives that were carried forward for detailed analysis. It evaluates the significance of potential effects of the proposed action on the physical, biological, and socioeconomic resources within the region of influence, which can vary depending on the resource because some effects can be more far-reaching than others. However, in general, the region of influence evaluated for this proposed action is the proposed ODMDS modification area, areas adjacent to the site, and the marine habitats between the shore and the ODMDS where vessels will be transiting during dredged material disposal activities. The potential impacts within the region of influence are evaluated for

- Alternative 1 – Modification of the Charleston ODMDS (Preferred)
- The No Action Alternative

Table 2.6-1 in Chapter 2 compares and evaluates the alternatives relative to EPA’s specific site selection criteria. Table 2.6-2 provides a summary of the potential direct and indirect impacts on the physical, biological, and socioeconomic environments for each alternative.

4.1 GENERAL ENVIRONMENTAL EFFECTS

The effects of dredged material disposal on the marine ecosystem are of public concern. Given that some effects are immediately apparent and others are subtle, it can be difficult to differentiate between changes due to natural fluctuations and those resulting from human perturbations. The consequences of effects may be difficult to interpret in light of incomplete knowledge of biological pathways, ecology of organisms, and community dynamics. However, such effects may have far-reaching consequences (e.g., damage to fisheries) or may be minor. Long-term effects are the most difficult to assess because they are often indirect and may be cumulative.

The effects of dredged material disposal on the ecosystem depend upon several factors:

- Physical and chemical characteristics of dredged sediments
- Degree of similarity between dredged sediments and those of the ODMDS and surrounding areas
- Amount of material to be dumped
- Frequency of disposal
- Contaminants associated with dredged material
- Turbidity associated with disposal operations

In general, the primary impact-producing factors associated with dredged material disposal within the proposed ODMDS modification area are:

- Temporary water column perturbations (turbidity plumes, release of chemicals, lowering dissolved oxygen concentration);
- Burial of the site’s benthic biota;
- Changes in site bathymetry; and
- Alterations in the site’s sediment physical composition.
This chapter also examines the potential effects of dredged material disposal on the biological environment. Biota include phytoplankton, zooplankton, benthic fauna composed of infaunal and epifaunal organisms, fishes, seabirds, and marine mammals.

A biological impact is considered significant if it:

- Is expected to affect the population status of a state or federally listed, proposed, or candidate threatened or endangered species or is expected to affect the breeding or foraging habitat of such species so as to result in increased mortality or reduced reproductive success;
- Causes the loss or long-term degradation of any environmentally sensitive species;
- Interferes substantially with the movement of any resident or migratory fish or wildlife species; or
- Causes a measurable change in species composition or abundance of a sensitive community or causes a substantial long-term change to marine habitats.

Relevant statutory and regulatory protections include the ESA (protects listed species and their critical habitats), MMPA (protects all marine mammals), CWA (protects the nation's waters), MSA (protects essential fish habitat), MPRSA (ensures that ocean dredged material disposal activities will not unreasonably degrade or endanger the amenities of the marine environment), and the MBTA and Executive Order 13186 (protects migratory birds and their habitats). Temporary impacts of limited extent would not normally be considered significant provided that applicable regulatory requirements are satisfied.

4.2 BATHYMETRY AND SEDIMENT TRANSPORT

Impacts would be significant if the disposal of dredged material would

- Alter the regional and site-specific bathymetry,
- Interfere with or change sediment transport processes,
- Alter the existing characteristics of the seafloor (e.g., change the substrate from predominantly sand to silt and clay), or
- Create a navigation hazard.

4.2.1 ALTERNATIVE 1

The proposed ODMDS modification area is located in water depths with similar waves and currents as the existing Charleston ODMDS. Therefore, the effects of dredged material disposal on bathymetry and sediment transport are expected to be similar. As with the existing ODMDS, the disposal of dredged material within the proposed ODMDS modification area is not expected to have any measurable effect on the regional bathymetric conditions or sediment transport processes. However, over the life of the ODMDS, accumulations of material and changes in bathymetry could be substantial within the boundaries of the site, causing impacts and changes to substrate characteristics and benthic organisms. Over time, the depth of the site could be reduced to -25 feet over the life of the site, which is the operational minimum depth established in the SMMP (USEPA 2005). Frequent movement of the dredged material discharge point should lessen mounding and changes to site bathymetry.

Typically, a disposal mound is formed from material that has settled after the passive dispersion phase. The extent of the mound depends on factors such as water depth, volume of release,
ambient currents, and composition of material being released. Successive disposal events will increase the size of the mound.

A program monitoring the physical and biological condition of bottom habitats within and surrounding the Charleston ODMDS was completed after the conclusion of disposal activities associated with the 1999-2002 Charleston Harbor Deepening Project. Approximately 20 to 25 mcy of inner harbor and entrance channel materials were placed at the ODMDS as part of the project (Jutte et al. 2005). The study concluded that the placement of disposal material into the Charleston ODMDS from the Charleston Harbor Deepening Project and from ongoing maintenance dredging resulted in a number of physical and biological impacts to the areas surrounding the disposal zone, as well as anticipated impacts within the disposal area. An interim assessment completed in 2000 (Zimmerman et al 2002), midway through the Charleston Harbor Deepening Project, documented significant alterations of sediment characteristics, particularly silt/clay and organic matter content, to the west and northwest of the disposal zone relative to typical bottom conditions found in the nearshore zone of South Carolina. These changes in sediment characteristics were caused by the migration of dredged material from the disposal site, unauthorized dumping outside the designated site, and trailings from barges entering or exiting the disposal area.

Results from previous studies on sediment transport, currents, and waves were taken into account in selecting the proposed ODMDS modification area. To minimize impacts of sediment transport outside the ODMDS boundaries, the proposed modification area is contiguous with the northern, eastern, and southern boundaries of the existing site. If material disposed of in the eastern portion of the expansion area migrates, it is expected to be transported west into the existing ODMDS. A berm will be built along the east, south, and west boundaries to minimize sediment transport impacts to existing hardbottom resources, particularly south of the proposed modification area (Figure 2-1).

Results of the MPFATE and LTFATE simulations indicate that the proposed ODMDS and associated dump zone is capable of receiving the Post 45 new work and annual maintenance material for a period of 25 years without violating the -25 feet MLLW clearance depth (Figure 2-2). In addition, the change in bottom elevations outside the ODMDS is less than 5 cm over the course of 25 years, indicating that the material is not being transported outside the boundaries of the ODMDS (Figure 2-3) [USACE 2015, Appendix D].

A monitoring and modeling program similar to the one in place for the Charleston ODMDS could detect a potential concern and aid in the prevention of any adverse effects. The SMMP in Appendix C has more details on site management and monitoring.

4.2.2 NO ACTION ALTERNATIVE

Under the No Action Alternative, the boundaries of the existing ODMDS would not be modified and the existing Charleston ODMDS would continue to be used until the site reaches capacity at the -25-foot MLLW operational threshold. Effects from sediment transport at the existing ODMDS may continue to impact adjacent areas as described above. However, if dredging and disposal of dredged material offshore were decreased due to limited ODMDS capacity, impacts related to sediment transport could potentially be decreased over time.
4.3 SEDIMENT CHARACTERISTICS

This section summarizes impacts to sediment composition as a result of dredged material disposal. Sediment quality impacts would be significant if dredged material substantially changes sediment characteristics at the disposal site (e.g., sediment composition, contaminants). National testing guidance (USEPA and USACE 1991) sets forth procedures for comparative testing of sediments collected from proposed dredging areas and reference sites to ensure that material meets the limiting permissible concentration (LPC) for the ocean disposal of dredged material as specified in 40 CFR 227.

In 2012, an MPRSA Section 103 sediment testing and analysis study was conducted in support of the existing Charleston Harbor Federal Navigation Project as well as the Charleston Harbor Navigation Improvement Project (Post 45). One hundred and five vibracore samples were collected within the upper harbor, lower harbor, entrance channel reaches and turning basins, and Shem Creek. Twenty-one test composites were analyzed. No significant contamination was found and results of physical and chemical testing showed that all of the sediment that would be dredged by a deepening project was suitable for ocean disposal. Complete results of sediment and elutriate chemistry and toxicological testing are provided in ANAMAR (2013). A brief summary of results is provided below:

**Metals**

Numbers of composite samples with concentrations exceeding the threshold effects level (TEL) and effects range-low (ERL) are summarized below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Analyte</th>
<th># of Samples Exceeding TEL and/or ERL</th>
<th>Maximum Detected Concentration (mg/kg)</th>
<th>TEL (mg/kg)</th>
<th>ERL (mg/kg)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Arsenic</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>13.7</td>
<td>7.24</td>
<td>8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cadmium</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5.41</td>
<td>0.676</td>
<td>1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chromium</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>112</td>
<td>52.3</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nickel</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>29.6</td>
<td>15.9</td>
<td>20.9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Ammonia, TPH, and TOC**

Total ammonia concentrations for all samples ranged from 0.78 mg/kg to 170 mg/kg. Concentrations of TPH ranged from <130 mg/kg to 630 mg/kg. TOC concentrations ranged from 0.070% to 2.60%.

**Organotins**

Total organotins ranged from 0.55 µg/kg to 2.6 µg/kg. There are no published sediment screening criteria (i.e., TEL, ERL) for organotins.

**PAHs**

The dibenzo(a,h)anthracene concentration (8.3 mg/kg) in one sample was the only PAH detected in concentrations greater than the TEL (6.22 mg/kg). No other PAHs were present above the sediment screening criteria (i.e., TEL, ERL).

**Pesticides**

None of the pesticides tested were detected above the MRL in any sediment sample. No pesticides were present above the sediment screening criteria (i.e., TEL, ERL).
PCBs and Aroclors
Of the 26 PCB congeners and seven Aroclors tested, none were detected above the MRL in any sediment sample. Results for total EPA Region 4 PCBs and total NOAA PCBs did not exceed the sediment screening criteria (i.e., TEL, ERL) in any sample.

PBDEs
PBDE 209 was detected above the MRL in three samples, and PBDE 47, PBDE 99, PBDE 100, and PBDE 153 were detected above the MRL in one sample. No other PBDEs were detected above the MRL in any sample. There are no published sediment screening criteria (i.e., TEL, ERL) for PBDEs.

Dioxins and Furans
The total toxic equivalency quotients (TEQs) for all samples exceeded the TEL (0.85 ng/kg) and/or apparent effects threshold (AET) (3.6 ng/kg). TEQs ranged from 0.991 ng/kg in sample to 5.943 ng/kg.

4.3.1 ALTERNATIVE 1
Overall, disposal of dredged material within the proposed ODMDS modification area is expected to result in accumulation of dredged material over the seafloor and changes in sediment characteristics within the site and possibly adjacent to the site. Sediments that contain appreciable quantities of silt and clay have a greater adsorptive capacity for trace contaminants than coarser sediments because of their large surface area-to-volume ratios. Accumulation of trace elements and chlorinated and petroleum hydrocarbons in sediment can have short- and long-term negative effects on marine organisms. Many benthic organisms are non-selective deposit feeders, ingesting substantial quantities of bottom sediments. The potential for bioaccumulation of trace sediment contaminants (mercury, cadmium, lead, and some chlorinated hydrocarbons) by these organisms is of particular environmental concern.

Prior to dredging and ocean disposal, sediments must be evaluated and screened using national testing guidance (USEPA and USACE 1991) to ensure that chemical constituents are below biologically significant concentrations that have adverse ecologic effects on marine organisms. In addition to toxicity assessment using acute and chronic bioassays, material should be physically and chemically consistent with an ODMDS. Only dredge material deemed acceptable under these protocols would be approved for disposal at an ODMDS. Based on previous sediment chemistry testing results from samples collected within the existing Charleston ODMDS (see Section 3.2.2), disposal of dredged material is not expected to produce significant long-term environmental effects related to sediment chemistry and contaminants of concern. However, sediment composition within the site may be significantly altered as a result of clay and silt material disposal on otherwise sandy sediments. Progressive transition to sediments containing a higher percentage of silt and clay is inevitable with long-term use of the site. Changes in sediment composition will likely alter the benthic community structure. Effects on the benthic community are discussed in more detail in Section 4.6.1.

Dredge materials to be disposed of in the proposed ODMDS modification area are anticipated to be primarily from the Charleston Harbor Navigation Project. Therefore, the physical and chemical composition of maintenance dredged material is expected to be similar to that previously dumped at the Charleston ODMDS. Geotechnical analysis of the proposed new work dredged material for the Charleston Harbor Navigation Project indicate that there will be a substantial amount of limestone rock. This material may be different from what was historically disposed at the Charleston ODMDS and may have the potential for other beneficial uses. For
example, approximately 8.8 mcy of rock are anticipated to be moved from the entrance channel dredging area to offshore reef placement areas, mitigation sites, and to the ODMDS for berm construction (See Table 1.3-3). The rock is characterized as a soft, weak, moderately cemented, fossiliferous limestone, having an unconfined compressive strength that ranges from 73 to 416 psi, which enables it to be excavated without requiring blasting (see FR/EIS Appendix B, Geotechnical). The Charleston Harbor Navigation Study (Post 45) proposes the use approximately 6.3 mcy of limestone rock dredged from the entrance channel for berm construction along the eastern, western, and southern boundaries of the ODMDS, which will be beneficial by creating fish habitat and live hardbottom habitat and by minimizing sediment transport from the site. The berm will be constructed by depositing limestone rock from barges along transects to form a U-shaped berm. Recognizing that dredged material disposal in open water is an inexact practice, the conceptual design is a 10 foot high berm on a 3:1 slope for a width of roughly 400 feet, but deviations are likely.

In 2002, sediment characteristics and sediment contaminants within and surrounding the Charleston ODMDS were assessed after completion of the Charleston Harbor Deepening Project (Jutte et al. 2005), which involved placement of approximately 20 to 25 mcy of material at the ODMDS. Levels of sediment contaminants within the disposal zone and surrounding areas were low. Trace metals, PAH, PCB, and pesticide concentrations were below published bioeffects guidelines, with the exception of cadmium levels in one stratum within the disposal area. These findings suggest that the presence of contaminated sediments was low and was limited to the designated disposal zone. It should be noted that detection limits were above published bioeffects guidelines (ERL levels) for six contaminants, which were therefore not adequately assessed as part of this study and could potentially be present at levels that could adversely affect biological resources.

Based on previous survey results from the Charleston ODMDS, disposal operations at the proposed modification area should not cause significant effects on concentrations of contaminants in the sediments. Only material that has been evaluated in accordance with EPA and USACE protocols will be deemed suitable for ocean disposal; therefore, no significant adverse chemical or biological impacts are expected outside the disposal site boundary.

**Mitigating Measures.** Impacts related to changes in bathymetry and sediment physical and chemical characteristics as a result of accumulations of dredged material in the site are unavoidable. To minimize the significance and monitor the impacts of disposal on the site, several measures have been incorporated in the SMMP (Appendix C), and include, but are not limited to, the following:

- Periodic monitoring of the site and surrounding area will be conducted to determine changes in bathymetry, sediment composition, short-term and long-term fate of materials, and benthic community structure.
- Disposal of material will be initiated within the appropriate disposal zone. Project-specific release zones can be defined within the disposal zone to better distribute dredged material throughout the ODMDS.
- An electronic tracking system will be utilized to provide surveillance of the transportation and disposal of dredged material. The National Dredging Quality Management (DQM) Program is the USACE’s next generation automated dredging monitoring system and analysis tools. This system provides USACE with timely data access, multiple reporting formats, full technical support, including dredge certifications, data quality control, database management, and support for the DQM operating system. On board the dredge, sensors continually monitor dredge activities, operations, and efficiency.
4.3.2 NO ACTION ALTERNATIVE
Under the No Action Alternative, an ODMDS modification area would not be designated and dredged material would not be disposed of within that area. Disposal operations would continue within the existing Charleston ODMDS until the site reaches capacity at the -25 foot MLLW operational threshold. Therefore, sediment composition within the Charleston ODMDS would continue to be altered as a result of predominantly clay and silty material disposal on otherwise sandy sediments. However, if dredging and disposal of dredged material offshore were decreased due to limited ODMDS capacity, impacts to sediment quality could potentially be decreased over time.

4.4 THREATENED AND ENDANGERED SPECIES
The mandate of the ESA is to ensure that endangered and threatened species are protected and that government departments and agencies take all reasonable and prudent precautions to ensure that their activities do not jeopardize the continued existence or destroy or adversely modify the critical habitats of listed species (Dickerson et al. 2004). Other non-USACE users of the ODMDS will be responsible for conducting their own ESA consultations as part of their permitting process, and similar reasonable and prudent measures are expected to be required.

Table 3.3-1 lists the threatened or endangered species under the ESA potentially occurring within the vicinity of the proposed ODMDS modification area. This EA discusses life history traits of threatened and endangered species and identifies potential impacts on the species as a result of the proposed action. Site designation means that dredged material will be transported to the site and discharged. The methods are the same as those used for many years at the existing Charleston ODMDS. It is not expected that dredged material disposal at the proposed ODMDS modification area will adversely affect these threatened and endangered species because the area is small in comparison to their total available ocean habitat, because of the wide-ranging habits of these species, and because they are highly mobile and can avoid areas during dumping activities. No loss of critical foraging habitat, significant increases in mortality, or reductions in reproductive success for these species is expected to occur relative to the entire region as a result of the proposed action. It is unlikely that dredged material disposal operations would affect migration, feeding, or reproductive activities of marine mammals and sea turtles. While many marine species, including the North Atlantic right whale, may pass through the proposed ODMDS modification area, passage is not geographically restricted to these areas.

The impacts of maintenance dredging operations on sea turtles have been assessed by NMFS in the South Atlantic Regional Biological Opinion (SARBO), which has established environmental windows that restrict dredging operations during the nesting season to minimize impacts to nesting sea turtles. USACE, BOEM, and NMFS are currently in consultation for a new SARBO. USACE will comply with the terms and conditions of the most current SARBO for all maintenance dredging actions. Certain USACE Regulatory permit applicants will also comply with the SARBO. New work dredging and disposal projects will require their own Biological Opinion. It is important to note that this EA does not address effects specifically associated with dredging activities on sea turtles because they are addressed for each dredging project.
The impact-producing factors associated with dredged material disposal include:

- Burial of hardbottom
- Increased turbidity and sedimentation
- Loss of sessile biota and finfish assemblages
- Loss of productivity
- Modification of bathymetry

4.4.1 SEA TURTLES

4.4.1.1 Alternative 1

The proposed ODMDS modification area is contiguous with the existing Charleston ODMDS, and the effects of dredged material disposal on sea turtles would be similar for both sites.

Project Impacts

1. **Habitat.** Located approximately 6 miles offshore, the proposed site designation will not affect nesting beaches or nearshore habitats for sea turtles. Turtles traveling to and from nesting beaches may pass through the area. The proposed ODMDS does not occur within Critical Habitat for the loggerhead sea turtle and therefore, will have no effect on Critical Habitat.

2. **Food Supply.** As discussed in Section 3, the principal food sources of these species are crustaceans, mollusks, other invertebrates, fish, and plant material. Disposal activities at the ODMDS can potentially have a temporary and minor impact on food availability by burying and altering the benthic habitat and creating temporary increases in turbidity. The effect of increased turbidity on sea turtles is expected to be minimal due to the short duration of the reduced water clarity. The effects of burial on benthic infauna are considered minor because disposal operations will only occur in one area along specified dumping transects. This practice means that other portions of the ODMDS remain relatively unaffected. Since disposal is spread out between dredging contracts, there will be adequate recovery time for benthic epifauna and infauna. Additionally, the approximately 4.4-nmi² ODMDS modification area represents only a small portion of this type of benthic habitat available in the region, and only a small portion of the ODMDS would be impacted during each disposal event. Additional information on impacts to benthic resources is discussed in Section 4.2.5. Only dredged material evaluated and found acceptable in accordance with the joint USEPA/USACOE guidance (USAEPA/USACE, 1991 and USEPA/USACE, 1993) may disposed of in the ocean. The testing evaluates the potential for unacceptable effects such as toxicity or bioaccumulation. These required tests should reduce the potential for unacceptable water column and benthic effects caused by dredged material contaminants.

3. **Relationship to Critical Periods in Life Cycle.** The proposed site designation will not affect nesting beaches or habitats supporting various life stages.

4. **Effect Determination.** It is EPA’s determination that while designation of the ODMDS modification area may affect sea turtles under NMFS jurisdiction, the project is not likely to adversely affect them. Concurrent with the distribution of the draft EA, EPA requested that NMFS concur with the above determination. On April 26, 2016, NMFS provided a letter that concluded the proposed action is not likely to adversely affect listed species, including sea turtles. Responses to resource agency comments and questions are provided in this Final EA (Appendix A).
4.4.1.2 No Action Alternative

Under the No Action Alternative, the proposed ODMDS modification area would not be designated. However, dredged material will continue to be disposed of at the existing Charleston ODMDS until the site reaches capacity. Potential impacts to sea turtles during disposal operations at the existing site are the same as those discussed for Alternative 1.

4.4.2 MARINE MAMMALS

4.4.2.1 Alternative 1

The proposed ODMDS modification area is contiguous with the existing Charleston ODMDS, and the effects of dredged material disposal on marine mammals would be similar for both sites.

Project Impacts

(1) **Habitat.** The proposed site designation will not affect habitats for any species of marine mammals. The creation of a rock berm and modification of the ODMDS does not occur on a scale large enough to adversely affect any of the primary constituent elements for the proposed Critical Habitat for Right Whales.

(2) **Food Supply.** The proposed action involves the disposal of sand and sand-silt mixtures on similar substrates. Impacts to food supply would be similar to those discussed above under Sea Turtles. The productivity of the nearshore ocean will not be diminished by the proposed dredging.

(3) **Relationship to Critical Periods in Life Cycle.** The occurrence of these species is usually associated with migrations. NMFS (2015) indicates that the areas off South Carolina are increasingly utilized as calving grounds. Since the proposed action does not alter any of the PCE’s for right whale Critical Habitat it will have no effect on Critical Habitat.

(4) **Effect Determination.** It is the determination of EPA that while designation of the ODMDS modification area may affect marine mammals under NMFS jurisdiction, the project is not likely to adversely affect them. Additionally, the proposed action will not adversely modify the proposed right whale Critical Habitat. Concurrent with the distribution of the draft EA, EPA requested that NMFS and USFWS concur with the above determination. On January 5, 2016, USFWS provided a letter that concluded the proposed action is not likely to adversely affect the West Indian manatee. On April 26, 2016, NMFS provided a letter that concluded the proposed action is not likely to adversely affect listed species, including marine mammals. Responses to resource agency comments and questions are provided with this Final EA (Appendix A).

4.4.2.2 No Action Alternative

Under the No Action Alternative, the proposed ODMDS modification area would not be designated. However, dredged material will continue to be disposed of at the existing Charleston ODMDS until the site reaches capacity. Potential impacts to marine mammals during disposal operations at the existing ODMDS are the same as those discussed for Alternative 1. If ocean dredged material disposal were decreased due to a lack of capacity at the existing ODMDS, then impacts to marine mammals related to vessel collisions, offshore foraging, and noise associated with hauling and dumping would be decreased.
4.4.3 STURGEON

4.4.3.1 Alternative 1

The proposed ODMDS modification area is contiguous with the existing Charleston ODMDS, and the effects of dredged material disposal on sturgeon would be similar for both sites.

Project Impacts

1) **Habitat.** The proposed site designation will not affect habitats for either species of sturgeon in the Charleston Harbor area. Atlantic sturgeon are more likely than shortnose sturgeon to be located near the project area. The creation of a rock berm and modification of the ODMDS does not occur on a scale large enough to adversely affect sturgeon habitat.

2) **Food Supply.** The proposed action involves the disposal of sand and sand-silt mixtures on similar substrates. Impacts to food supply would be similar to those discussed above under Sea Turtles. The productivity of the nearshore ocean will not be diminished by the proposed dredging.

3) **Relationship to Critical Periods in Life Cycle.** Atlantic and shortnose sturgeon are both anadromous fish species; however, their habitat ranges, as a component of their migration cycle, are slightly different. Atlantic sturgeon spawn in freshwater but primarily lead a marine existence; whereas, shortnose sturgeon spawn at or above head-of-tide in most rivers and rarely occur in the marine environment aside from seasonal migrations to estuarine waters. However, recent research by SCDNR indicates that interbasin and interstate movements do occur for shortnose sturgeon. Considering that Atlantic sturgeon spend more time in the nearshore marine environment than shortnose sturgeon, they are more likely to occur or pass through the proposed ODMDS.

4) **Effect Determination.** It is the determination of EPA that while designation of the ODMDS modification area may affect Atlantic and shortnose sturgeon, the project is not likely to adversely affect them. Concurrent with the distribution of the draft EA, EPA requested that NMFS concur with the above determination. On April 26, 2016, NMFS provided a letter that concluded the proposed action is not likely to adversely affect listed species, including sturgeon. Responses to resource agency comments and questions are provided with this Final EA (Appendix A).

4.4.4 SUMMARY OF EFFECTS

Table 4.4-1 summarizes the determination of effects from implementation of the proposed action on listed species and critical habitat as presented in the previous section.
Table 4.4-1. Summary of Effects on Listed Species and Critical Habitat

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Species</th>
<th>ESA Status</th>
<th>Effects Determination</th>
<th>Occurrence in Project Area</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SEA TURTLES</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Threatened</td>
<td>May affect, not likely to adversely affect</td>
<td>Occasional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loggerhead</td>
<td>Threatened*</td>
<td>May affect, not likely to adversely affect</td>
<td>Common</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leatherback</td>
<td>Endangered</td>
<td>Not likely to adversely affect</td>
<td>Rare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kemp’s Ridley</td>
<td>Endangered</td>
<td>May affect, not likely to adversely affect</td>
<td>Occasional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hawksbill</td>
<td>Endangered</td>
<td>Not likely to adversely affect</td>
<td>Rare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MARINE MAMMALS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>North Atlantic right whale</td>
<td>Endangered**</td>
<td>May affect, not likely to adversely affect</td>
<td>Occasional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Humpback whale</td>
<td>Endangered</td>
<td>May affect, not likely to adversely affect</td>
<td>Occasional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>West Indian Manatee</td>
<td>Endangered</td>
<td>Not likely to adversely affect</td>
<td>Rare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FISH</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shortnose sturgeon</td>
<td>Endangered</td>
<td>May affect, not likely to adversely affect</td>
<td>Rare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atlantic sturgeon</td>
<td>Endangered</td>
<td>May affect, not likely to adversely affect</td>
<td>Occasional</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Critical habitat designated in the nearshore area, south of the entrance channel
** Critical habitat proposed in the project area

4.5 HARDBOTTOM HABITATS

4.5.1 ALTERNATIVE 1

The proposed ODMDS modification area is contiguous with the existing Charleston ODMDS; therefore, the effects of dredged material disposal on nearby hardbottom habitats would be similar for both sites. The impact-producing factors associated with dredged material disposal include:

- Burial of hardbottom
- Increased turbidity and sedimentation
- Loss of sessile biota and finfish assemblages
- Loss of productivity

As part of the ODMDS modification process, sidescan sonar and subbottom profiling surveys of hardbottom habitats were conducted to determine the extent and proximity of resources within and adjacent to the proposed ODMDS modification area (Gayes et al. 2013). Figure 2-1 depicts the hardbottom habitats that were delineated. Results indicate there is a paucity of hardbottom resources within the proposed ODMDS modification area. A 2.4-acre polygon identified as hardbottom straddles the north boundary of the proposed ODMDS modification area. Of the 2.4-acre polygon, approximately 1.6 acres are contained within the site itself, with the remaining 1.2 acres occurring just outside and north of the boundary. The 1.6 acres of hardbottom amounts to 0.04% of the area within the proposed ODMDS modification area.

In areas where hardbottom habitat occurs within the site or is in close proximity to the ODMDS boundaries, there is the potential for long-term loss of sessile biota and associated finfishes through burial by fine-grained sediments dispersed from the ODMDS (Crowe et al. 2006). Even if the habitat is not buried, increased sedimentation can result in decreased productivity or death of sponges and corals. Burial of hardbottom habitats can also result in reductions in the number
of fish species and individuals (Lindeman and Snyder 1999). Studies on corals in the vicinity of disposal sites have documented deleterious effects on long-term responsiveness and immediate short-term productivity rates following exposure to increased sediment concentrations (Porter 1993). A study of the physiological effects of dredged material on the oxygen metabolism of two hardbottom reef organisms (the scleractinian coral *Oculina arbuscula* and the gorgonian octocoral *Lophogorgia hebes*) was completed in 1992 by EPA in conjunction with the University of Georgia’s Department of Ecology. Study results suggested that while coral recovery from single episodes of low-level sediment exposure is likely, recovery from repeated low-level exposures or single episodes of high-level exposure is more difficult. Long-term responsiveness and immediate short-term productivity rates were inhibited by exposure to sediment concentrations above 100 mg/L (15 NTU) (Porter 1993).

Low-relief (generally less than 3 feet) and low-growth hardbottom reef habitats have a patchy distribution within 2.5 miles of the Charleston ODMDS. Monitoring has been conducted to assess conditions in and around the ODMDS and document impacts from disposal operations on nearby hardbottom reef habitats. Crowe et al. (2006) conducted a study to document any changes in sedimentation rates, sponge/coral density, sponge/coral condition, finfish assemblages, and areal extent of six hardbottom reef areas over a 5-year period. Figure 4-1 depicts the location of reefs sites that were monitored during the study and their proximity to the Charleston ODMDS disposal zone. Distances from the disposal zone ranged from 1.0 nmi (for reef site SWA) to 5.2 nmi (for reef site C2). Results indicate that the percent occurrence of sessile, erect-growth forms at most neighboring reefs during a 5-year monitoring period did not change significantly during disposal operations, and at sites where significant changes did occur, the changes did not appear to be related to movement of disposal material, but rather to natural processes (Crowe et al. 2006). Percent hardbottom habitat is compared between the six reef monitoring sites, as well as between years, in Table 4.5.1.

A 5-year video survey of reefs near the ODMDS found a variety of finfish, notably black sea bass, scup, porgies, wrasses, and grunts (all members of the snapper-grouper complex). Crowe et al. found no difference in abundance or diversity between control reefs (C1 and C2 in Figure 4-1) and reefs near the ODMDS, and stated that, “The abundance of finfish individuals or species observed at study sites and reference areas does not appear to be affected by disposal activities during the 5-year survey period.” They also examined the encrusting fauna that characterizes these reefs and found that while there were some differences among sites, those differences “do not appear to be related to movement of disposal material.”
Figure 4-1. Location of Reef Sites in and near the ODMDS (Delineated in Black) Surveyed by Crowe et al. (2006); Other Areas of Hardbottom South and West of the ODMDS Are Not Shown

Source: Crowe et al. 2006

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reef Site</th>
<th>Distance from Disposal Zone (nmi)</th>
<th>2000</th>
<th>2001</th>
<th>2002</th>
<th>2004</th>
<th>2005</th>
<th>Mean ± St. Dev.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hardbottom based on coded video</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SWA</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>(omitted)(^A)</td>
<td>19.9</td>
<td>24.0</td>
<td>18.5</td>
<td>21.8</td>
<td>21.1 ± 2.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WB</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>47.4</td>
<td>23.4</td>
<td>49.7</td>
<td>(omitted)(^A)</td>
<td>55.2</td>
<td>43.9 ± 14.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SWB</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>(omitted)(^A)</td>
<td>23.6</td>
<td>29.6</td>
<td>(omitted)(^A)</td>
<td>24.7 (^B)</td>
<td>26.0 ± 3.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EB</td>
<td>3.6</td>
<td>25.2</td>
<td>14.1</td>
<td>13.9</td>
<td>21.2</td>
<td>23.7</td>
<td>19.6 ± 5.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C1</td>
<td>4.4</td>
<td>(no data)</td>
<td>25.5</td>
<td>56.2</td>
<td>47.4 (^B)</td>
<td>31.7 (^B)</td>
<td>40.2 ± 14.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C2</td>
<td>5.2</td>
<td>(no data)</td>
<td>12.9 (^B)</td>
<td>61.6</td>
<td>24.8 (^B)</td>
<td>42.9</td>
<td>35.6 ± 21.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hardbottom based on sidescan mosaic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SWA</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>(omitted)(^C)</td>
<td>66.6</td>
<td>69.4</td>
<td>68.1</td>
<td>59.3</td>
<td>65.9 ± 4.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WB</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>(no data)</td>
<td>61.2</td>
<td>81.0</td>
<td>86.9</td>
<td>67.7</td>
<td>74.2 ± 11.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SWB</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>(no data)</td>
<td>55.0</td>
<td>85.5</td>
<td>70.7</td>
<td>62.9</td>
<td>68.5 ± 13.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EB</td>
<td>3.6</td>
<td>(no data)</td>
<td>57.8</td>
<td>61.1</td>
<td>66.1</td>
<td>64.9</td>
<td>62.5 ± 3.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C1</td>
<td>4.4</td>
<td>(no data)</td>
<td>57.3</td>
<td>60.3</td>
<td>62.7</td>
<td>59.4</td>
<td>59.9 ± 2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C2</td>
<td>5.2</td>
<td>(no data)</td>
<td>53.3</td>
<td>58.4</td>
<td>74.2</td>
<td>51.1</td>
<td>59.3 ± 10.4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^A\) Results are omitted due to poor visibility in video collected during the survey.
\(^B\) Inconsistencies were found between tabulated data and discussion text in Crowe et al. (2006). The values shown above are based on the tables in Crowe et al. (2006).
\(^C\) Results are omitted due to poor contrast in sidescan signatures collected during the survey.

Mitigating Measures: Approximately 14.7 acres of hardbottom and probable hardbottom have been mapped close to the southern boundary of the proposed ODMDS modification area and 2.6 acres of hardbottom have been mapped along the northern boundary (Figure 2-1). To help protect the larger area of hardbottom habitat near the southern boundary from being buried by sediment migrating from the proposed ODMDS modification area, two avoidance and minimization measures were used. The first was to relocate the southern boundary of the proposed ODMDS northward and give a 100 meter buffer between the habitat and the ODMDS boundary. The second was to use limestone rock material dredged from deepening the entrance channel to construct a U-shaped berm along the east, south, and west perimeters of the modified ODMDS (Figure 2-1). This berm area represents approximately 427 acres within the ODMDS. The dimensions of the berm would be approximately 15,000 feet x 16,000 feet x 15,000 x 400 feet for the western, southern, eastern sides and width, respectively. The berm would be built on roughly a 3:1 slope. The height of the berm would be 10 feet off the bottom elevation and no higher than -25 feet MLLW. The berm would serve multiple purposes, including supplementing hardbottom habitat, providing additional fish habitat, and containing dredged material within the site. This beneficial use project would use smaller rock material to create the base of the berm, and larger rock dredged with a clamshell dredge to create the outer portion of the berm. The larger rock would provide increased surface area, which would enhance the habitat value. As mentioned in Section 2, the exact dimensions of the berm cannot be given. Post disposal surveys will be performed in order to document the extent of the berm.
LTFATE and MPFATE modeling results over a 25-year period indicate depths of sediment deposited outside the boundaries of the ODMDS will not exceed the 5 cm deposition contour guidance provided by EPA (Figure 2-3 [USACE 2015, Appendix D]). Given that the hardbottom resources in the area experience periodic burial and re-exposure due to natural processes and the modeling results indicate that sediment deposition outside the boundaries of the ODDMS will not exceed 5 cm, sedimentation and turbidity as a result of disposal activities are not expected to impact nearby hardbottom resources. Also, additional hardbottom habitat will be created with the construction of the limestone rock berm which will provide habitat for sessile biota and finfish assemblages.

4.5.2 NO ACTION ALTERNATIVE
Under the No Action Alternative, the proposed ODMDS modification area would not be designated. However, dredged material will continue to be disposed of at the existing Charleston ODMDS until the site reaches capacity. Because the existing ODMDS disposal zone is not adjacent to any hardbottom resources, no impacts to hardbottom habitats during disposal operations at the existing ODMDS are expected. If ocean dredged material disposal were decreased due to a lack of capacity at the existing ODMDS, impacts to hardbottom habitat due to disposal operations would also be decreased.

4.6 FISH AND WILDLIFE RESOURCES
4.6.1 BENTHIC COMMUNITIES
4.6.1.1 Alternative 1
The proposed ODMDS modification area is contiguous with the existing Charleston ODMDS; therefore, the effects of dredged material disposal on benthic communities would be similar for both sites. In general, the impact-producing factors associated with dredged material disposal include:

- Burial of benthic organisms
- Change in sediment physical and chemical composition
- Burial of hardbottom
- Increased turbidity and sedimentation
- Loss of sessile biota and finfish assemblages
- Loss of productivity

Benthic communities provide an important food or energy resource for higher trophic levels, including demersal fish and large epifaunal organisms (Zarillo et al. 2009, Ahheit and Scheibel 1982). As a result, changes in benthic community structure may result in changes in other trophic levels dependent upon the benthos. Table 4.6-1 summarizes the possible direct effects of physical disturbance, such as dredged material disposal, at various levels of benthic community organization.
### Table 4.6-1. Possible Effects of Dredged Material Disposal on Offshore Benthos

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level of Organization</th>
<th>Possible Effects</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Individual</td>
<td>Increased probability of death or injury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Energetic cost of re-establishing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Effect on reproductive output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Effect on food availability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Exposure to predation or displacement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Provision of colonizable space</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Competitive release</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Population</td>
<td>Changes in density</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Changes in recruitment intensity and/or variability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Changes in dispersion patterns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community</td>
<td>Changes in species diversity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Changes in overall abundance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Changes in productivity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Changes in the patterns of energy flow or nutrient recycling</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Source: Hall 1994*

### General Effects of Burial

Deposition of dredged materials will bury and smother localized populations of benthic organisms, thereby reducing abundance and diversity of the benthic communities in the immediate area of dumping. The magnitude of this impact will depend on the extent of the affected area, the volume of dredged material disposed of, depth and duration of burial, frequency of disposal events, textural and mass properties of the deposited sediment, water temperature, the species experiencing burial, and specific tolerances of affected species to periodic burial (USEPA 1993, 2004). The effects of burial on benthic infauna are considered minor because disposal operations will only occur in one area along specified dumping transects. This practice means that other portions of the ODMDS remain relatively unaffected. Since disposal is spread out between dredging contracts, there will be adequate recovery time for benthic epifauna and infauna. However, this is one of the primary impact pathways for the proposed action.

The ability of buried infauna (or epifauna) to re-establish normal depths and orientations within bottom sediments is an adaptation for surviving burial from natural events such as storm-related changes in sedimentation. Highly mobile epifaunal species have the potential to avoid areas subject to burial, while infaunal species are unlikely to avoid material as it is deposited. However, infaunal species tend to be more resistant to burial than epifaunal species since the infauna have a greater ability to burrow through the sediments once buried. The recovery of impacted areas will reflect the ability of buried organisms to burrow through the sediment layer and the ability of adjacent populations to recolonize the area. Differences in grain size characteristics between the dredged materials and the existing site sediments could exacerbate impacts to the benthic fauna. Alterations in the bottom sediment texture could affect the survival of existing species or recruitment of new species. Benthic assemblages requiring hard substrate or structure will be less tolerant of burial and less able to recolonize than those assemblages associated with sand or sand-silt substrates (USEPA 2004).
As dredged material is placed at the ODMDS, most sessile (stationary) marine invertebrates are not expected to survive burial. Some motile (capable of movement) marine organisms would be buried and unable to survive, while others such as burrowing specialists may survive. Survival rates depend primarily on burial depth and frequency of disturbance. Repeated burials could weaken benthic and motile organisms, resulting in direct or indirect mortality (e.g., greater susceptibility to predation, parasites, disease). Frequencies of disturbance that are less than 1 year tend to keep the colonizing benthos in an early successional stage, while burial frequencies greater than 1 year allow colonization of higher-order successional species with longer mean life spans and more conservative reproductive strategies (Rhoads et al. 1978).

The impact of burial has been quantified for several species in estuarine environments. For example, Kranz (1974) determined the depth of burial that caused mortality of several bivalve species. The critical burial depth for epifaunal suspension feeders was less than 5 cm (2 inches), while infaunal deposit-feeders could survive and burrow through as much as 50 cm (20 inches) of overburden. In situ burial experiments by Nichols et al. (1978) indicated that overburden thicknesses of 5 to 10 cm (2 to 4 inches) did not cause significant mortality to mud-dwelling invertebrates as most of these motile infauna could initiate escape responses by burrowing upward, while organisms covered with overburdens of 30 cm (12 inches) could not initiate escape responses. Similar results for estuarine organisms were documented in a laboratory study by Maurer et al. (1981), who also noted critical overburden thicknesses of 5 to 10 cm (2 to 4 inches). Therefore, estimates of critical burial depths are highly variable, ranging from 5 to 50 cm (2 to 20 inches), as determined by the depth of material from which infauna cannot burrow or excavate to reach the surface (USEPA 2010a). Consequently, areas of the potential disposal sites that receive materials that accumulate at depths greater than this threshold have the potential to be adversely impacted by dredged material disposal. The response of a species to a specific overburden thickness can be estimated from how frequently a species population experiences natural sediment burial. For example, species living on rippled bottoms or sediments subjected to re-suspension are better able to withstand burial by relatively thick sediment layers than species living in low-kinetic-energy and low-sedimentation-rate areas (USEPA 1993).

**General Effects on Colonization after Deposition**

Brooks et al. (2006) reviewed existing literature on offshore benthic assemblages along the U.S. east coast and Gulf of Mexico continental shelf. From the few studies available, it appears that general “recovery” from anthropogenic disturbance by offshore benthic assemblages occurs within 3 months to 2.5 years. However, the authors concluded that presently it is difficult to draw conclusions about approximate recovery times following anthropogenic activities such as sand mining and/or disposal operations because of the paucity of studies.

Colonization by infaunal organisms of deposited dredged material has been documented in shallow-water environments. In most cases, the colonization process in shallow water begins within a few days following cessation of discharges (Germano and Rhoads 1984, Scott et al. 1987). The mode of colonization is sensitive to the thickness of the deposit (USEPA 1993). For thin overburden (≤10 cm), buried adults have an upward escape response, with selective survival based on the ability of different species to re-establish their natural vertical depth positions within the new sediments. When dredged material accumulates in a thick mound, only the thin, distal edges of the deposit may be colonized by this means. The thicker part of the deposit is colonized primarily through larval recruitment or immigration of organisms from adjacent undisturbed areas (USEPA 1993).
Brooks et al. (2006) found that, in most cases, polychaetes were the first to recolonize dredged or disposal sites, with crustaceans, specifically amphipods, also recolonizing relatively quickly. In shallow water (less than 50 meters depth), colonization by adults (reburrowing) and larval recruitment normally is very rapid, taking only a few days to weeks to establish a low diversity but numerically abundant pioneering community (USEPA 1993). Rapid colonization is attributed to the presence of competition-free space and the availability of detrital organic food that commonly is in greater concentration in dredged material than on the ambient seafloor (USEPA 1993).

In shallow-water disposal site studies, three phases of macrofaunal recolonization have been described (Rhoads and Germano 1982, 1986, 1990; Scott et al. 1987). The first infaunal organisms (Stage I) to colonize a disposal site by larval recruitment are usually small opportunistic polychaetes. Within 1 or 2 years, polychaete assemblages may be replaced by dense aggregations of tubiculous amphipods and tellinid bivalves (Stage II). Densities of pioneering species on dredged material often are significantly higher than densities on the ambient bottom (USEPA 1993).

Larval recruitment and establishment of Stage III species on a disposal site require several years because these organisms tend to have more conservative reproductive strategies, slower population and developmental growth rates, and longer mean life spans (Pearson and Rosenberg 1978, Rhoads et al. 1978, Hecker 1982). Stage III species are “head-down” deposit feeders and are commonly encountered as part of the equilibrium community on ambient mud bottoms adjacent to disposal sites.

These successional changes for shallow-water disposal sites apply only to sites that experience “normal” succession, which involves rapid initial colonization progressing to Stage III within 1 to 2 years (USEPA 1993). Such a progression can be retarded or stopped if disposal operations are continuous or frequent, if the disposed material experiences erosion and dispersal, or if the disposal area is seasonally or permanently affected by low dissolved oxygen (USEPA 1993). The relationship between near-bottom dissolved oxygen and the successional model indicated that mobile epifauna or demersal species avoid regions with dissolved oxygen concentrations below approximately 3 mg/L (USEPA 1993).

Results from sediment profile imaging (SPI) studies conducted at the Jacksonville ODMDS after the Mayport Deepening Project indicate that the normal-equilibrium infaunal community appears to consist primarily of low to moderate numbers of Stage I or II surface-dwelling suspension feeders that are pre-adapted to energetic sandy environments (NewFields 2013). Typical Stage III infauna (deposit-feeding organisms) is generally not supported in this habitat type. Disposal of silt and clay sediments results in an increase in Stage II and Stage III infauna, which is likely temporary.

**Effects of Disposal Operations on Benthic Assemblages at Charleston ODMDS**

Several monitoring studies have been conducted at the site since it was first designated. This section provides an overall summary of those results.

A baseline survey conducted in 1987 detected minor changes in benthic community structure related to a disposal operation completed in 1986, and some movement of the material was detected away from the disposal site (Winn et. al. 1989). However, this movement did not appear to significantly alter benthic communities outside the ODMDS. Another study completed in 1993-1994 found that species composition, faunal density, and number of species varied based on sediment types (Van Dolah et al. 1996, 1997). Jutte et al (2005) assessed the
biological condition of bottom habitats within and surrounding the Charleston ODMDS after the conclusion of disposal activities associated with the 1999-2002 Charleston Harbor Deepening Project. Benthic community data and patterns in the benthic community structure indicated that disposal-related effects are detectable in the boundary areas surrounding the Charleston ODMDS. Comparisons of benthic assemblages indicated significantly greater overall abundance and diversity in non-impacted strata than in impacted strata. Additional analyses revealed that the benthic community structure in most impacted strata was similar based on species composition and relative abundance. Patterns in the abundance of individual species are likely consequences of physiological or behavioral responses to alterations in sediment characteristics caused by disposal operations.

Temporal comparisons of benthic assemblages from the baseline assessment (1993-1994), interim assessment (2000), and post-disposal assessment (2002) indicate significant effects on benthic community structure related to disposal operations completed as part of the 1999-2002 Charleston Harbor Deepening Project. A general trend of decreased benthic abundance, reduced species numbers, and decreased diversity was observed in impacted strata to the west and northwest of the ODMDS. In strata classified as non-impacted, many biological metrics were not significantly different from baseline assessments or did not exhibit a significant trend over time. Temporal analyses of general taxonomic structure suggested that these community metrics showed alterations in the impacted strata following disposal operations; however, since many differences were also observed in non-impacted strata, differences cannot be attributed directly to disposal activities. Additional analyses were completed on the abundance of the five dominant taxa collected in 1993, 1994, and 2002. In most impacted strata, two species showed significant declines in abundance in 2002 when compared to the baseline assessment, a response that was likely due to physiological or behavioral responses to changes in sediment composition from disposal operations. The other three dominant taxa showed either no significant change over time or shifts in abundance that appeared to be related to natural population fluctuations.

**Mitigating Measures.** Significant accumulations of dredged materials and associated burial of infaunal organisms are unavoidable impacts within the proposed ODMDS modification area. However, LTFATE and MPFATE modeling results over a 25-year period indicate depths of sediment deposited outside the boundaries of the ODMDS will not exceed the 5 cm deposition contour guidance provided by EPA (Figure 2-3 [USACE 2015, Appendix D]). To ensure that impacts to benthos are isolated to the site, USACE will conduct post-disposal bathymetric surveys to verify the non-dispersive nature of the site consistent with the SMMP. Historical data of the benthic communities have also been conducted and provide a basis for comparison with post-disposal status and trends surveys. These data will be used to assess short- and long-term impacts to benthic communities. USACE also requires that accurate positioning is used during disposal events and that performance data (position, time, draft, disposal area) be collected to verify dredged material disposal within the site. EPA and USACE will conduct periodic sampling to verify the quality of disposed sediments and to confirm that significant quantities of sediments have not been transported out of the site. More information on site management and monitoring is provided in the SMMP (Appendix C).

4.6.1.2 No Action Alternative

Under the No Action Alternative, the proposed ODMDS modification area would not be designated. However, dredged material will continue to be disposed at the existing Charleston ODMDS until the site reaches capacity. Impacts to benthic assemblages would continue within the Charleston ODMDS and would be similar to those described for Alternative 1; however the
areal extent of the impacts would be less because the disposal site would not be expanded. If ocean dredged material disposal were decreased due to a lack of capacity at the existing ODMDS, impacts to benthic habitat due to disposal operations would be decreased.

4.6.2 FISH COMMUNITIES

4.6.2.1 Alternative 1

The proposed ODMDS modification area is contiguous with the existing Charleston ODMDS; therefore, the effects of dredged material disposal on fish communities would be similar for both sites. In general, the impact-producing factors include:

- Burial of benthos – reduced food availability
- Temporary water column perturbations (turbidity plumes, lowered dissolved oxygen concentrations)

Disposal activities at the proposed ODMDS modification area are expected to only minimally affect pelagic fishes. The area affected by disposal operations is small relative to the distribution of pelagic fishes in the region, and their presence within the affected area during disposal operations would be minimal. Pelagic fishes passing through the immediate area might be forced to change their route during discharge operations. Adult fishes within and immediately adjacent to the disposal area may experience a short-term reduction in dissolved oxygen uptake through the gills due to the presence of suspended particles clogging opercular cavities and gill filaments (Doudoroff 1957), as well as a slight decrease in available oxygen due to the biological oxygen demand of the dredged material. Adult fishes may also experience stress from avoidance reactions (USEPA 1995). However, conditions that could impact pelagic fishes are expected to be short-term (hours) and localized (less than a mile), and the effects on pelagic adults in the water column are not expected to be significant.

Juveniles may be more susceptible to the effects of released dredged material (USEPA 1995). Juveniles passing through a turbidity plume may be subject to interference with oxygen exchange through the gill membrane and slightly lowered oxygen availability due to the biological oxygen demand of the suspended sediments. The presence of juvenile fishes within the affected area would be minimal relative to their distribution along the coast.

Effects of Disposal

Disposal of dredged material at the proposed ODMDS modification area could impact demersal fish habitat. The immediate local effect of dredged material disposal would be the burial of their epifaunal and infaunal food resources. Over the long term, dredged material disposal at the site could result in a localized decrease in the diversity and abundance of demersal fish species. These reductions could be caused, in part, by reduced food availability (USEPA 1995). Benthic infauna and epifauna populations, which are the main food sources for demersal fishes, decline when disposal occurs frequently because benthic fauna are unable to re-establish themselves (USEPA 1986). Some recovery of the benthic community occurs within months, but complete recovery of the original benthic communities requires 1 to 3 years (Germano and Rhoads 1984, Dillon 1984, Scott et al. 1987). The most likely situation is that the disposal of dredged material will produce some changes in the benthic assemblages at the site. The effects of burial on benthic infauna are considered minor because disposal operations will only occur in one area along specified dumping transects. This practice means that other portions of the ODMDS remain relatively unaffected. Since disposal is spread out between dredging contracts, there will be adequate recovery time for benthic epifauna and infauna. However, this is one of the
primary impact pathways for the proposed action. Due to the size of the site and the historic and future management of the site, measures are in place to reduce this impact.

Disposal of dredged material in the ODMDS could potentially affect commercial and sport fisheries because increased sedimentation levels occurring from dredging operations can decrease the abundance of fishes in affected areas. However, in some instances, the deposition of dredged material at an ODMDS provides forage and draws king mackerel (*Scomberomorus cavalla*), amberjack (*Seriola* spp.), and great barracuda (*Sphyraena barracuda*) (Strate 2007, Sipler 2007, St. Laurent 2007).

Though information is limited, most studies on the effects of dredging and dredged material disposal on fish communities have focused on larvae and eggs in estuarine environments (Auld and Schubel 1978, Johnston and Wildish 1981). Results from these studies suggest that if disposal of dredged material does not significantly affect these sensitive life stages, then plankton, fishes, or commercial fisheries should be similarly unaffected by disposal events (USEPA 1993).

**Effects of Turbidity**

After dredged material is dumped, much of the fine-grained sediment would remain suspended near the ocean floor (Hirsch et al. 1978). This may physically stress fish by reducing the absorption of dissolved oxygen (USEPA 1995), but this type of stress has not been positively identified as being harmful to fish in terms of overall survival (USEPA 1983). Adult pelagic fishes can probably avoid the suspended material by moving out of the area, but juveniles may be more vulnerable and susceptible to stress (USEPA 1986). More sedentary fish (e.g., flatfishes) usually have a higher tolerance to suspended particles and would experience only minimal effects of suspended solids on their respiration (O'Connor et al. 1977). Turbidity plumes associated with dredged material disposal are so brief that these effects probably do not occur to any significant degree. In general, increases in suspended sediment concentrations following dumping are localized and considered negligible (Oertel 1979). Consequently, interferences of suspended sediments with respiratory structures of fish are minimal (USEPA 1983). Some entrainment of larval fish within the disposal plume may occur, causing minor detrimental effects within the disposal area.

Turbidity tests done by Wallen (1951) using montmorillonite clay (a 2:1 smectite clay) particles and 16 warm-water fish species showed no behavioral changes in fish until the turbidity levels were very high (nearing 20,000 ppm of silicone dioxide). Further, Wallen showed that most fish withstood concentrations above 50,000 ppm before mortality took place, and many of the fish were able to endure concentrations of more than 100,000 ppm for a week or longer before succumbing when turbidity reached 175,000 to 225,000 ppm. In highly turbid conditions, harmful dissolved substances (whether natural or man-made) can impair the gas exchange capacity of the gills as much as or more than the particulate matter can (Doudoroff 1957). The impairment of gill function ascribable to chemically inert suspended particles can apparently occur only when turbidity is exceedingly high (Doudoroff 1957), and so it is thought to only minimally affect fish gill functions during disposal activities.

Nekton are generally not adversely affected by dredged material disposal because of their high mobility (USEPA 1983). During a disposal event, the greatest impacts to fish species may be from increased turbidity within the disposal plume, which may limit the feeding efficiency of visually oriented predators (USEPA 1993). However, highly mobile fish species will likely avoid the disposal plume.
LTFATE and MPFATE modeling results over a 25-year period indicate depths of sediment deposited outside the boundaries of the ODMDS will not exceed the 5 cm deposition contour guidance provided by EPA (USACE 2015). Therefore, impacts related to sedimentation outside the boundaries of the ODMDS are expected to minimal. Disposal operations within the site will follow the SMMP (Appendix C).

4.6.2.2 No Action Alternative
Under the No Action Alternative, the proposed ODMDS modification area would not be designated. However, dredged material will continue to be disposed at the existing Charleston ODMDS until the site reaches capacity. Impacts to fish associated with dredged material disposal at the Charleston ODMDS would be similar to those described for Alternative 1; however, the areal extent of the impacts would be less because the disposal site would not be expanded. If ocean dredged material disposal were decreased due to a lack of capacity at the existing ODMDS, impacts to fish due to disposal operations would be decreased.

4.7 ESSENTIAL FISH HABITAT
This section serves as the EFH Assessment for this proposed action.

4.7.1 ALTERNATIVE 1
The following sections discuss the potential effects of dredged material disposal at the proposed ODMDS modification area on managed habitats and managed taxa that were discussed in Section 3.6. In general, turbidity and sedimentation are the primary causes of impacts to EFH. Given that the proposed ODMDS modification area occupies similar water depths; occurs within the same geographic area; and is similarly affected by currents, waves, and tides as the existing Charleston ODMDS, the effects of disposal are not expected to differ significantly from past or present effects with the exception of hardbottom resources (discussed in Sections 4.5 and 4.7.1.1.2).

4.7.1.1 Managed Habitats
4.7.1.1.1 Water Column
All managed species discussed within this document use the water column during at least one life stage and therefore are affected by changes to water parameters. Impacts to water quality are discussed in detail in Section 4.9.

4.7.1.1.2 Live/Hardbottom
Dredged material disposal that consists of any combination of sand, silt, or clay could result in burial of the existing hardbottom within the site. Burial of this habitat could potentially impact managed species that rely on hardbottom. However, due to the relatively limited acreage of hardbottom within the proposed site (only 1.6 acres of the site is identified as hardbottom), effects will be minor. Disposal of limestone rock material during construction of the berm along the eastern, southern, and western boundaries of the site is expected to result in the creation of additional hardbottom within the boundaries of the site that is likely to benefit managed species that rely on hardbottom habitat. The berm will create an additional approximately 427 acres of hardbottom within the site and will also help minimize sediment transport outside of the site. The berm creation will have a net positive effect on hardbottom habitat. Impacts to hardbottom are discussed in more detail in Section 4.5.
4.7.1.2 Managed Taxa

4.7.1.2.1 Shrimp

The proposed ODMDS modification area may provide shrimp a haven from trawlers, considering that disposal sites are generally avoided to prevent net damage. Also, because much of the dredged material will consist of silts and clays, the area may remain suitable for penaeid shrimp. Therefore, the effects on penaeid shrimp are likely to be minimal.

4.7.1.2.2 Spiny Lobster

Considering the paucity of structural habitat, the Caribbean spiny lobster is not expected to be common within the proposed ODMDS modification area and is not expected to be negatively affected by the proposed action. The berm may provide desirable habitat for the Caribbean spiny lobster.

4.7.1.2.3 Snapper-Grouper Complex

Potential burial of the 1.6 acres of hardbottom within the proposed ODMDS modification area may affect structure-oriented species (e.g., gray snapper \([\text{Lutjanus griseus}]\), sheepshead, scup, triggerfishes, puddingwife \([\text{Halichoeres radiates}]\), groupers) in the area; however, due to the relatively limited acreage at the site, effects will be minor. Species that use soft or shelly bottoms such as black sea bass, rock sea bass, and longspine porgy are likely to continue to find suitable substrate within the site. The Atlantic spadefish \([\text{Chaetodipterus faber}]\) likely migrates elsewhere during cooler months as older (age 2+) mature individuals commonly inhabit artificial and natural reefs in summer but are thought to migrate into deep water during winter (Hayse 1990). Numbers of managed jacks within the area are thought to be low considering it lacks large structures favored by the larger species. As previously stated, modification of the existing disposal site may reduce bycatch mortality of these and other managed species in shrimp trawls. Also, the berm may provide desirable habitat for the snapper-grouper species. For these reasons, the effects on species managed under the Snapper-Grouper Complex are likely to be minimal.

4.7.1.2.4 Coastal Migratory Pelagics

Considering that Coastal Migratory Pelagics occupy the upper water column, these species are not likely to experience more than temporary effects due to increased turbidity during dredged material disposal operations. Structure-oriented species such as cobia \([\text{Rachycentron canadum}]\) and cero \([\text{Scomberomorus regalis}]\) are not likely to find enough structure in the proposed ODMDS modification area for prolonged habitation. However, the berm may provide enough structure to attract these species. King mackerel \([\text{Scomberomorus cavalla}]\), Spanish mackerel \([\text{Scomberomorus maculatus}]\), and little tunny \([\text{Euthynnus alletteratus}]\) may only occasionally inhabit the area. Overall, the effects on Coastal Migratory Pelagics are likely to be minimal.

4.7.1.2.5 Large Coastal Sharks

Juveniles and adults of large coastal sharks are expected to be able to avoid the area during disposal operations, and any effects related to increased turbidity would be temporary. The occurrence of sandbar sharks in the proposed ODMDS modification area is limited to the cooler months. The propensity for bull sharks to inhabit turbid water (river mouths, estuaries) suggests that the species can endure increased turbidity associated with disposal operations. The modification of the dredged material disposal site may help decrease bycatch mortality of neonate and young-of-year life stages because shrimp trawlers are likely to avoid this area. For these reasons, the effects on Large Coastal Sharks are likely to be minimal.
4.7.1.2.6 Small Coastal Sharks

Larger juvenile and adult life stages of small coastal sharks are capable of avoiding the site if conditions prove adverse during disposal events. Conversely, members of this FMP may take advantage of the temporary displacement of benthic invertebrates and actively feed during disposal events. Neonatal and young-of-year life stages are probably uncommon in water depths deeper than about 3 meters (Castro 2011) and are therefore unlikely to occur in the proposed ODMDS modification area. Given that most of these species migrate based on changes in water temperature, these species may only be present in the area on a seasonal basis and are therefore absent during much of the year. For these reasons, the effects on members of the Small Coastal Sharks FMP are likely to be minimal.

4.7.1.2.7 Prohibited Sharks

Juveniles and adults of prohibited sharks are expected to be able to avoid the site during dredged material disposal operations. No effects are expected for the white shark because this species is not common and is not expected to occur within the proposed ODMDS modification area with any regularity. The dusky shark primarily inhabits offshore waters (Bigelow and Schroeder 1948, Bass et al. 1973), although the species is known to visit nearshore waters of the area during cooler months. Therefore, it is not expected to occur regularly within the area. For these reasons, the effects on prohibited sharks are likely to be negligible.

4.7.1.2.8 Billfishes

No effects are expected as the sailfish, an essentially oceanic species (Nakamura 1985), likely occurs in the area only occasionally during sporadic nearshore migrations (Nakamura 1985, Robins and Ray 1986).

4.7.1.2.9 Squid and Butterfish

The proposed ODMDS modification area is farther south than the butterfish’s range of primary abundance as described in Bigelow and Schroeder (1953) and Cross et al. (1999). Overall, the effects to squids and butterfish are likely to be negligible.

4.7.1.2.10 Bluefish

Bluefish may be temporarily impacted by increased turbidity during disposal activities. For this reason, only minimal impacts are expected.

4.7.1.2.11 Summer Flounder

Any summer flounder that occur within the proposed ODMDS modification area would likely continue to find acceptable soft substrate after fine-grained sediment is disposed of at the site. Larger juveniles and adults should be able to move out from under newly placed sediment during disposal events. For these reasons, the effects on summer flounder are expected to be minimal.

4.7.2 NO ACTION ALTERNATIVE

Under the No Action Alternative, the proposed ODMDS modification area would not be designated. However, dredged material will continue to be disposed at the existing Charleston ODMDS until the site reaches capacity. If the ODMDS is not modified and the Charleston Harbor Post 45 project is constructed, the existing ODMDS would likely be utilized to the maximum extent practicable in coordination with the EPA and other resource agencies. It is
possible that a rock berm would not be constructed at the ODMDS because that material could, effectively, go to other areas to support creation of more artificial reefs. Impacts to EFH associated with dredged material disposal at the Charleston ODMDS would be similar to those described for Alternative 1 except that the areal impact would be less since the ODMDS disposal zone would not be expanded. Also, without the berm construction, the additional structural habitat would not be created within the ODMDS so managed species that typically use this type of habitat would not be attracted to the site.

4.7.3 SUMMARY OF EFFECTS
EFH for several species and species groups exists throughout the project area. Effects to the water column, such as increased turbidity, are expected to be temporary. Direct effects of sedimentation are not expected to be substantial due to the mobility of the majority of federally managed species that may occur within the proposed ODMDS modification area and the lack of geographic constraints within the vicinity of the alternative site. Benthic infaunal organisms and sessile organisms that serve as prey or that provide microhabitats to managed species are expected to be affected by disposal activities. Species and species groups preferring soft sediment (e.g., penaeid shrimp) may find the disposal of fine sediment attractive and may even benefit from disposal activities. The modification of the Charleston ODMDS may provide some refuge for epibenthic invertebrates (e.g., penaeid shrimp, brown rock shrimp) and demersal fishes (e.g., black sea bass, rock sea bass, juvenile red snapper) from shrimp trawler activities as disposal sites are avoided by trawlers to prevent net damage. Limited hardbottom resources (1.6 acres) are present within the proposed ODMDS modification area. However, construction of the limestone rock berm would provide approximately 427 acres of structural habitat that may be attractive to managed species that typically use that type of habitat. The berm would provide an increase in hardbottom habitat in the area which may have a positive effect on some managed species.

Overall, effects on EFH and federally managed species in the area are expected to be minimal.

4.8 COASTAL BARRIER RESOURCES

4.8.1 ALTERNATIVE 1
The proposed ODMDS modification area is located in offshore waters approximately 7 nmi from the mainland. Due to the distance from shore, designation of the proposed ODMDS modification area would not affect the Morris Island CBRA unit south of the channel.

4.8.2 NO ACTION ALTERNATIVE
Under the No Action Alternative, the proposed ODMDS modification area would not be designated. The No Action Alternative will have no impact on coastal barrier resources.

4.9 WATER QUALITY
Significance criteria for water quality impacts are based on federal, state, and local water quality criteria and regulations and on the potential for long-term degradation or endangerment to the environment. EPA has established criteria to ensure that disposal of materials do not cause significant undesirable effects (40 CFR 227.6). The potential for significant undesirable effects is based on application of bioassays and compliance with applicable marine water quality criteria after allowance for initial mixing. The Green Book (USEPA and USACE 1991) states that, "If the concentration of dissolved plus suspended contaminants, after allowance for initial mixing, does not exceed 0.01 of the acutely toxic concentration beyond the boundaries of the
disposal site within the first 4 hours after dumping or at any point in the marine environment after the first 4 hours, the dredged material complies with the water-column toxicity criteria.”

4.9.1 ALTERNATIVE 1
Impact-producing factors associated with dredged material disposal at the proposed ODMDS modification area will be similar to those at the existing ODMDS and will depend on the concentrations of constituents released from dredged material and on physical factors such as mixing and dilution rates. Because of the low-level releases, dilution, and the transient nature of water masses, adverse effects to water quality should be local and short-term and should have minimal effect on the region (USEPA 1983). Most organisms are not seriously affected by suspended sediments in the water (Hirsch et al. 1978). The exceptions are those in systems sensitive to water clarity, such as coral reefs (Hirsch et al. 1978). Physical and chemical effects of ocean dredged material disposal on water resources and water quality are discussed below.

4.9.1.1 Physical Effects on Water Quality
There are a number of physical water quality effects resulting from disposal operations. Plumes of suspended sediment associated with sinking dredged materials would result in increases in turbidity levels, suspended particulate concentrations, and decreased light transmittance. High concentrations of suspended solids can reduce light penetration through the water column, which could inhibit phytoplankton productivity or clog respiratory structures of fishes and other organisms. Duration of the turbidity plume formed depends on particle size, currents, and turbulent mixing (Wright 1978). These effects have been extensively researched at ocean disposal sites in the United States. The effects are generally limited to disposal operations and are localized, short-term effects dissipated by natural dispersion, mixing, and eventual sinking of particles (USEPA 2004). NOAA has demonstrated that the suspended material concentrations typically returned to ambient levels in both surface and near-bottom waters in as little as 1 hour (DoN 2004). Similar trends are expected for disposal of the dredged material at the proposed ODMDS modification area.

4.9.1.2 Chemical Effects on Water Quality
If sediment contaminants (e.g., trace metals, hydrocarbons, pesticides, etc.) are present within the plume, they may result in temporary elevated levels in the affected water column. Nutrients are essential for growth and reproduction of phytoplankton, although under certain conditions and at elevated levels, they can promote eutrophication and subsequent depletion of dissolved oxygen. Several trace metals are necessary micronutrients for various life processes of organisms. However, elements such as mercury and cadmium can be toxic and/or and cause sublethal effects when ingested in sufficient quantities by marine organisms.

Chemically reduced inorganic compounds associated with particles sinking through the upper water column may be oxidized, causing a transient increase in the chemical oxygen demand. Oxidation of labile organic material may consequently reduce dissolved oxygen concentrations in the water. However, because the water column is well oxygenated, offsite impacts are not expected and any onsite impacts should be of short duration. Plumes of suspended sediments would result in increases in turbidity and decreases in light transmittance. These effects will be dissipated by natural dispersion, mixing, and eventual sinking of particles.

Mitigating Measures. Short-term water quality (primarily turbidity) impacts during disposal operations are unavoidable. Prior to dredging and using national testing guidance (USEPA and USACE 1991), the dredge material will be tested for the presence of contaminants as well as the potential for toxicity and sublethal effects. Only sediments that are suitable for ocean
disposal will be placed at the site. Screening of the dredge material will ensure that no significant effects to water quality would result from the ocean disposal of the material at the proposed ODMDS modification area.

EPA regulations (40 CFR 227.29) require that water quality modeling be conducted (e.g., the STFATE model) prior to disposal of dredged material to determine if contaminants in the sediment will reach levels exceeding the water quality criteria. The STFATE model of dredged material disposal in open water is used to evaluate dissolved contaminant concentrations in the water column resulting from the disposal of dredged sediment from barges and hopper dredges. The model can determine the potential for water column impacts by comparing predicted dissolved contaminant concentrations, as determined by an elutriate test, with the applicable water quality standards. The results of STFATE simulations are the maximum dissolved concentration of a contaminant within a defined mixing zone over a 4-hour period. This concentration is compared to the water quality standard to determine if the discharge complies with water quality guidelines. All dredged material disposed of at the ODMDS will be in compliance with Section 103 of the MPRSA.

4.9.2 NO ACTION ALTERNATIVE

Under the No Action Alternative, the proposed ODMDS modification area would not be designated. However, dredged material will continue to be disposed at the existing Charleston ODMDS until the site reaches capacity. Impacts to water quality associated with dredged material disposal at the Charleston ODMDS would be similar to those described for Alternative 1. Applicable water quality standards would continue to be met during disposal operations. If ocean dredged material disposal were decreased due to a lack of capacity at the existing ODMDS, impacts to water quality due to disposal operations would be decreased.

4.10 HAZARDOUS, TOXIC, AND RADIOACTIVE WASTE

High-level radioactive wastes are prohibited from ocean disposal (40 CFR 227.5), and low-level radioactive waste disposal requires congressional approval for ocean disposal (33 U.S.C. 1414). Both the proposed ODMDS modification area and the existing Charleston ODMDS would be limited to suitable dredged material disposal only. All dredged material must be evaluated and the results must show that no undesirable effects will occur due to chronic toxicity (40 CFR 227.6). Neither Alternative 1 nor the No Action Alternative will be affected by hazardous, toxic, or radioactive waste.

4.11 AIR QUALITY

An emission inventory is an accounting of the amount of pollutants discharged into the atmosphere. An emission inventory usually contains the total emissions for criteria pollutants, Hazardous Air Toxics (HAPs), and one or more specific greenhouse gases, originating from all source categories in a certain geographical area and within a specified time span. Significance criteria for air quality impacts are based on federal, state, and local air pollution standards and regulations. An impact was considered significant if project emissions are projected to

- Increase ambient pollutant concentrations above the NAAQS, or
- Substantially contribute to an existing or projected air quality standard violation.

4.11.1 ALTERNATIVE 1

There is a potential for short-term impacts to air quality during the Post 45 deepening primarily due to the dredging equipment and the tug engines used in transporting dredged materials to
the proposed ODMDS modification area. However, no significant impacts to regional air quality are expected as a result of the transport and disposal of dredged materials to the modified ODMDS. Air quality impacts at dredging sites associated with the dredge plant during dredging operations were not assessed in this EA because they were assessed on a project-specific basis (e.g., Post 45). Emissions from the tug vessels and hopper dredges include particulate matter, nitrogen oxides, sulfur dioxide, carbon monoxide, and volatile organic carbons. Impacts to air quality as a result of the proposed action will be minor and temporary.

An emission inventory was prepared for the Post 45 FR/EIS and is included in Appendix N of that document. The study concluded that since the proposed harbor deepening is not expected to increase the number of vessels or total cargo moving through the port, no decrease in air quality would occur as a result of the project. Increases in air emissions at the port are expected over time as a result of growth in demand for goods that move through the port. With or without the deepening of the harbor, these increases in air emissions at the port will increase as the demand for waterborne commerce also increases. Those increases would be independent of a harbor deepening project and may be reduced by future advances in technology, changes in fuel use, regulatory requirements, and other advancements that may lower emission rates.

4.11.2 NO ACTION ALTERNATIVE
Since the existing ODMDS will continue to be used until it reaches capacity, the No Action Alternative is expected to have temporary impacts on air quality during disposal operations similar to those described for Alternative 1. However, the frequency and length of disposal operations would be less if the Post 45 deepening project does not occur because disposal operations would only occur during maintenance dredging. If dredging and disposal of dredged material offshore were decreased due to limited ODMDS capacity, impacts to air quality related transport of dredged material to the ODMDS could potentially be decreased over time. However, because maintenance dredging would continue and dredged material would need to be disposed in upland areas; the air emissions related to upland disposal would likely increase.

4.12 NOISE
4.12.1 ALTERNATIVE 1
The noise impacts associated with dredging and disposal are covered under specific dredging actions (e.g., Post 45 study, SARBO). There would be no additional noise impacts associated with the proposed action.

4.12.2 NO ACTION ALTERNATIVE
Since the existing ODMDS will continue to be used until it reaches capacity, the No Action Alternative is expected to have temporary impacts on noise levels during disposal operations.

4.13 RECREATION RESOURCES
4.13.1 ALTERNATIVE 1
The coastal waters off Charleston are used for a variety of recreational activities including sailing, boating, fishing, and SCUBA diving. Designation of the proposed ODMDS modification area would not change the aesthetic resources of Charleston Harbor or negatively affect the numerous recreational opportunities. Few of these activities occur in, and none are restricted to, the proposed ODMDS modification area. The proposed site is located outside of primary recreational fishing areas. Most recreational fishing and sport diving activities are associated
with the natural and artificial reefs, and any recreational fishing that does occur in the vicinity of
the proposed ODMDS modification area may be disturbed temporarily as a result of disposal
operations. Any adverse impacts to recreational fishing and diving activities are expected to be
minimal and of short duration. Adverse effects on local beaches are not expected because of
prevailing currents and distance from shore, and no impacts to local beaches have been
reported during past disposal activities. Because water sports and diving activities occur
nearshore or at natural and artificial reefs sites, they would not be adversely affected by
disposal at the proposed ODMDS modification area. The infrequent and short durations of
disposal operations are not expected to result in significant adverse impacts to recreation
resources.

A benefit of the project may be from the creation of the limestone rock berm around the
ODMDS. This berm will likely serve as valuable structure to a variety of recreationally and
commercially important finfish.

4.13.2 NO ACTION ALTERNATIVE
Under the No Action Alternative, the proposed ODMDS modification area would not be
designated. However, dredged material will continue to be disposed at the existing Charleston
ODMDS until the site reaches capacity. Impacts to recreation resources associated with
dredged material disposal at the Charleston ODMDS would be similar to those described for
Alternative 1, but the areal impact would be less. Under the No Action Alternative, it is
reasonable to assume that the use of the site will be fully optimized and that might not involve a
separate rock berm around the perimeter. Therefore, the No Action Alternative could result in
fewer environmental benefits than the proposed action.

4.14 NAVIGATION AND PUBLIC SAFETY
4.14.1 ALTERNATIVE 1
The disposal of dredged material within the proposed ODMDS modification area could present
two potential problems to navigation:

1. Mounding of sediments within the disposal site and
2. Interference of the hopper dredge or tugboat and barge with commercial shipping traffic
during transit to and from the disposal site.

The proposed ODMDS modification area lies south of the entrance channel and is not located in
any restricted-passage areas, precautionary zones, or anchorages. Neither the transit nor the
discharge phases of dredged material disposal should interfere with commercial shipping,
navigation, or public safety. Adequate public notice to mariners will be issued by the U.S. Coast
Guard in advance of disposal events. Changes in bathymetry due to mounding within the site
will not present a hazard to navigation. Furthermore, because the ultimate purpose of dredging
operations is to provide adequate water depths and access to vessel traffic for channels and
berths within Charleston Harbor, the proposed action of providing a long-term ocean disposal
site could be considered a benefit to navigation, commercial shipping, and public safety.

The proposed ODMDS modification area is unlikely to impact navigation or public safety.
MPFATE and LTFATE modeling of dredged material at the Alternative 1 site over a period of
25 years demonstrated that material would not accumulate to an elevation less than -25 feet
MLLW (Figure 2-2 [USACE 2015, Appendix D]). Previous dredged material disposal at the
Charleston ODMDS has had no detectable impact on navigation, public health, or safety.
4.14.2  NO ACTION ALTERNATIVE

Under the No Action Alternative, the proposed ODMDS modification area would not be designated. However, dredged material will continue to be disposed at the existing Charleston ODMDS until the site reaches capacity. Impacts to navigation and public safety associated with dredged material disposal at the Charleston ODMDS would be similar to those described for Alternative 1.

4.15  HISTORIC AND CULTURAL RESOURCES

4.15.1  ALTERNATIVE 1

Between October 2012 and January 2013, a remote sensing survey, with limited ground-truthing through video acquisition, was conducted within and 50 m outside the proposed ODMDS modification area to identify any cultural resources present in the study area. Magnetic and sidescan sonar data were evaluated to identify anomalies consistent with cultural resources in accordance with provisions of Section 106 of the NHPA and the Abandoned Shipwreck Act of 1987.

Forty anomalies were identified within the survey area. Magnetic anomaly maps were constructed and targets were evaluated and found to be largely consistent with cables, pipe, debris, posts, and derelict crab pots (Gayes et al. 2013). These anomalies are emblematic of the modern industrial use of the area rather than its historic past; therefore, none of the anomalies were recommended for further evaluation. Based on these results, no properties listed in or eligible for listing in the National Register of Historic Places will be affected by this project. SC Department of Archives and History concurred with this determination on January 6, 2016.

4.15.2  NO ACTION ALTERNATIVE

There are no adverse effects to submerged historic properties under the No Action Alternative.

4.16  ENERGY REQUIREMENTS AND CONSERVATION

The energy requirements for this activity are limited to fuel for transportation of the dredged material to the disposal site. As the proposed ODMDS modification area is an expansion of the existing ODMDS, the selection of either Alternative 1 or the No Action Alternative would essentially require the same amount of energy because dredged material would continue to be disposed of at the existing Charleston ODMDS until it reaches capacity.

4.17  NATURAL OR DEPLETABLE RESOURCES

The depletable resources would be the fuel for the transportation of the dredged material to the disposal site. As the proposed ODMDS modification area is an expansion of the existing ODMDS, the selection of either Alternative 1 or the No Action Alternative would essentially require the same amount of natural or depletable resources because dredged material would continue to be disposed of at the existing Charleston ODMDS until it reaches capacity.

4.18  CUMULATIVE IMPACTS

NEPA, as implemented by Council on Environmental Quality (CEQ) regulations (40 CFR §§ 1500-1508), requires federal agencies, including USACE, to consider cumulative impacts in rendering a decision on a federal action under its jurisdiction. This section discusses potential impacts resulting from other activities that in combination with potential impacts from the
proposed action may contribute to cumulative impacts in the proposed project impact zone. Cumulative effects are defined as

The impact on the environment which results from the incremental impact of the action when added to other past, present, and reasonably foreseeable future actions regardless of what agency (federal or non-federal) or person undertakes such other actions; cumulative impacts can result from individually minor but collectively significant actions taking place over a period of time.

Cumulative effects include, but are broader than, the direct and indirect effects described in other sections of the EA. According to 40 CFR 1508.8, “direct effects” are caused by the action and occur at the same time and place, while “indirect effects” are caused by the action and are later in time or farther removed in distance but are still reasonably foreseeable. A cumulative impact analysis identifies and defines the scope of other actions and their interrelationship with the proposed action if there is an overlap in space and time. Cumulative impacts are most likely to occur when there is an overlapping geographic location and a coincident or sequential timing of events. Because the environmental analysis required under NEPA is forward-looking, the aggregate effect of past actions is analyzed to the extent relevant and useful in determining whether the reasonably foreseeable effects of a proposed action may have a continuing, additive, and significant relationship to those effects.

Section 4.18.1 discusses potential cumulative impacts associated with the proposed action (i.e., modification of the Charleston ODMDS) in the context of similar and unrelated activities occurring in the region of interest, which include ocean disposal of dredged material at existing sites, sand borrow areas, military activities, commercial and recreational fishing, BOEM’s oil and gas development, and vessel operation. Section 4.18.2 discusses potential cumulative impacts associated with the proposed action in the context of physical, chemical, and biological resources.

Under the No Action Alternative, a modified ODMDS would not be designated offshore of Charleston, and therefore conditions within the proposed ODMDS modification area would not change. However, if a modified ODMDS is not designated, the planned volume of material to be dredged from the region would still need to be managed. Once the existing Charleston ODMDS reaches capacity, dredged material could potentially be disposed of at the existing upland facilities. If upland capacity becomes limited as well, maintenance and new work dredging may be decreased due to lack of disposal options and could impact navigation and commerce in the area.

4.18.1 PAST, PRESENT, REASONABLY FORESEEABLE PROJECTS/ACTIVITIES

Table 4.18-1 summarizes the current and proposed projects and activities that may contribute to cumulative impacts within the project area. While Table 4.18-1 may not include an exhaustive list of projects that may contribute to regional cumulative impacts, the analysis of the cumulative impact of these projects are representative of the effects that could arise from any other similar existing or future projects that have not yet been identified. These projects and activities and their potential cumulative effects are discussed in more detail in this section. The potential impacts associated with these projects that are most likely to be cumulatively significant are related to sediment quality, benthic resources, threatened and endangered species, and socioeconomics. A detailed description of potential cumulative impacts by resource category is presented in Section 4.6.2.
Table 4.18-1. Past, Present, and Reasonably Foreseeable Projects/Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Project/Activity</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Region of Impact</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Activities</td>
<td>The general area has been used for dredged material disposal. The Charleston ODMDS is one of the most active, frequently used dredged material disposal sites in the South Atlantic Bight.</td>
<td>Primarily confined within site boundaries, although some impacts adjacent to the site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charleston Harbor Post 45 Deepening Project</td>
<td>Involves proposed deepening of the federal navigation channel and creating approximately 40 mcy of dredged material, of which, 29 mcy are expected to be placed at the ODMDS.</td>
<td>Charleston Harbor and ODMDS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sand Borrow Areas</td>
<td>Dredging of sand for local beach nourishment projects.</td>
<td>Confined within borrow area site boundaries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCSPA/BOEM Lease Area</td>
<td>SCSPA and BOEM have a lease agreement for the potential excavation of up to 6 mcy from the current dump zone.</td>
<td>Confined within the dump zone boundaries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other Activities</td>
<td>Other activities include but are not limited to military activities, subsea cables, recreational and commercial fishing, beach nourishment, wind energy, SCPA removal of material from the ODMDS, and BOEM’s oil and gas exploration.</td>
<td>Offshore area between the coastline and the ODMDS.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.18.1.1 Ocean Dredged Material Disposal

The Charleston ODMDS is one of the most active, frequently used sites in the South Atlantic Bight. The history of the site configuration is described in Section 1.1. Ongoing and historical dredged material discharges that have occurred within the Charleston ODMDS are described in detail in Section 1.3. Since 1987, approximately 40 mcy of dredged material have been discharged at the Charleston ODMDS. Between 1994 and 2014, approximately 1 mcy of dredged material were disposed of annually at the Charleston ODMDS (Table 1.3-1).

Cumulative effects as a result of reconfiguring the ODMDS and increasing the size of the existing disposal zone by 4.4 nm² is not expected to be significant because the site is still small relative to the size of the entire area. As discussed in this chapter, impacts to the physical, biological, and socioeconomic resources are expected to be limited to the area within the boundaries of the site (e.g., impacts to benthic communities, changes in bathymetry, changes in sediment composition) or to be temporary in nature during disposal operations (e.g., increases in turbidity, air emissions, risk of vessel collisions with marine mammals and sea turtles).

The modified ODMDS would be monitored to help minimize cumulative impacts related to disposal of dredged material at the site. Details of the monitoring and management plan are provided in the SMMP (Appendix C). Existing pollution controls in combination with sediment testing should help minimize cumulative effects related to contaminants in the sediments.

4.18.1.2 Charleston Harbor Deepening

The proposed Charleston Harbor Deepening Project will result in a significant increase in new work and maintenance dredged material that would require disposal either upland or offshore. As discussed in Section 2.2.4 (Alternative 5), it is important to maintain capacity at upland CDFs; therefore, a portion of dredged material generated from this project that is not used for
beneficial purposes (shoreline protection, bird habitat enhancement, construction material, artificial reefs, berms, etc.) will likely be disposed of offshore at the Charleston ODMDS. New work material being placed at the ODMDS is estimated at 31.2 mcy (see Table 1.3-3). Annual volumes of maintenance material are expected to increase to approximately 1.4 mcy. This increase in disposal volumes compared to historical volumes could potentially result in cumulative impacts within the site primarily related to long term management of the site.

The deepening project is expected to take several years, and the volume of dredged material being disposed of during the deepening project would exceed normal annual maintenance volumes. This increase in frequency and volume of dredged material over a relatively short period of time would increase impacts to resources within the site. For example, the benthic resources, which have some ability to burrow up through the disposal layer, would not have as much time to recover due to the long duration of dredging and disposal operations.

During the deepening project itself, there will be an increase in vessel traffic to the ODMDS to dispose of dredged material. The deepening of Charleston Harbor is not predicted to result in a long-term increase in maritime traffic related to expanded port and terminal facilities. An increase in vessel traffic will occur with or without the deepening project; however, the increase in the number of vessels will be less with the project than without it.

4.18.1.3 Sand Borrow Areas
USACE Charleston District recently constructed a beach renourishment project to help provide protection against storm damage to Folly Beach. Approximately 1.5 mcy of sand was placed along the coast to renourish approximately 5 miles of beach (USACE 2014a). The beach renourishment was conducted as part of a 50-year agreement with the City of Folly Beach and is the first periodic renourishment since 2005. Sand borrow areas used for this project are located approximately 3 nmi southwest of the Charleston ODMDS and encompass approximately 744 acres (Figure 2-1). A detailed analysis of beneficial use for the Post 45 deepening project will be conducted during the PED phase of the project. However, preliminary geotechnical results indicate that beach quality material (>90% sands) is not found within new material (see Appendix B of the FR/EIS).

A study was conducted to assess pre- and post-mining effects on benthic assemblages and sediment composition at an existing sand borrow area off the coast of Jacksonville, Florida (Lotspeich and Associates 1997). Results from this study indicate a change in the composition of the borrow area benthic community following dredging, as compared to nearby control stations. Gastropods disappeared, bivalves and annelid worms declined, and crustaceans increased. Species richness and abundance at both dredged and control stations declined dramatically after dredging. Two years after dredging, species richness and abundance had returned to pre-dredging levels and there were no observable differences in substratum conditions. The decline of borrow area and control station invertebrate populations following dredging was attributed to a series of hurricanes crossing the area during 1996, making identification of dredging effects on benthic communities difficult to determine.

Given that the ODMDS and the sand borrow areas are approximately 3 nmi apart, the potential for cumulative effects on benthic communities related to dredged material disposal and dredging of sand are expected to be minimal. The proximity of ODMDS and sand borrow areas to undisturbed, non-impacted areas increases the ability of benthic infauna to recolonize disturbed areas.
Although predominant net transport is generally from NE to SW, the sand borrow areas are 3 nmi away from the ODMDS. LTFATE and MPFATE modeling results over a 25-year period indicate depths of sediment deposited outside the boundaries of the ODMDS will not exceed the 5 cm deposition contour guidance provided by EPA (USACE 2015). Therefore, disposal of material within the proposed ODMDS modification area is not expected to impact the sand borrow areas.

4.18.1.4 Other Activities
The potential for cumulative impacts from other activities in the project area include:

- Oil and gas development
- Renewable energy development
- Commercial and recreational fishing
- Military range complexes and civilian space program use
- Shipping and marine transportation
- New cable infrastructure
- Mining material from the ODMDS for fill

Some of these types of activities have occurred in the past and present and will continue into the foreseeable future. Others (e.g., oil and gas development, renewable energy, mining material from the ODMDS) may occur in the future. Impacts from these activities are expected to continue to some extent with or without the proposed action. The impacts associated with commercial and recreational fishing, shipping traffic, oil and gas development, and military activities may include vessel strikes with marine mammals or sea turtles. However, adherence to vessel strike and avoidance procedures will minimize the effects of these activities. The installation of undersea cables may temporarily impact bottom sediments and benthic habitat, but those impacts should cease once the cable is installed. Additional impacts caused by other activities include gear entanglement, bycatch mortality, pollution, and noise.

Oil and gas exploration in the South Atlantic Bight indicates that the middle and outer continental shelf may contain sufficient quantities of oil and gas for exploitation (BOEM 2014). The proposed ODMDS modification area lies within the South Atlantic Planning Area, which is slated for potential seismic studies with no leasing before 2017. These activities could potentially lead to offshore oil and gas platforms and pipelines and offshore infrastructure for renewable energy such as wind, solar, and marine hydrokinetic energy and associated transmission cables.

As it relates to dredged material disposal within the proposed ODMDS modification area, the following potential environmental impacts associated with oil, gas, and renewable energy activities could lead to cumulative impacts if they occur in close proximity to the ODMDS:

- Increased underwater noise impacts on marine mammals, sea turtles, fishes, birds, commercial and recreational fishing (fish catch); and other marine life;
- Increased impacts of vessel traffic (risk of ship strikes) on marine mammals and sea turtles, birds, and threatened and endangered fish species;
- Increased impacts of vessel traffic on fishing, shipping, and other marine uses;
- Increased impacts of seafloor-disturbing activities on sensitive benthic communities including coral and hard/live bottom communities, EFH, HAPC, and MPAs;
- Increased impacts of vessel exclusion zones on commercial and recreational fishing, shipping, recreational resources, and other marine uses;
• Increased impacts of accidental spills on benthic communities, marine mammals, sea turtles, birds, fishes and EFH, archaeological resources, recreational resources, MPAs, other marine uses.

In the short-term, the location of the proposed ODMDS modification area is not expected to affect oil, gas, and renewable energy development since no leasing is slated before 2017. However, if these activities do occur within the project area, EPA and USACE have no authority to prevent multi-use of the ODMDS for these other purposes, and they are supposed to minimize interference with these activities. Oil, gas, and renewable energy activities could potentially be incompatible with the disposal activities that would be occurring within the ODMDS. If oil or gas drilling were to take place within or in close proximity to the ODMDS, these activities could impede or prohibit disposal operations.

4.18.2 CUMULATIVE IMPACT ANALYSIS

4.18.2.1 Air Quality

The designation of a modified ODMDS is not expected to have a cumulative impact on regional air quality or sensitive receptor populations. However, the proposed Charleston Harbor Post 45 Deepening Project is closely linked to this proposed action and may result in temporary increased air emissions at the disposal site during construction due to increases in disposal activities. Following construction, the shift in vessel traffic will likely result in fewer ships (albeit larger ones) making calls to the port, which, in combination with more efficient fuels, may decrease air pollution from the vessels (USACE 2014a).

4.18.2.2 Water Quality

Any cumulative effects associated with the proposed action are expected to be insignificant because, as discussed in Section 4.1.3, water column chemistry results from previous sampling at the Charleston ODMDS has shown little to no impact due to dredged material disposal. Consequently, the best available information indicates that the designation of the proposed ODMDS modification area is not anticipated to have a significant direct or indirect impact upon water quality in either the area of the proposed ODMDS or the area transited by barge or hopper dredges during transport of the dredged material.

Impacts to water quality from the disposal of dredged material are expected to be short in duration and limited to the immediate vicinity of the proposed ODMDS. Dredged material is expected to be comprised of fine- to medium-grained sediments containing silt, shell, and limestone fragments. Anticipated impacts are those associated with sediment plumes generated from the disposal of fine- to medium-grained sand and silt from the disposal vessel and possible subsequent re-suspension of fine-grained material in the ODMDS each time a barge load is disposed of. The greatest potential for cumulative water quality impacts is represented by the disposal of dredged material generated by the harbor deepening project due to the anticipated duration and intensity of disposal.

Regulations require the dredged material to be disposed of such that all suspended and dissolved portions after dilution meet all applicable water quality criteria [40 CFR 227.13(c)(2)(i)] and do not cause any adverse biological effects [40 CFR 227.27(b)]. The goal of these requirements is to eliminate any adverse effects associated with individual contaminants or any synergistic effects of multiple contaminants present in the dredged material. Consequently, with these described safeguards, the proposed action is not expected to contribute significantly to the cumulative impacts of regional activities on water quality.
Other reasonably foreseeable actions that have a potential to impact water quality include:

- Hurricanes and other storm events
- Seasonal fluctuations from Charleston Harbor
- Seasonal and diurnal fluctuations in tidal currents
- Potential sea-level rise and other climate-change related impacts
- Dredged material disposal associated with other unforeseen projects
- Vessel-associated pollutant releases

### 4.18.2.3 Sediment Quality

Cumulative effects of dredged material disposal on sediment quality are possible. Historical information from the Charleston ODMDS monitoring and previous 103 sediment evaluations of material placed at the site indicates no significant increase in contaminants within and outside of the site. Verification that significant impacts do not occur outside the ODMDS boundaries will be demonstrated through implementation of the site-specific SMMP developed as part of the proposed action (Appendix C). The SMMP includes physical monitoring to confirm that the material deposited is landing where it is supposed to land as well as monitoring to confirm that the deposited sediment quality appears consistent with results of pre-disposal testing. Because resources are limited, monitoring programs are designed to be flexible, cost-effective, and based on scientifically sound procedures and methods to meet site-specific monitoring needs. After each disposal event, the site will be monitored according to the SMMP (Appendix C). Results of the monitoring are compiled and discussed in status and trends reports that are published by EPA.

### 4.18.2.4 Benthic Fauna

The abundance, species richness, and diversity of the benthic community within the disposal area may recover to background levels relatively rapidly after a disposal event; however, attaining pre-disposal species composition may take longer (Section 4.2.6). In terms of cumulative impacts, if disposal events occur multiple times in the same area over a relatively short period (e.g., annually), recovery of the impacted area will be prolonged.

Slow-moving and burrowing animals inhabiting the site would most likely experience a reduction in density due to sediment disposal. However, some species that are adapted to sedimentation due to natural events such as storms should be able to burrow up through the deposited sediment, depending on the depth of the newly deposited layer. It is anticipated that more motile epifaunal species may be able to avoid the area during the disposal event. Motile epifauna generally are migratory and are not restricted to the disposal site.

The SMMP discusses how the dredged material will be managed within the site and how monitoring activities will be conducted to help minimize and detect potential cumulative impacts (Appendix C). Management of dredged material placement is expected to minimize impacts to benthic resources by allowing for recolonization.

### 4.18.2.5 Fish and Essential Fish Habitat

In terms of cumulative impacts, recovery of the impacted area will be prolonged if disposal events occur multiple times in the same area over a relatively short period (e.g., annually). Disposal operations could adversely affect soft-bottom demersal fishes through burial or reduction of their invertebrate forage base. However, given the planktonic dispersal strategies of most fishes and the relatively high mobility of adult fishes, recolonization of the disposal site should occur following each disposal event. This recolonization should occur relatively rapidly.
because the species assemblage outside the disposal site is similar, offering a proximate source of adults and young recruits. Cumulative impacts to reef fishes are of minor concern due to the paucity of hardbottom found near the proposed ODMDS modification area. Impacts to pelagic fish species are also negligible given their high mobility and limited reliance on substrate type and benthic invertebrate prey.

4.18.2.6 Bioaccumulation

Bioaccumulation is defined as the uptake and retention of contaminants into tissues of organisms from all possible external sources. While bioaccumulation of a contaminant by an organism may or may not result in detrimental impacts to that organism, it can be an indicator that the population, similar organisms, and higher-trophic-level organisms that prey on the contaminated organisms may be potentially at risk of adverse impacts. The placement of dredged material at a disposal site over a long period of time can alter the conditions controlling bioaccumulation, resulting in a localized change in the rate of uptake and possible risks of associated adverse health effects. Evaluation and management of dredged material is designed to minimize such effects. Sediments found to pose a potential for unacceptable adverse effects due to bioaccumulation are not accepted for offshore disposal. Through the use of these risk-based evaluations, it is expected that tissue concentrations (and subsequent risks) would not change significantly as a result of the placement of dredged material over time.

4.18.2.7 Conclusion

Modification of the Charleston ODMDS is not expected to result in significant cumulative impacts, although long-term use of the site will result in topographic change, changes in sediment composition, burial of organisms in the disposal area, changes in the benthic community, and potential changes to the local food web. Such changes have been ongoing at the existing site for decades. The evaluation conducted in this EA did not find evidence that any of these changes resulted in significant unacceptable adverse impacts to the region’s resources. As discussed in SMMP, short-term temporary impacts may be minimized or mitigated through management methods. If significant effects are documented at the site during monitoring, actions will be taken to address those impacts.

The SMMP provides a summary of the monitoring strategies for the ODMDS and thresholds for management actions (Appendix C). The ODMDS will be monitored for transport of material outside the boundaries of the site. Additionally, any habitat resulting from the berm creation will be monitored to assess its functional benefit.

Should future disposal at the ODMDS result in unacceptable adverse impacts documented in trend assessment surveys, further studies may be required to determine the persistence of these impacts, their extent within the marine system, and/or possible means of mitigation. The SMMP may require revision based on the outcome of any monitoring program.

4.19 IRREVERSIBLE AND IRRETRIEVABLE COMMITMENT OF RESOURCES

NEPA (42 U.S.C. § 4332 Section 102(2)(C)(v) as implemented by CEQ regulation 40 CFR 1502.16) requires an analysis of significant, irreversible effects resulting from implementation of a proposed action. An irreversible commitment of resources is one in which the ability to use and/or enjoy the resource is lost forever. An irretrievable commitment of resources is one in which, due to decisions to manage the resource for another purpose, opportunities to use or enjoy the resources as they presently exist are lost for a period of time. The commitment of
resources refers primarily to the use of nonrenewable resources such as fossil fuels, water, labor, and electricity.

Designation of a modified ODMDS indirectly requires:

- An irreversible commitment of energy and resources used to dredge, transport, and dispose of material at the site;
- An irreversible commitment related to economic costs associated with ODMDS monitoring activities;
- An irreversible commitment related to human labor resources associated with these dredging and disposal operations.

Energy (electricity and natural gas) and water consumption, as well as demand for services, would not increase significantly as a result of implementation of the proposed action. The commitment of these resources is undertaken in a regular and authorized manner and does not present significant impacts within this EA.

4.20 UNAVOIDABLE ADVERSE ENVIRONMENTAL EFFECTS

Unavoidable effects within the proposed ODMDS modification area include changes in bathymetry and sediment texture, temporary turbidity plumes during disposal operations, and changes in benthic community composition. Results of bioassay and bioaccumulation testing suggest that dredged sediments from Charleston Harbor meet biological testing criteria for ocean disposal (ANAMAR 2013). Periodic monitoring of dredged sediments will ensure that future dumping will not be toxic to marine organisms.

4.21 ENVIRONMENTAL COMMITMENTS

USACE and EPA have made the following commitments consistent with the SMMP (Appendix C):

- Ocean disposal of dredged material will meet the standards set forth in MPRSA regulations and other federal guidance documents; and
- The modified ODMDS will undergo environmental monitoring.

Refer to the SMMP in Appendix C for additional information.

4.22 COMPLIANCE WITH ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

An international treaty and several laws, regulations, and executive orders apply to the ocean disposal of dredged material and to the designation or modification of an ODMDS. The relevance of these statutes to the proposed action and to related compliance requirements is described in this section. Table 4.22-1 at the end of this section summarizes the level of compliance of the proposed ODMDS modification with relevant federal, state, and local environmental statutes.

4.22.1 NATIONAL ENVIRONMENTAL POLICY OF 1969 (NEPA)

NEPA, as amended, requires that an EIS or EA be prepared for major federal actions that may significantly affect the quality of the human environment. This Final EA fulfills the NEPA requirements of two federal agencies. First, this EA carries out EPA’s policy to prepare voluntary NEPA documents (30 FR 16186 [May 7, 1984]) as part of the designation process of an ODMDS under Section 102 of the MPRSA. Second, it satisfies USACE’s need for NEPA
4.22.2 ENDANGERED SPECIES ACT OF 1973
The ESA protects threatened and endangered species by prohibiting federal actions that would jeopardize the continued existence of such species or that would result in the destruction or adverse modification of any critical habitat of such species. ESA Section 7 (Interagency Cooperation) requires that consultation regarding conservation of such species be conducted with USFWS and/or NMFS prior to project implementation. During the site designation process, USFWS and NMFS evaluate potential impacts of ocean disposal at the ODMDS on threatened and endangered species and associated critical habitat. These agencies are asked to certify or concur with the sponsoring agency’s findings that the proposed activity will have no effect or will not adversely affect endangered or threatened species. Documentation of all pertinent correspondence and formal responses is included in Appendix A.

4.22.3 FISH AND WILDLIFE COORDINATION ACT OF 1958
The Fish and Wildlife Coordination Act requires that water resource development programs consider wildlife conservation. Whenever any body of water is proposed or authorized to be impounded, diverted, or otherwise controlled or modified, USFWS and the state agency responsible for fish and wildlife must be consulted. Section 662(b) of the act requires federal agencies to consider recommendations based on USFWS investigations. The recommendations may address wildlife conservation and development, damage to wildlife attributable to the project, and measures proposed for mitigating or compensating for such damages.

4.22.4 NATIONAL HISTORIC PRESERVATION ACT OF 1966 (INTER ALIA)
The purpose of the National Historic Preservation Act (NHPA) is to preserve and protect historic and prehistoric resources that may be damaged, destroyed, or made less available by a project or action. Under this act, federal agencies are required to identify cultural or historical resources that may be affected by a proposed action and to coordinate project activities with the State Historic Preservation Officer (SHPO). EPA and USACE have coordinated the proposed ODMDS modification with the SHPO.

4.22.5 CLEAN WATER ACT OF 1972
The CWA was passed to restore and maintain the chemical, physical, and biological integrity of the nation’s waters. Specific sections of the CWA control the discharge of pollutants and wastes into aquatic and marine environments. Section 404 of the CWA establishes a program to regulate the discharge of dredge and fill material into navigable waters of the United States. The CWA and MPRSA overlap for discharges to the territorial sea (3 nmi from the baseline as defined by the CWA). The CWA supersedes the MPRSA if dredged material is placed in the ocean for beach restoration or other beneficial use. The MPRSA supersedes the CWA if dredged material is transported and disposed of in the territorial sea. In this case, the proposed action area is located in the territorial sea; therefore, the MPRSA regulations are followed.

4.22.6 CLEAN AIR ACT OF 1972
The Clean Air Act (CAA) is intended to protect the nation’s air quality by regulating emissions of air pollutants. The CAA is applicable to permits and planning procedures related to dredged material disposal onshore and within the territorial sea. The territorial sea is defined as waters 3 miles seaward of the nearest shoreline. The proposed action (modification of the Charleston
Final Environmental Assessment for Modification of the Charleston ODMDS

ODMDS (Offshore Disposal Medium-Depth Site) does not permit the actual disposal of dredged material. Although the ODMDS will not be located within the territorial sea, the CAA is still applicable to the proposed action because vessels used to transport material to the ODMDS will transit through the area designated as territorial sea. Subsequent projects that would generate material to be disposed of within the proposed ODMDS modification area would be subject to further individual environmental review. An emission inventory was prepared for the Post 45 FR/EIS and is included in Appendix N of that document. The study concluded that since the proposed Post 45 harbor deepening is not expected to increase the number of vessels or total cargo moving through the port, no decrease in air quality would occur as a result of the project.

4.22.7 COASTAL ZONE MANAGEMENT ACT OF 1972
Under the CZMA, any federal agency conducting or supporting activities directly affecting the coastal zone must proceed in a manner consistent with approved state coastal zone management programs to the maximum extent practicable. If a proposed activity affects water use in the coastal zone (i.e., the territorial sea and inland), the applicant may need to demonstrate compliance with a state's approved CZMA program. The State consistency review was performed during the coordination of the draft EA. The State's final consistency determination is included in the final EA. Appendix E includes a copy of the Coastal Zone Management Program Federal Consistency Evaluation summary.

4.22.8 MARINE MAMMAL PROTECTION ACT OF 1972
All marine mammals are protected under the MMPA, which prohibits, with certain exceptions, the “take” of marine mammals in U.S. waters and by U.S. citizens on the high seas and the importation of marine mammals and marine mammal products into the United States. USACE and USEPA do not anticipate the take of any marine mammal during any activities associated with the ODMDS designation. Utilization of the site is typically covered under individual actions (e.g., Post 45, SARBO, regulatory actions) and protective measures for marine mammals would be implemented consistent with those consultations.

4.22.9 ESTUARY PROTECTION ACT OF 1968
No designated estuary would be affected by the proposed action. This act is not applicable.

4.22.10 SUBMERGED LANDS ACT OF 1953
The proposed action would occur on submerged land off the coast of South Carolina. The project will be coordinated with the State and will be in compliance with this act.

4.22.11 COASTAL BARRIER RESOURCES ACT AND COASTAL BARRIER IMPROVEMENT ACT OF 1990
To remove the federal incentive to develop coastal barrier areas, Congress passed the CBRA which designated relatively undeveloped coastal barriers along the Atlantic and Gulf coasts as part of the John H. Chafee Coastal Barrier Resources System, and made these areas ineligible for most new federal expenditures and financial assistance.

There are no designated coastal barrier resources in the project area that would be affected by the proposed action.

4.22.12 RIVERS AND HARBORS ACT OF 1899
The Rivers and Harbors Act focuses on protecting navigation and protecting waters from pollution and acted as a precursor to the CWA. Section 10 prohibits obstructions that hinder
navigable capacity of any waters without the approval of Congress. Section 13 states that it is unlawful to discharge, deposit, or throw substances from shore or floating craft into a tributary or navigable water. The proposed action is in compliance with this act.

4.22.13 ANADROMOUS FISH CONSERVATION ACT

The Anadromous Fish Conservation Act of 1965 authorizes the Secretary of the Interior and the Secretary of Commerce to enter into cooperative agreements with states and other non-federal interests for conservation, development, and enhancement of anadromous fishes, including those in the Great Lakes, and to contribute up to 50% of the federal share of the cost of carrying out such agreements.

4.22.14 MARINE PROTECTION, RESEARCH, AND SANCTUARIES ACT

The MPRSA regulates the transportation and ultimate disposal of material in the ocean, prohibits ocean disposal of certain wastes without a permit, and prohibits the disposal of certain materials entirely. Prohibited materials include those that contain radiological, chemical, or biological warfare agents; high-level radiological wastes; and industrial waste. The MPRSA has jurisdiction over all U.S. ocean waters in and beyond the territorial sea (12 nmi from the baseline), vessels flying the U.S. flag, and all vessels leaving U.S. ports.

Section 102 of the MPRSA authorizes EPA to promulgate environmental criteria for evaluation of all disposal permit actions, to retain review authority over USACE MPRSA Section 103 permits, and to designate ocean disposal sites for dredged material disposal. Additionally, as provided in Section 102(c) of the MPRSA:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{After January 1, 1995, no site [ODMDS] shall receive a final designation unless a management plan has been developed pursuant to this section. Beginning on January 1, 1997, no permit for dumping pursuant to this Act or authorization for dumping under section 103(e) of this Act shall be issued for a site unless such site has received a final designation pursuant to this subsection or an alternative site has been selected pursuant to section 103(b).}
\end{align*}
\]

EPA’s regulations for ocean disposal are published in 40 CFR Parts 220 through 229. As described in 40 CFR 228(e)(1), designation of an ocean disposal site is to be based on environmental studies of the proposed site, regions adjacent to the proposed site, and historical knowledge of the impact of dredged material disposal on areas similar to the proposed site. Impacts to be considered include those on the physical, chemical, biological, socioeconomic, and cultural characteristics of the site. All studies and evaluations prepared for the proposed site must be conducted in accordance with the general and specific site selection criteria specified in 40 CFR § 228.5 and 40 CFR § 228.6, respectively. Considerations addressed by these site selection criteria include physical location, prior use, currents, feasibility of surveillance and monitoring, and proximity to sensitive resources.

Under the authority of Section 103 of the MPRSA, USACE may issue ocean disposal permits for dredged material if EPA concurs with the decision. If EPA does not agree with a USACE permit decision, a waiver process under Section 103 allows further action to be taken. The permitting regulations promulgated by USACE, under the MPRSA, appear in 33 CFR Parts 320 through 330 and 335 through 338. EPA and USACE must prohibit or restrict disposal of material that does not meet the regulatory criteria specified in 40 CFR Part 227. An equivalent process is used for USACE civil works projects that include disposal at an ODMDS.
Dredge material proposed for ocean disposal undergoes an extensive four-tiered evaluation to demonstrate compliance with the requirements of 40 CFR 227. Tiers I and II use existing information and relatively simple, rapid procedures for determining the potential environmental impacts of dredge material proposed for ocean disposal.

Each successive tier incorporates more intensive procedures that provide increasingly detailed information for assessing the potential environmental impacts of the dredge material. The intent of this tiered approach is to ensure the suitability of dredge material proposed for ocean disposal while using resources efficiently. This is achieved by testing the proposed material only as intensely as is necessary to provide sufficient information for making the disposal suitability decision (USEPA and USACE 1991). The application of this tiered process will ensure that only clean dredged material will be disposed of at an ODMDS.

EPA and USACE also may determine that ocean disposal is inappropriate because of ODMDS management restrictions or because options for beneficial use exist. Site management guidance is provided in 40 CFR § 228.7-228.11.

4.22.15 MAGNUSON-STEVENS FISHERY CONSERVATION AND MANAGEMENT ACT

The MSA was authorized in 1996 and charges NMFS with identifying, conserving, and enhancing EFH for those species regulated under a federal fisheries management plan. The MSA requires:

- Federal agencies to consult with NMFS on all actions or proposed actions authorized, funded, or undertaken by the agency that have the potential to adversely affect EFH;
- NMFS to provide conservation recommendations for any federal or state action that would adversely affect EFH; and
- Federal agencies to provide a detailed written response to NMFS within 30 days of receiving the EFH conservation recommendations.

4.22.16 EXECUTIVE ORDER 11593, PROTECTION AND ENHANCEMENT OF THE CULTURAL ENVIRONMENT (36 FR 8921; MAY 15, 1971)

This executive order requires federal agencies to direct their policies, plans, and programs so that federally owned sites, structures, and objects of historical, architectural, or archaeological significance are preserved, restored, and maintained for the inspiration and benefit of the public. Compliance with this order has been coordinated with the SHPO.

4.22.17 EXECUTIVE ORDER 12898, FEDERAL ACTIONS TO ADDRESS ENVIRONMENTAL JUSTICE IN MINORITY AND LOW-INCOME POPULATIONS (FEBRUARY 11, 1994)

To the greatest extent practicable and permitted by law, and consistent with the principles set forth in the report on the National Performance Review, each federal agency shall make achieving environmental justice part of its mission by identifying and addressing, as appropriate, disproportionately high and adverse human health or environmental effects of its programs, policies, and activities on minority populations and low-income populations in the United States and its territories and possessions, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, and the Commonwealth of the Mariana Islands. No group of people would bear a disproportionately high share of adverse environmental consequences as a result of the proposed action.
4.22.18 EXECUTIVE ORDER 13045, PROTECTION OF CHILDREN FROM ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH RISKS AND SAFETY RISKS (62 FR 19885, APRIL 21, 1997)

This executive order directs each federal agency to ensure that its policies, programs, activities, and standards address disproportionate risks to children that result from environmental health risks or safety risks. Children would not bear a disproportionately high share of adverse environmental consequences as a result of the proposed action.

4.22.19 EXECUTIVE ORDER 13089, CORAL REEF PROTECTION

This executive order requires that all federal agencies whose actions may affect U.S. coral reef ecosystems shall: (a) identify their actions that may affect U.S. coral reef ecosystems; (b) utilize their programs and authorities to protect and enhance the conditions of such ecosystems; and (c) to the extent permitted by law, ensure that any actions they authorize, fund, or carry out will not degrade the conditions of such ecosystems.

4.22.20 EXECUTIVE ORDER 13112, INVASIVE SPECIES

The purpose of this executive order is to prevent the introduction of invasive species and provide for their control and to minimize the economic, ecological, and human health impacts that invasive species cause.

4.22.21 EXECUTIVE ORDER 13158, MARINE PROTECTED AREAS

The purpose of this executive order is to, consistent with domestic and international law: (a) strengthen the management, protection, and conservation of existing MPAs and establish new or expanded MPAs; (b) develop a scientifically based, comprehensive national system of MPAs representing diverse U.S. marine ecosystems and the nation's natural and cultural resources; and (c) avoid causing harm to MPAs through federally conducted, approved, or funded activities.

4.22.22 EXECUTIVE ORDER 13186, RESPONSIBILITIES OF FEDERAL AGENCIES TO THE MIGRATORY BIRD TREATY ACT (66 FR 3853; JANUARY 11, 2001)

This act makes it illegal for anyone to take, possess, import, export, transport, sell, purchase, barter, or offer for sale, purchase, or barter, any migratory bird, or the parts, nests, or eggs of such a bird except under the terms of a valid permit issued pursuant to federal regulations.
### Table 4.22-1. Summary of Compliance of the Proposed Project with Environmental Statutes and Regulations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Compliance Status</th>
<th>Description of Compliance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>London Convention</td>
<td>Full</td>
<td>Implemented through the MPRSA of 1972</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marine Protection, Research and Sanctuaries Act of 1972 (MPRSA), as amended (33 U.S.C. 1401 et seq.)</td>
<td>Full</td>
<td>In compliance with Section 102 of the MPRSA, an SMMP has been developed in support of the proposed ODMDS modification. The SMMP is included as an appendix to this EA. USACE will issue ocean disposal permits for future dredged material through regulations promulgated under MPRSA Section 103. EPA is responsible for MRPSA compliance of all ocean disposal activities. With the completion of the Final EA and the SMMP, the project is in full compliance with MPRSA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Environmental Policy Act of 1969 (NEPA) (42 U.S.C. 4341 et seq.)</td>
<td>Full</td>
<td>This EA was prepared for public review pursuant to NEPA with EPA as the lead agency and USACE as the cooperating agency. The Draft EA was circulated to the appropriate local, state, and federal agencies, as well as other interested stakeholders and citizens. Comments received were addressed in the Final EA and in Appendix A. With the completion of the Final EA, the project is in full compliance with NEPA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endangered Species Act of 1973 (16 U.S.C. 1531 et seq.)</td>
<td>Full</td>
<td>This EA concludes that the proposed action would not likely adversely affect listed species. Concurrence was requested with this effects determination. This project has been fully coordinated with USFWS (jurisdiction over the West Indian manatee), NMFS (jurisdiction over sturgeon, sea turtles, whales, and other marine mammals), and other state and federal natural resource agencies. EPA submitted a letter to USFWS and to NMFS on December 4, 2016, to request ESA Section 7 informal consultation for the proposed action. On January 5, 2016, USFWS provided a letter that concluded the proposed action is not likely to adversely affect the West Indian manatee. On April 26, 2016, NMFS provided a letter that concluded the proposed action is not likely to adversely affect listed species under NMFS purview. Documentation of all pertinent correspondence and formal responses is included in Appendix A.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fish and Wildlife Coordination Act of 1958 (16 U.S.C. 661 et seq.)</td>
<td>Full</td>
<td>This EA concludes that the proposed action would not likely adversely affect fish or wildlife. This project was coordinated with USFWS and other state and federal natural resource agencies. EPA submitted a letter to USFWS on December 4, 2016, to request ESA Section 7 informal consultation for the proposed action. On January 5, 2016, USFWS provided a letter that concluded the proposed action is not likely to adversely affect the West Indian manatee. Documentation of all pertinent correspondence and formal responses is included in Appendix A. With the completion of the Final EA, the project is in full compliance with the act.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Historic Preservation Act of 1966 (16 U.S.C. 470 et seq.)</td>
<td>Full</td>
<td>USACE evaluated the potential for adverse impacts to archaeological and historic resources. Results indicate that no properties listed in or eligible for listing in the National Register of Historic Places will be affected by this project. Documentation of all pertinent correspondence and formal responses is included in Appendix A. This project was fully coordinated with the SHPO and is in full compliance with the NHPA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clean Air Act, as amended (42 U.S.C. 1451 et seq.)</td>
<td>Full</td>
<td>Air emissions at the site would be from the vessels delivering dredged material to the ODMDS and would be short-term.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Compliance Status</td>
<td>Description of Compliance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clean Water Act of 1972 (33 U.S.C. 1251 et seq.)</td>
<td>Full</td>
<td>Some barges/hoppers transporting dredged material will pass through CWA jurisdiction; however, the proposed ODMDS modification area is located outside the jurisdiction of CWA (3 nmi). As such, disposal actions at the proposed ODMDS modification area are governed by the MPRSA. Water Quality Certification was obtained for the Post 45 Project.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coastal Zone Management Act of 1972 (16 U.S.C. 1456 et seq.)</td>
<td>Full</td>
<td>Although the proposed ODMDS modification area is outside the coastal zone, transport to the site will be through the coastal zone. Therefore, EPA and USACE have prepared a coastal zone consistency determination letter addressing potential effects of dredged material disposal at the proposed ODMDS modification area on marine organisms, including threatened and endangered species. Appendix E includes the Coastal Zone Management Program Federal Consistency Evaluation summary. Documentation of all pertinent correspondence and formal responses is included in Appendix A. This project has been fully coordinated with the state’s CZMA program and will be in compliance with the act.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marine Mammal Protection Act of 1972 (16 U.S.C. Chapter 31)</td>
<td>Full</td>
<td>This EA concludes that the proposed action would not likely adversely affect marine mammals. EPA submitted a letter to USFWS and NMFS on December 4, 2016, to request ESA Section 7 informal consultation for the proposed action. On January 5, 2016, USFWS provided a letter that concluded the proposed action is not likely to adversely affect the West Indian manatee. On April 26, 2016, NMFS provided a letter that concluded the proposed action is not likely to adversely affect listed species under NMFS purview. Documentation of all pertinent correspondence and formal responses is included in Appendix A. This project has been fully coordinated with USFWS and NMFS and is in full compliance with the act.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coastal Barrier Resources Act of 1982 (16 U.S.C. 3501-3510)</td>
<td>Full</td>
<td>There are no designated coastal barrier resources in the project area that would be affected by the proposed action.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>River and Harbor Act of 1889 (33 USC 608)</td>
<td>Full</td>
<td>The proposed action would not obstruct or pollute navigable waters of the United States. Documentation of all pertinent correspondence and formal responses is included in Appendix A. The project is in compliance with the RHA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anadromous Fish Conservation Act of 1965, As Amended (16 USC 757 et seq.)</td>
<td>Full</td>
<td>This Draft EA concludes that the proposed action would not adversely impact anadromous fishes. On April 26, 2016, NMFS provided a letter that concluded the proposed action is not likely to adversely affect listed species under NMFS purview. Documentation of all pertinent correspondence and formal responses is included in Appendix A. This project has been fully coordinated with NMFS and is in compliance with the act.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (MSA) (16 U.S.C. 1801 et seq.)</td>
<td>Full</td>
<td>The proposed ODMDS modification area is located within the jurisdiction of the MSA, and an EFH assessment has included in the body of the EA that evaluates potential impacts on NMFS-managed fish species and their essential fish habitats. This EA concludes that any adverse impact to EFH as a result of ODMDS modification will be minor. EPA submitted a letter to NMFS on December 4, 2016, to request EFH coordination for the proposed action. Documentation of all pertinent correspondence and formal responses is included in Appendix A. This project has been fully coordinated with NMFS and is in compliance with the MSA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Executive Order 11593, Protection and Enhancement of the Cultural Environment (36 FR 8921, May 15, 1971)</td>
<td>Full</td>
<td>Archaeological surveys and consultation have been conducted. Compliance with this order has been coordinated with the SHPO.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Compliance Status</td>
<td>Description of Compliance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Executive Order 12372, Intergovernmental Review of Major Federal Programs (47 FR 3059; July 16, 1982)</td>
<td>Full</td>
<td>Archaeological surveys and consultation have been conducted. Compliance with this order has been coordinated with the SHPO.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Executive Order 12898, Federal Actions to Address Environmental Justice in Minority and Low-Income Populations (February 11, 1994)</td>
<td>Full</td>
<td>The proposed action would not result in adverse health or environmental effects. Any impacts of this action would not be disproportionate toward any minority. The activity does not (a) exclude persons from participation in, (b) deny persons the benefits of, or (c) subject persons to discrimination because of their race, color, or national origin. The activity would not impact subsistence consumption of fish and wildlife. The proposed action is in compliance with the goals of this executive order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Executive Order 13045, Protection of Children from Environmental Health Risks and Safety Risks (62 FR 19885, April 21, 1997)</td>
<td>Full</td>
<td>The proposed action would not result in adverse environmental health risks or safety risks to children. The proposed action is in compliance with the goals of this executive order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Executive Order 13089, Coral Reef Protection</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>There are no coral reefs in the vicinity of the project area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Executive Order 13112, Invasive Species</td>
<td>Full</td>
<td>There are no components in the dredged material or consequences of its disposal that would be expected to attract or result in recruitment of nuisance species to the ODMDS. The proposed action is in compliance with the goals of this executive order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Executive Order 13158, Marine Protected Areas</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>There are no marine protected areas in the vicinity of the project area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Executive Order 13186, Responsibilities of Federal Agencies to the Migratory Bird Treaty Act (MBTA) (66 FR 3853; January 11, 2001)</td>
<td>Full</td>
<td>Migratory birds are not expected to be adversely affected by the proposed project. The proposed action is in compliance with the goals of this executive order.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4.23 CEQ GREENHOUSE GAS EMISSIONS AND CLIMATE CHANGE GUIDANCE

On December 18, 2014, the CEQ released revised draft guidance that stated Federal agencies, “in order to remain consistent with NEPA, should consider the extent to which a proposed action and its reasonable alternatives contribute to climate change through greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions and take into account the ways in which a changing climate over the life of the proposed project may alter the overall environmental implications of such actions (CEQ 2014).”

The modification of the Charleston ODMDS is effectively an administrative change, as the proposed modification reduces the overall footprint of the site while increasing the available disposal zone. As such, this action on its own does not directly contribute to GHG emissions. It is worth noting that activities associated with the use of the ODMDS, such as dredging and transport of the dredged sediment to the ODMDS via vessel, result in the emission of GHGs, largely through the burning of diesel fuels. However, the level of these emissions will not change significantly as a result of this proposed action. Additionally, the implications of climate change will not affect the environmental effects of the proposed action. Therefore, additional analysis of this issue is not required.
5 LIST OF PREPARERS

5.1 PREPARERS

This EA was prepared for USEPA Region 4 and USACE, Charleston District. A list of primary organizations and individuals who contributed to the preparation and review of this document include:

USEPA Region 4
61 Forsyth Street, SW
Atlanta, Georgia 30303
Gary Collins
Marine Regulatory and Wetlands Enforcement Section
(404) 562-9395
Email: collins.garyw@epa.gov

USACE, Charleston District
69A Hagood Avenue
Charleston, South Carolina 29403-5107
Mark Messersmith
Biologist
(843) 329-8162
Mark.J.Messersmith@usace.army.mil

The consulting firm responsible for the preparation of this document is:

ANAMAR Environmental Consulting, Inc.
2106 NW 67th Place, Suite 5
Gainesville, Florida 32653-1658

Michelle Rau, Project Manager/Principle Writer/Ecologist
M.S., Soil and Water Science

Jason Seitz, Biologist/Technical Writer
B.S., Biology/Aquatic Ecology

Christine Smith, Survey and GIS Specialist
B.A., Environmental Geography

Constance Steen, Editor
H.S., Editing and Document Production
5.2 REVIEWERS

USEPA Region 4
61 Forsyth Street, SW
Atlanta, Georgia 30303

Gary Collins
Marine Regulatory and Wetlands Enforcement Section
(404) 562-9395
Email: collins.garyw@epa.gov

Christopher J. McArthur, P.E.
Environmental Engineer, Ocean Disposal Program Coordinator
Marine Regulatory and Wetlands Enforcement Section
(404) 562-9391
Email: mcarthur.christopher@epa.gov

Beth Walls
Environmental Scientist
US EPA Region 4 NEPA Office
(404) 562-8309
Email: Walls.Beth@epa.gov
6 REFERENCES


NMFS (National Marine Fisheries Service). 2009. Amendment 1 to the Consolidated Atlantic Highly Migratory Species Fishery Management Plan, Essential Fish Habitat, Including a Final Environmental Impact Statement. NMFS Highly Migratory Species Management Division, Silver Spring, MD.


SAFMC (South Atlantic Fishery Management Council). 1998a. *Final Comprehensive Amendment Addressing Essential Fish Habitat in Fishery Management Plans of the South Atlantic Region*. Amendment 3 to the Shrimp Fishery Management Plan; Amendment 10 to the Snapper Grouper Fishery Management Plan; Amendment 10 to the Coastal Migratory Pelagics Fishery Management Plan; Amendment 1 to the Golden Crab Fishery Management Plan; Amendment 5 to the Spiny Lobster Fishery Management Plan; and Amendment 4 to the Coral, Coral Reefs, and Live/Hard Bottom Habitat Fishery Management Plan (Including a Final EA/SEIS, RIR & SIA/FIS). SAFMC, North Charleston, SC.
SAFMC (South Atlantic Fishery Management Council). 1998b. Final Habitat Plan for the South Atlantic Region: Essential Fish Habitat Requirements for Fishery Management Plans of the South Atlantic Fishery Management Council. The Shrimp Fishery Management Plan; the Red Drum Fishery Management Plan; the Snapper Grouper Fishery Management Plan; the Coastal Migratory Pelagic Fishery Management Plan; the Golden Crab Fishery Management Plan; the Spiny Lobster Fishery Management Plan; the Coral; Coral Reefs, and Live/Hard Bottom Habitat Fishery Management Plan; the Sargassum Habitat Fishery Management Plan; and the Calico Scallop Fishery Management Plan. SAFMC, Charleston, SC.


SCWMRD (South Carolina Wildlife and Marine Resources Department). 1984. South Atlantic OCS Area Living Marine Resources Study Phase III. Final report prepared by the Marine Resources Research Institute, South Carolina Wildlife and Marine Resources Department in cooperation with the Coastal Resources Division, Georgia Department of Natural Resources for the Minerals Management Service, Washington D.C. under contract 14-12-0001-29185.


St. Laurent, P. 2007. Personal communication between P. St. Laurent (Immediate Past President and Board Member of Jacksonville Offshore Sport Fishing Club) and C. Wirth of TEC, Inc. 28 March.


USACE (U.S. Army Corps of Engineers). 2010. Section 905(b) (WRDA 86) Analysis, Charleston Harbor Navigation Improvement Project, Charleston, South Carolina. USACE Charleston District, Charleston, SC.


## Correspondence Index:
Public Participation and Agency Consultation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Correspondence Type</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>From/To</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1     | Request letter from USACE to EPA for ODMDS modification | February 10, 2012 | From: Patrick E. O'Donnell (USACE Charleston Chief, Planning and Environmental Branch)  
To: Gary Collins (EPA Region 4, Biological Oceanographer/Atlanta Dive Office) |
| 2     | Response letter from EPA to USACE regarding ODMDS modification request | March 1, 2102 | From: William L. Cox (EPA Region 4 Chief, Wetlands, Coastal and Oceans Branch)  
To: Patrick E. O'Donnell (USACE Charleston Chief, Planning and Environmental Branch) |
| 3     | Response letter from USACE to EPA regarding NEPA process for ODMDS modification | May 8, 2012 | From: Edward P. Chamberlayne, P.E. (Lieutenant Colonel, US Army Commander and District Engineer)  
To: William L. Cox (EPA Region 4 Chief, Wetlands, Coastal and Oceans Branch) |
| 4     | Response letter from EPA to USACE regarding NEPA process and ODMDS capacity analysis | August 2, 2012 | From: James D. Giattina (EPA Region 4 Director, Water Protection Division)  
To: Edward P. Chamberlayne, P.E. (Lieutenant Colonel, US Army Commander and District Engineer) |
| 5     | NOI | December 31, 2012 | Notice of Intent in the Federal Register: Designation of an Expanded Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site (ODMDS) off Charleston, South Carolina |
| 6     | Scoping Response Letter | February 13, 2013 | From: Priscilla H. Wendt (South Carolina Department of Natural Resources, Office of Environmental Programs/ MRD)  
To: Gary Collins (EPA Region 4, Biological Oceanographer/Atlanta Dive Officer) |
| 7     | Scoping Response Letter | February 21, 2013 | From: Patrick Moore (South Carolina State Ports Authority, Environmental Stewardship Manager)  
To: Gary Collins (EPA Region 4, Biological Oceanographer/Atlanta Dive Officer) |
## Correspondence Index:
### Public Participation and Agency Consultation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Correspondence Type</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>From/To</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Scoping Response Letter</td>
<td>February 26, 2013</td>
<td><em>From:</em> Virginia M. Fay (National Marine Fisheries Service, Assistant Regional Administrator Habitat Conservation Division)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>To:</em> Gary Collins (EPA Region 4, Biological Oceanographer/Atlanta Dive Officer)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>To:</em> Elizabeth Johnson, Deputy SHPO (South Carolina Department of Archives and History)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>To:</em> Bob Perry, Director of Environmental Programs (South Carolina Department of Natural Resources)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>To:</em> Thomas McCoy, Field Supervisor (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>To:</em> Curtis Joyner (South Carolina Department of Health and Environmental Control, Office of Ocean and Coastal Resource Management)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>To:</em> David Bernhart, Assistant Regional Administrator for Protected Resources (Protected Resource Division, National Marine Fisheries Service)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>To:</em> Pace Wilbur (NOAA Habitat Conservation Division, National Marine Fisheries Service)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Correspondence Index:
### Public Participation and Agency Consultation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Correspondence Type</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>From/To</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 15     | Comments on Draft EA - Letter | January 5, 2016 | From: Thomas McCoy, Field Supervisor (U.S. Department of Interior, Fish and Wildlife Service)  
          To: Thomas McGill, Chief (EPA Region 4, Oceans, Wetlands & Streams Protection Branch) |
| N/A    | Resource Agency Coordination Meeting: Presentation Slides and Meeting Minutes | January 7, 2016 |                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 16     | Comments on Draft EA - Email | January 14, 2016 | From: Douglas Piatkowski, Physical Scientist (Department of Interior, Bureau of Ocean Energy Management Headquarters)  
          To: Mark Messersmith, Biologist/ODMDS Modification Lead (Planning and Environmental Branch, USACE Charleston District) |
| 17     | Comments on Draft EA - Letter | January 19, 2016 | From: Curtis Joyner, Manager Coastal Zone Consistency, Regulatory Division (DHEC OCRM)  
          To: Thomas McGill, Chief (EPA Region 4, Oceans, Wetlands & Streams Protection Branch) |
| 18     | Comments on Draft EA - Letter | January 19, 2016 | From: Priscilla H. Wendt (Office of Environmental Programs, South Carolina Department of Natural Resources)  
          To: Jennifer S. Derby, Chief (EPA Region 4, Marine Regulatory and Wetlands Enforcement Section) |
| 19     | Comments on Draft EA - Email | January 20, 2016 | From: Brian Jordan, Federal Preservation Officer Headquarters Archaeologist (Department of Interior, Bureau of Ocean Energy Management)  
          To: Douglas Piatkowski, Physical Scientist (Department of Interior, Bureau of Ocean Energy Management Headquarters)  
          Forwarded To: Mark Messersmith, Biologist/ODMDS Modification Lead (Planning and Environmental Branch, USACE Charleston District) |

Letters/Comments received on the Draft EA during the public comment period. See "Response to Comments" matrix for detailed responses to each comment.
## Correspondence Index:
### Public Participation and Agency Consultation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Correspondence Type</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>From/To</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 20     | Comments on Draft EA - Letter | January 19, 2016 | To: Lt. Col. Matthew Luzzatto (USACE Charleston District) and Jennifer S. Derby, Chief (EPA Region 4, Marine Regulatory and Wetlands Enforcement Section)  
From: Pace Wilbur for Virginia M. Fay (National Marine Fisheries Service, Assistant Regional Administrator Habitat Conservation Division) |
| 21     | Comments on Draft EA - Letter | January 6, 2016  | From: Emily Dale, Staff Archaeologist/GIS Coordinator (State Historic Preservation Office)  
To: Gary Collins, Ocean Dumping Coordinator (EPA Region 4, Marine Regulatory and Wetlands Enforcement Section) |
| 22     | Comments on Draft EA - Letter | February 2, 2016 | From: Curtis Joyner, Manager Coastal Zone Consistency, Regulatory Division (DHEC OCRM)  
To: Thomas McGill, Chief (EPA Region 4, Oceans, Wetlands & Streams Protection Branch) |
| 23     | Comments on Draft EA - Letter | February 17, 2016 | From: Curtis Joyner, Manager Coastal Zone Consistency, Regulatory Division (DHEC OCRM)  
To: Thomas McGill, Chief (EPA Region 4, Oceans, Wetlands & Streams Protection Branch) |
| 24     | Comments on Draft EA - Letter | April 26, 2016   | From: Roy E. Crabtree, Ph.D. (NOAA National Marine Fisheries Services)  
To: Gary Collins, Ocean Dumping Coordinator (EPA Region 4, Marine Regulatory and Wetlands Enforcement Section) and Mark Messersmith, Biologist/ODMDS Modification Lead (Planning and Environmental Branch, USACE Charleston District) |
February 10, 2012

Planning and Environmental Branch

Mr. Gary W Collins
US EPA Region 4
61 Forsyth St., SW
Atlanta, Georgia 30303

SUBJECT: Expansion of the Charleston Harbor Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site (ODMDS)

Dear Mr. Collins:

I am writing to request a timely confirmation that designation of an expanded ODMDS will not necessitate designation through Section 102 of the Marine, Protection, Resource and Sanctuaries Act. As you have discussed with my staff, the Corps is requesting that the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) issue a ruling in the Federal Register to de-designate 7.43 square miles of existing ODMDS and designate a revised ODMDS that extends outside of the larger parallelogram by 3.14 square miles. Since the majority of expansion would be within the existing authorized ODMDS, this would mean that a new Section 102 designation process would not be required.

As you know, the Corps is performing the Charleston Harbor Post 45 feasibility study to determine ways to improve the efficiency of navigation transportation. We will determine the benefits of measures such as channel deepening, widening, bend casing, and turning basin changes. The dredging required to perform these measures would in turn require an expansion of the existing ODMDS.

The Corps understands that typically a new ODMDS requires the EPA to authorize and designate the site through Section 102 of the Marine Protection Resource and Sanctuaries Act. On December 19, 2011, the Corps and EPA discussed the possibility that a new Section 102 designation could be averted due to the history of the site.

The currently designated ODMDS (outlined by the parallelogram in Figure 1) encompasses an area of approximately 5.3 x 2.3 nautical miles. In 1993 an interagency team jointly decided that the active Disposal Zone should be moved to a four square mile area to avoid impacts to sensitive live bottom habitat west of that zone. Since that time, ocean disposal has only occurred within that 4 square mile Disposal Zone. In 1995, language describing the larger ODMDS was modified in the Federal Register such that the site could be used for all disposal materials permitted for offshore disposal, which meant that the site was no longer limited for the
disposal of deepening materials and was permitted for “continued use.” On June 6, 2002, the EPA published a ruling in the Federal Register to define the four square mile Disposal Zone as the only area within the ODMDS (parallelogram) in which disposal can continue; however the remaining area within the ODMDS was not de-authorized.

![Charleston ODMDS and Disposal Zone](image)

**Figure 1. Charleston ODMDS and Disposal Zone**

Over the years, extensive monitoring has occurred within and surrounding the 4 square mile Disposal Zone. The South Carolina Department of Natural Resources (SCDNR) developed a monitoring scheme (Figure 2) that established inner and outer buffer zones that were each 1 square mile in size. The EPA approved this scheme as part of the Site Management and Monitoring Plan (SMMP) for Charleston Harbor and the Corps has faithfully adhered to the scheme with monitoring data being collected and analyzed by SCDNR and other agencies/universities.

Some of the ways in which material from the future Post 45 deepening project for Charleston Harbor and 50 years of Operation & Maintenance (O&M) could be disposed of within the existing EPA-designated ODMDS were discussed. One suggestion by the EPA was to use the monitoring data to intelligently extend certain portions of the existing ODMDS boundaries up to approximately one mile outside of the ODMDS. This plan is considered possible and prudent despite the absence of additional surveying, sampling, and data gathering because the area has been extensively monitored throughout the years (from 1997 to 2006, 8 SCDNR reports, 18 SCDNR monitoring progress reports, and 2 Coastal Carolina University and SCDNR cooperative reports have been completed). On January 5, 2012, the Corps met with Dr.
Bob Van Dolah, Director of the Marine Resources Research Institute for SCDNR, to gauge a response of how using the existing designated ODMDS and up to approximately one mile from the boundary perimeter would meet the Department's policies and guidelines. The general response from SCDNR about using this mostly designated area was acceptable but he suggested augmenting the plan based on the established monitoring zones (Figure 2). Because of the knowledge of hard bottom habitat west of the 4 square mile Disposal Zone, the specific SCDNR monitoring cells considered were the inner zones (IA-IF) and the outer zones (OA-OF). The Corps understands that we will need to coordinate with the resource agencies for a new SMMP, to be approved by the EPA.

The expected new work dredging requirement based on the maximum future Charleston Harbor Post 45 deepening project is approximately 40 million cubic yards. The expected O&M material to be disposed of in the ODMDS is approximately 91 million cubic yards over a 50 year period of analysis. The total expected disposal volume for 50 years would be approximately 131 million cubic yards of material.

![Charleston ODMDS](image)

**Figure 2. New Charleston ODMDS expansion options**

In order to meet the future capacity need we have calculated (using HyPack software, GIS, and NOAA nautical chart bathymetry) different disposal options. Figure 2 represents the most viable option for expansion of the Disposal Zone with the fewest impacts. An expansion of
the ODMDS would provide the capacity for an estimated 181,422,970 cubic yards of dredged material. Note that the majority of the area is within the existing ODMDS (parallelogram). As per our coordination with the EPA, the Corps would be interested in de-designating the portion of the ODMDS that is west of the current Disposal Zone in exchange for the areas north and south of the Disposal Zone based on the figures below. The area that could be de-designated is 7.43 square miles and is represented by the red cross-hatching in Figure 2 above. In exchange for this area, the Corps requests that the EPA issue a ruling that designates for ocean dumping an area that includes the 4 square mile Disposal Zone plus the 7.18 square mile area shown in green. The area in green consists of 4.04 square miles contained within the current ODMDS and 3.14 square miles outside the current ODMDS (Figure 2).

Please feel free to contact my staff, Greg Wahl, 843-329-8130, Gregory.t.wahl@usace.army.mil or Mark Messersmith, 843-329-8162, mark.j.messersmith@usace.army.mil with any questions or concerns that you have.

Patrick E. O'Donnell
Chief, Planning and Environmental Branch
Patrick E. O’Donnell, Chief
Planning & Environmental Branch
Charleston District, USACE
69A Hagood Ave.
Charleston, South Carolina 29403-5107

Dear Mr. O’Donnell:

This letter is in response to your request of February 10, 2012, concerning designation of an expanded Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site (ODMDS) for Charleston Harbor. While it is true that the Section 102 designation process for a new disposal site will not be necessary, it is also true that more than rulemaking to change the current ODMDS designation will be needed.

It is important for us to point out that any process to alter an ODMDS designation is, in fact, regulated through Section 102 of the Marine Protection, Research, and Sanctuaries Act (MPRSA). At a minimum, an Environmental Assessment (EA) will be necessary in order to satisfy EPA’s voluntary policy regarding National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) requirements (see 63 FR 58045 [October 29, 1998]). The process for modifying a site designation is provided in the Memorandum of Understanding (MOU) between U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE), South Atlantic Division and the Environmental Protection Agency, Region 4 on Ocean Dredged Material Disposal dated April 30, 2007. A copy of the MOU is enclosed for your reference. A viable alternative to an EA may be to include the necessary information in the NEPA documentation that your office is preparing for the Post 45 Harbor Deepening Project. This option avoids separate preparation and the process needed for public comment. However, this NEPA document will have to contain all the necessary information described in the MOU for site designations or modification.

Because our office will need to prepare an Essential Fish Habitat (EFH) Assessment for coordination with the National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS), we ask that you provide us with the required information and data related to EFH impacts within the expansion area that lies outside the current ODMDS boundaries. Information on cultural resources within this area will also need to be provided.

The capacity analysis provided in your letter was overly brief and lacked detail on the methods employed. Capacity analysis based purely on height differentials is not appropriate as mound side slopes need to be considered. We recommend that the analysis factor in sideslopes and other mound characteristics as described in the USACE Technical Report Methodology for Analysis of Subaqueous Sediment Mounds (D-90-2). Preferably, the analysis would utilize USACE developed models (e.g. MDFATE, LTFATE, MPFATE) to factor in currents, waves, erosion, consolidation, avalanching and dredged material characteristics.
Once your office has determined that a site modification is definitely the action needed for Charleston, we request that the EPA action be formalized in a request from the District Engineer to the Regional Administrator (see MOU, Section III.A). In this particular case, a Zone of Siting Feasibility will not be necessary, although all other components listed in the MOU will be.

Please feel free to contact me or Mr. Gary Collins of my staff at (404) 562-9395 if you should have any questions or need clarification regarding this letter.

Sincerely,

William L. Cox, Chief
Wetlands, Coastal and Oceans Branch
Planning Branch

Mr. William L. Cox
US EPA Region 4
61 Forsyth Street, SW
Atlanta, Georgia 30303

SUBJECT: Expansion of the Charleston Harbor Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site (ODMDS)

Dear Mr. Cox:

As a result of the Charleston Harbor Deepening Study (Post 45 study), authorized by Section 216 of the Flood Control Act of 1970 (Public Law 91-611), the Charleston District will need to evaluate the modification of the existing Charleston Harbor Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site (ODMDS). On February 12, 2012 the Charleston District requested an Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) ruling to de-designate 7.43 square miles of the ODMDS and designate an additional 3.14 square miles of ocean bottom beyond the existing ODMDS (see enclosure). Your office responded on March 1, 2012, and determined that either an Environmental Assessment (EA) or the inclusion of ODMDS related information in the National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) documentation for the Post 45 study will be necessary in order to satisfy EPA’s requirements (see enclosure). Your letter has been extremely helpful to scope the level of effort required for this project, and the Charleston District intends to move forward on this modification by preparing a separate EA for your office.

As per section III(A) of the Memorandum of Understanding (MOU) between the US Army Corps of Engineers (USACE), South Atlantic Division and the Environmental Protection Agency, Region 4, this letter is written to request the official initiation of our coordination with your office for a Marine Protection Research and Sanctuaries Act (MPRSA) Section 102 modification to the Charleston Harbor ODMDS. Initial coordination has included several meetings with the EPA Coordinator for the Charleston Harbor ODMDS, Mr. Gary Collins, as well as SC Department of Natural Resources (SCDNR) personnel. Please see our letter dated February 10, 2012 for information pertaining to the description of the need for a modified ODMDS, an estimate of the long-term use of the site, and a preliminary estimate of the size. As mentioned in your previous letter, a Zone of Siting Feasibility is not necessary and therefore is not included as an enclosure.

Due to the extensive knowledge of the current ODMDS and the surrounding area as well as the information contained within your previous letter, the Charleston District understands that the focus of our effort should be on impacts to Essential Fish Habitat, cultural and historic
resources, and capacity analysis for the proposed ODMDS. As required in Section III(A) of the MOU, the following is a rough schedule with an anticipated completion date:

- Initiate Section 102 Site Modification Process May 2012
- Letters to Agencies May 2012
- ODMDS Interagency Team Meeting 1 June 2012
- Sub-bottom/Side Scan Sonar/Magnetometer Surveys July-Sept 2012
- Wave and Current Data Collection Apr 2012-May 2013
- Benthic Surveys (summer/winter) July 2012-Jan 2013
- Fate Sediment Model May 2013 – Jan 2014
- NEPA existing conditions write up Apr 2012 – May 2013
- Analyze Alternatives Nov 2012 – Jan 2013
- ODMDS Interagency Team Meeting 2 May 2013
- Draft EFH Assessment Feb 2014
- Draft ESA BA Feb 2014
- Draft Coastal Zone Consistency Determination Feb 2014
- Draft EA/FONSI/SMMP for EPA review April 2014
- ODMDS Interagency Team Meeting 3 May 2014
- Final EFH Assessment June 2014
- Final ESA BA/BO June 2014
- Finalize EA/FONSI/SMMP June 2014
- Public Comment Period June 2014
- Complete NEPA coordination July 2014
- EPA Approval of Final EA/FONSI/SMMP Sept 2014
- Comment Period EPA Proposed Rule Oct 2014
- Regional Comment Period Nov 2014
- EPA Final Rulemaking Jan 2015
- EPA Approval Received Jan 2015

Please accept this letter and the two enclosures as the initiation of our MPRSA Section 102 request for ODMDS site modification. If you have any questions or concerns, please feel free to contact Mr. Mark Messersmith at 843-329-8162 or via email at mark.j.messersmith@usace.army.mil.

Sincerely,

Edward P. Chamberlayne, P.E.
Lieutenant Colonel, U.S. Army
Commander and District Engineer

Enclosures
Lt. Colonel Edward P. Chamberlayne  
District Engineer  
U.S. Army Corps of Engineers  
Charleston District  
69A Hagood Avenue  
Charleston, South Carolina  29403-5107

Dear Col. Chamberlayne:

This letter is in response to your request of May 8, 2012, concerning modification of the Charleston Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site (ODMDS). It is the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency’s responsibility under Section 102 of the Marine Protection, Research and Sanctuaries Act to designate ocean disposal sites for dredged material. While we agree that a modification of the current ODMDS may be needed to accommodate the proposed deepening project for Charleston Harbor, the extent to which the site may need to be modified will remain in question until we receive and review the capacity analysis used to make that decision.

The capacity analysis should consider volumes placed as a result of the proposed deepening project as well as 25 years of subsequent maintenance. It should utilize the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) developed models to quantitatively predict/assess the bathymetric behavior of dredged material placed within the ODMDS. The analysis should ensure that dredged material disposed offshore does not accumulate in a fashion which would pose a navigational hazard and demonstrate that the disposed dredged material stays within the site boundaries as defined by the 5 cm deposition contour. It should also account for subsequent erosion and transport due to storms, waves and currents. The analysis should determine the smallest ODMDS feasible for achieving these goals and minimizing impacts to nearby habitat.

It is our understanding that the District wishes to proceed with preparation of an Environmental Assessment (EA), separate from other project documentation, to satisfy the necessary National Environmental Policy Act documentation for this action. We concur with this determination and pursuant to the 2007 Memorandum of Understanding (MOU) between the USACE South Atlantic Division and the EPA Region 4 on Ocean Dredged Material Disposal, the site modification will be a cooperative effort between the EPA and the USACE Charleston District. The EPA will be the lead agency for the EA and will closely coordinate the action with the resource agencies and the State of South Carolina. The EPA will also conduct the rulemaking to modify the current site. The USACE will provide contractor support for the development of the EA in coordination with the EPA. The agencies have already worked jointly with the South Carolina Marine Resources Research Institute to identify and design any field studies deemed necessary to support the modification. The USACE is to provide contractor sampling and analysis support for these studies, including the current/wave study being conducted by the EPA.
The proposed timeline for completing the modification by the end of January 2015 appears to be reasonable. In accordance with the MOU, we will prepare the Notice of Intent to Prepare an EA within 45 days of this letter. Other significant milestones are provided below:

- Notice of Intent: October 1, 2012
- Draft EA: April, 2014
- Final EA: June, 2014
- Proposed Rulemaking: October, 2014
- Final Rulemaking: January, 2015
- Modification in Effect: February, 2015 (Final Rules do not become effective until 30 days from date of publication)

Mr. Gary Collins of the Wetlands, Coastal and Oceans Branch will be coordinating the site modification effort. Please contact him at (404) 562-9395 or collins.garyw@epa.gov with any questions regarding the site modification.

Sincerely,

[Signature]

James D. Giattina
Director
Water Protection Division

cc: Heinz Mueller
ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY

Notice of Intent: Designation of an Expanded Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site (ODMDS) off Charleston, South Carolina

AGENCY: U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) Region 4.

ACTION: Notice of Intent to prepare an Environmental Assessment (EA) for the designation of an expanded ODMDS off Charleston, South Carolina.

Purpose: EPA has the authority to designate ODMDSs under Section 102 of the Marine Protection, Research and Sanctuaries Act of 1972 (33 U.S.C. 1401 et seq.). It is EPA's policy to prepare a National Environmental Policy Document for all ODMDS designations (63 FR 58045, October 1998).

For Further Information, to Submit Comments, and To Be Placed On the Project Mailing List Contact: Mr. Gary W. Collins, EPA Region 4, 61 Forsyth Street, Atlanta, Georgia 30303, phone 404-562-9393, email: collins.garyw@epa.gov.

SUMMARY: EPA in cooperation with the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers Charleston District (USACE) intends to prepare an EA to evaluate the proposed designation of an expanded ODMDS offshore Charleston, South Carolina. An EA will provide the environmental information necessary to evaluate the potential environmental impacts associated with expanding the ODMDS.

Need for Action: The USACE has requested that EPA evaluate and designate an expanded ODMDS. The study area includes an area approximately 7.18 square miles in size, for the disposal of dredged material from the proposed harbor deepening dredging at Charleston Harbor (4.04 square miles are within the current ODMDS and 3.14 square miles are outside the current ODMDS). The size of an expanded ODMDS will be based on capacity computer modeling results, and will be refined throughout the study phase.

Alternatives: The following proposed alternatives have been tentatively defined.
1. No action.
2. Expansion of the existing Charleston ODMDS. Expand the existing disposal zone and ODMDS to the north, south and east.

Scoping: EPA is requesting written comments from federal, state,
and local governments, industry, non-governmental organizations, and
the general public on the range of alternatives considered, specific
environmental issues to be evaluated, and the potential impacts of the
alternatives. Scoping comments will be accepted for 60 days, beginning
with the date of this Notice.
Estimated Date of Draft EA Release: May 2014.
Responsible Official: Gwendolyn Keyes Fleming, Regional
Administrator, Region 4.
Susan E. Bromm,
Director, Office of Federal Activities.
[FR Doc. 2012-31460 Filed 12-28-12; 8:45 am]
BILLING CODE 6560-50-P
February 13, 2013

Mr. Gary W. Collins
USEPA Region 4
61 Forsyth Street
Atlanta, GA 30303

RE: Notice of Intent (NOI): Designation of an Expanded Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site (ODMDS) off Charleston, South Carolina

Dear Mr. Collins:

The S.C. Department of Natural Resources (DNR) is submitting this letter in response to the Notice of Intent (NOI) to prepare an Environmental Assessment (EA) for the designation of an expanded Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site (ODMDS) off Charleston, South Carolina. The NOI was published in the Federal Register (Volume 77, Issue 250) on December 31, 2012 with a 60-day public comment period.

Background: The EA will be prepared by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), in cooperation with the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers Charleston District (“the Corps”). The purpose of the EA is to provide the information necessary to evaluate the potential environmental impacts associated with expanding the ODMDS for the disposal of dredged material from the proposed Charleston Harbor Deepening (“Post-45”) Project. The study area will encompass approximately 7.18 square miles (4.04 square miles within the existing ODMDS and 3.14 square miles outside the existing ODMDS). As stated in the NOI, the size of the expanded ODMDS will be based on capacity computer modeling results, and will be refined throughout the study phase of the EA. The alternatives that will be considered in the EA include 1) “no action”, and 2) expansion of the existing Charleston ODMDS to the north, south and east.

Scoping Comments: Broadly stated, the DNR is concerned about all potential adverse impacts the proposed expansion might have on aquatic resources, particularly hard-
bottom habitats and the live-bottom communities they support. As you know, the DNR has monitored the Charleston ODMDS for decades with funding provided by the Corps, EPA and the State Ports Authority (SPA) and, as a result, has generated a substantial body of information on bottom types and benthic communities in and around the existing ODMDS. Our scientific staff has coordinated extensively with EPA and the Corps on the proposed expansion, and has suggested a design for a newly configured ODMDS that should maximize the usefulness of existing data in completing the EA and minimize the extent of any unavoidable impacts to hard-bottom habitat.

Although the NOI does not include a figure showing the proposed study area, the DNR assumes the boundaries of that area are the same as those discussed at the Interagency Coordination Team (ICT) meeting hosted by the Corps on September 18, 2012, and shown in the figure attached to this letter. Existing side scan and sub-bottom profiling data indicate the presence of hard-bottom ledges north and west of the current disposal area, and possibly to the south, as well. Ongoing acoustic and visual surveys being conducted by Coastal Carolina University will provide additional information on the extent of these hard-bottom areas and whether or not they support dense assemblages of live-bottom species. If the presence of live-bottom communities is confirmed, every effort should be made to avoid or minimize adverse impacts to these areas. In order to prevent the migration of disposed dredged material (i.e., sand and mud) into hard-bottom areas, the existing berm along the west side of the current disposal area (cells D1 and D4) should be extended to include the west and south sides of the expanded disposal area (cells D10 and, possibly, D9). Similarly, a new berm should be constructed along the north side of the expanded disposal area (cells D5 and D6), if substantial areas of live-bottom habitat are found in the cells north of the disposal area.

Although DNR’s primary concern is the protection of hard-bottom habitat, soft-bottom sediments also provide valuable habitat, particularly for infaunal invertebrates and demersal fish. Any encroachment into previously undisturbed soft-bottom areas should be minimized to the extent possible. The DNR supports EPA’s plan to conduct capacity computer modeling to determine the size of the expansion area needed to accommodate the anticipated volume of new work and maintenance material from the Charleston Harbor Deepening Project, and recommends that any expansion be limited to the smallest area needed to achieve this goal. Any expansion of the disposal area into cells D11 and D12 should be avoided, if at all possible, and any decision to include these two cells in an expanded disposal area should be strongly supported by the modeling results.

The SCDNR looks forward to continuing our coordination with EPA and the Corps on this project, and working with the other Federal and State natural resource and regulatory agencies to ensure that all relevant environmental issues are adequately addressed in the EA.
Sincerely,

Priscilla H. Wendt

Priscilla H. Wendt
Office of Environmental Programs/ MRD

Cc: SCDHEC/ EQC
SCDHEC/ OCRM
USACE
USFWS
NOAA/NMFS
February 21, 2013

Mr. Gary W. Collins  
USEPA Region 4  
61 Forsyth Street  
Atlanta, GA 30303

RE: Notice of Intent (NOI): Designation of an Expanded Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site (ODMDS) off Charleston, South Carolina

Dear Mr. Collins,

The S.C. State Ports Authority (SCPA) is submitting this letter in response to the Notice of Intent (NOI) to prepare an Environmental Assessment (EA) for the designation of an expanded Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site (ODMDS) off Charleston, South Carolina.

Project Purpose and Significance

The purpose of the EA is to provide the information necessary to evaluate the potential environmental impacts associated with expanding the ODMDS for the disposal of dredged material from the proposed Charleston Harbor Deepening (“Post-45”) Project and subsequent annual maintenance material. SCPA is the local sponsor for the Post 45 harbor deepening project being undertaken by the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers. This project will deepen the Charleston Harbor, allowing it to accommodate larger ships coming through an expanded Panama Canal and the existing Suez Canal. The efficiencies of a deeper harbor serving larger ships will improve the economy and reduce impacts to the environment.

The Post 45 project is nationally significant, as evidenced by its designation by President Obama as a "We Can't Wait" initiative project. Under the "We Can't Wait" initiative, the Office of Management and Budget is charged with overseeing a government-wide effort to make the permitting and review process for infrastructure projects more efficient and effective. Notably, the Corps has selected the Post 45 project to be the first project under its new 3X3X3 expedited smart planning process, reducing evaluation time from 10 years to 3 years. Pursuant to the President's directive, the Corps of Engineers, Department of the Interior, Department of Commerce, and all other components of the federal government have committed to completing permitting for the project by September 2015.

The timely completion of permitting for the Post 45 project is a national priority and the responsible expansion of the ODMDS is a critical component of that commitment.
Scoping and Alternatives Analysis

The EA will be prepared by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), in cooperation with the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers Charleston District (“the Corps”). The study area will encompass approximately 7.18 square miles including 4.04 square miles within the existing ODMDS and 3.14 square miles outside the existing ODMDS. The size of the expanded ODMDS will be based on capacity modeling results, and will be refined throughout the study phase of the EA.

The NOI states that the alternatives that will be considered in the EA include 1) “no action”, and 2) expansion of the existing Charleston ODMDS to the north, south and east:

1) No Action: If no action is taken then there will not be enough dredge disposal area available to accommodate the dredge material generated by the Post 45 project and the project will not be completed. This alternative fails to fulfill the project purpose, falls short of the President’s directive, and negatively impacts the environment and economy.

2) Expansion to the north, south and east:

Existing and ongoing data collection in and around the ODMDS site will be of significant value to the EPA in conducting the EA. There is a long history of data collection collaboration between the State and Federal resource agencies relating to the ODMDS. Those collaborative efforts include sediment mapping studies, 800 stations worth of benthic sampling data, habitat mapping studies, and hard bottom mapping studies. These hard bottom surveys have found negligible bottom type change from year to year. Ongoing surveys being conducted by Coastal Carolina University will provide additional information on the extent of hard-bottom areas and determine whether or not they support assemblages of live-bottom species.

The current expansion proposal is the result of coordination between USACE, EPA and SCDNR to identify existing monitoring sites that are suitable for expansion and identifying monitoring sites beyond the new area. While there are some data points that indicate higher levels of fines and/or changes to benthic species composition compared to unaltered sites, these data points are likely attributable to "mis-dumps" and issues with initial berm construction. It is worth noting that none of these mis-dumps have been documented to have occurred on hard bottom habitat and further berm issues can be prevented during expansion construction. All of the issues raised at the September 18, 2012 Interagency Coordination Team (ICT) meeting at the Charleston District Army Corps of Engineers are capable of being addressed through pre and post construction monitoring.

The SCPA supports timely and responsible expansion of the ODMDS to accommodate dredge material from the Post 45 project. The removal of 4-6 million cubic yards of dredge material from the existing ODMDS for beneficial reuse in the construction of the new terminal at the former Charleston Navy Base will minimize and reduce the size of the needed expansion. In conjunction with expansion to the north, south and east, SCPA supports the proposed de-designation on the west side of the ODMDS.
SCPA appreciates the opportunity to comment on the EA. The substantial amount of existing data combined with the long, successful history of collaboration between the State and Federal resource agencies regarding the ODMDS; provides great confidence that we will be able to provide the President and the people of the United States the outcome they require: a deeper harbor and responsibly expanded ODMDS by 2015.

Respectfully submitted,

Patrick Moore
Environmental Stewardship Manager
South Carolina State Ports Authority
843-577-8175

Cc:  SCDHEC/ EQC
     SCDHEC/ OCRM
     SCDNR
     USACE
     USFWS
     NOAA/NMFS
February 26, 2013  F/SER47:JD/pw

(Sent via Electronic Mail)

Mr. Gary W. Collins
USEPA Region 4
61 Forsyth Street
Atlanta, GA 30303

Dear Mr. Collins:

NOAA’s National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS) reviewed the Notice of Intent (NOI), dated December 31, 2012, from the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers and U.S. Environmental Protection Agency to prepare an Environmental Assessment (EA) for the expansion of the Charleston Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site (ODMDS). The study area is approximately 7.18 square miles (4.04 square miles are within the current ODMDS and 3.14 square miles are outside the current ODMDS) and the expansion would be in anticipation of dredged material from the deepening of Charleston Harbor. The final size of the expanded Charleston ODMDS would be based on capacity models. The NOI indicates the action alternatives would expand the Charleston ODMDS northward, southward, and/or eastward.

On February 13, 2013, the South Carolina Department of Natural Resources (SCDNR) submitted comments on the NOI outlining their previous monitoring of the Charleston ODMDS and concerns about impacts to live/hardbottom communities from the proposed expansion. The fishery management plan prepared by the South Atlantic Fishery Management Council for the snapper/grouper complex designates hardbottom as a Habitat Area of Particular Concern (HAPC) because of the importance of hardbottom habitat to various life stages of these species. While NMFS would be concerned about adverse impacts to all marine habitats from the Charleston ODMDS expansion, impacts to hardbottom would be of highest concern.

Existing side-scan sonar and sub-bottom profiling data from SCDNR and Coastal Carolina University show hardbottom ledges northward and westward of the current disposal area, and possibly to the south. Ongoing acoustic and visual surveys will provide additional information on the extent and quality of these hardbottom areas. If the hardbottom supports extensive benthic communities, every effort should be made to avoid expanding the Charleston ODMDS into these areas and the new management plan for the ODMDS should include substantial measures to reduce the likelihood that disposed dredged material would migrate into these habitats.
We appreciate the opportunity to provide these comments. Please direct related correspondence to the attention of Ms. Jaclyn Daly at our Charleston Area Office. She may be reached at (843) 762-8610 or by e-mail at Jaclyn.Daly@noaa.gov.

Sincerely,

/ for

Virginia M. Fay
Assistant Regional Administrator
Habitat Conservation Division

cc:

EPA, Collins.Garyw@epa.gov
COE, Mark.J.Messersmith@usace.army.mil
SCDNR, WndtP@dnr.sc.gov
SAFMC, Roger.Pugliese@safmc.net
F/SER4, David.Dale@noaa.gov
F/SER47, Jaclyn.Daly@noaa.gov
Elizabeth Johnson, Deputy SHPO  
South Carolina Department of Archives and History  
8301 Parklane Road  
Columbia, South Carolina 29223

Dear Ms. Johnson:

Pursuant to the National Environmental Policy Act, the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Region 4, in cooperation with the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) Charleston District has prepared a Draft Environmental Assessment (EA) for modification of the Charleston Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site (ODMDS) offshore Charleston, South Carolina. An electronic copy of this document is included on the enclosed compact disc and is available to agencies and the public online at:

http://www2.epa.gov/sc/public-notice-draft-EA-Charleston-ODMDS

or

http://www.sac.usace.army.mil/Missions/CivilWorks/NEPADocuments

The Draft EA provides the information necessary to evaluate need and alternatives to the modification of the ODMDS pursuant to Section 102 of the Marine Protection, Research and Sanctuaries Act (MPRSA) of 1972, as amended. The purpose of the ODMDS modification is to accommodate disposal of dredged material from the planned Charleston Harbor Deepening Study (called "Post 45"), as well as maintenance dredged material and dredged material from non-Federal entities. The Draft EA considers six alternatives for meeting continued and anticipated dredging needs. Two alternatives are carried forward and evaluated in detail. Alternative 1 is the preferred alternative and reflects a reconfiguration of the ODMDS by expanding the current authorized disposal zone. The current ODMDS is 12.1 square nautical miles ($nmi^2$) in area, while the current authorized disposal zone is 3 $nmi^2$. The proposed modification will result in the reconfigured ODMDS with an area of 7.4 $nmi^2$, with no proposed restrictive disposal zone delineated. All dredged material must meet the environmental criteria established in the EPA's implementing regulations for MPRSA.

Through this letter, the EPA is requesting your review of the Draft EA and Draft Site Management and Monitoring Plan (see Appendix C of the Draft EA) and any comments you may have pursuant to Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act. I understand the USACE has coordinated with your staff (Rebecca Dobrasko and Emily Dale) and the SC Institute for Anthropology and Archaeology on underwater investigations related to this project and associated with the Post 45 study. Your staff provided valuable insight into developing proper scopes of work and in ensuring the archaeological reports were quality documents.
The EPA would appreciate a response to this letter by January 19, 2016. If you have any questions regarding this matter, please contact Mr. Gary Collins at (404) 562-9395 or collins.garyw@epa.gov.

Sincerely,

[Signature]

Thomas McGill
Chief
Oceans, Wetlands & Streams Protection Branch

Enclosure

cc: Mr. Bret Walters, USACE/SAC/Planning (via email, w/o enclosure)
    Mr. Mark Messersmith, USACE/SAC/Planning (via email, w/o enclosure)
Mr. Bob Perry  
Director of Environmental Programs  
South Carolina Department of Natural Resources  
P. O. Box 167  
Columbia, South Carolina 29202

Dear Mr. Perry:

Pursuant to the National Environmental Policy Act, the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Region 4, in cooperation with the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) Charleston District has prepared a Draft Environmental Assessment (EA) for modification of the Charleston Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site (ODMDS) offshore Charleston, South Carolina. An electronic copy of this document is included on the enclosed compact disc and is available to agencies and the public online at:

http://www2.epa.gov/sc/public-notice-draft-EA-Charleston-ODMDS

or

http://www.sac.usace.army.mil/Missions/CivilWorks/NEPADocuments

The Draft EA provides the information necessary to evaluate need and alternatives to the modification of the ODMDS pursuant to Section 102 of the Marine Protection, Research and Sanctuaries Act (MPRSA) of 1972, as amended. The purpose of the ODMDS modification is to accommodate disposal of dredged material from the planned Charleston Harbor Deepening Study (called “Post 45”), as well as maintenance dredged material and dredged material from non-Federal entities. The Draft EA considers six alternatives for meeting continued and anticipated dredging needs. Two alternatives are carried forward and evaluated in detail. Alternative 1 is the preferred alternative and reflects a reconfiguration of the ODMDS by expanding the current authorized disposal zone. The current ODMDS is 12.1 square nautical miles (nmi²) in area, while the current authorized disposal zone is 3 nmi². The proposed modification will result in the reconfigured ODMDS with an area of 7.4 nmi², with no proposed restrictive disposal zone delineated. All dredged material must meet the environmental criteria established in the EPA’s implementing regulations for MPRSA.

Through this letter, the EPA is requesting your review of the Draft EA and Draft Site Management and Monitoring Plan (see Appendix C of the Draft EA) and any comments you may have.
The EPA would appreciate a response to this letter by January 19, 2016. If you have any questions regarding this matter, please contact Mr. Gary Collins at (404) 562-9395 or collins.garyw@epa.gov.

Sincerely,

Thomas McGill
Chief
Oceans, Wetlands & Streams Protection Branch

Enclosure

cc: Ms. Priscilla H. Wendt, SCDNR (via email, w/o enclosure)
    Dr. Denise Sanger, SCDNR (via email, w/o enclosure)
    Mr. Bret Walters, USACE/SAC/Planning (via email, w/o enclosure)
    Mr. Mark Messersmith, USACE/SAC/Planning (via email, w/o enclosure)
Mr. Thomas McCoy  
Field Supervisor  
U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service  
176 Croghan Spur Road, Suite 200  
Charleston, South Carolina  29407  

Dear Mr. McCoy:  

Pursuant to the National Environmental Policy Act, the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Region 4, in cooperation with the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) Charleston District has prepared a Draft Environmental Assessment (EA) for modification of the Charleston Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site (ODMDS) offshore Charleston, South Carolina. An electronic copy of this document is included on the enclosed compact disc and is available to agencies and the public online at:  

http://www2.epa.gov/sc/public-notice-draft-EA-Charleston-ODMDS  

or  

http://www.sac.usace.army.mil/Missions/CivilWorks/NEPADocuments  

The Draft EA provides the information necessary to evaluate need and alternatives to the modification of the ODMDS pursuant to Section 102 of the Marine Protection, Research and Sanctuaries Act (MPRSA) of 1972, as amended. The purpose of the ODMDS modification is to accommodate disposal of dredged material from the planned Charleston Harbor Deepening Study (called “Post 45”), as well as maintenance dredged material and dredged material from non-Federal entities. The Draft EA considers six alternatives for meeting continued and anticipated dredging needs. Two alternatives are carried forward and evaluated in detail. Alternative 1 is the preferred alternative and reflects a reconfiguration of the ODMDS by expanding the current authorized disposal zone. The current ODMDS is 12.1 square nautical miles ($\text{nmi}^2$) in area, while the current authorized disposal zone is 3 $\text{nmi}^2$. The proposed modification will result in the reconfigured ODMDS with an area of 7.4 $\text{nmi}^2$, with no proposed restrictive disposal zone delineated. All dredged material must meet the environmental criteria established in the EPA’s implementing regulations for MPRSA.  

Through this letter, the EPA is requesting your review of the Draft EA and Draft Site Management and Monitoring Plan (see Appendix C of the Draft EA) and any comments you may have. In addition, we are requesting your concurrence with the EPA’s determination that the preferred alternative regarding the modification of the ODMDS is not likely to adversely affect federally-listed endangered or threatened species or critical habitat, pursuant to the Endangered Species Act (ESA). Our Biological Assessment, which describes the basis for our determination is incorporated into the Draft EA and organized in a
manner which we believe will be convenient for your review. Accordingly, we do not anticipate that formal consultation under ESA is warranted.

The EPA would appreciate a response to this letter by January 19, 2016. If you have any questions regarding this matter, please contact Mr. Gary Collins at (404) 562-9395 or collins.garyw@epa.gov.

Sincerely,

[Signature]

Thomas McGill
Chief
Oceans, Wetlands & Streams Protection Branch

Enclosure

cc: Mr. Bret Walters, USACE/SAC/Planning (via email, w/o enclosure)
    Mr. Mark Messersmith, USACE/SAC/Planning (via email, w/o enclosure)
Mr. Curtis Joyner  
South Carolina Department of Health and Environmental Control  
Office of Ocean and Coastal Resource Management  
1362 McMillan Avenue - Suite 400  
Charleston, South Carolina  29405

Dear Mr. Joyner:

Pursuant to the National Environmental Policy Act, the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Region 4, in cooperation with the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) Charleston District has prepared a Draft Environmental Assessment (EA) for modification of the Charleston Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site (ODMDS) offshore Charleston, South Carolina. An electronic copy of this document is included on the enclosed compact disc and is available to agencies and the public online at:

http://www2.epa.gov/sc/public-notice-draft-EA-Charleston-ODMDS

or

http://www.sac.usace.army.mil/Missions/CivilWorks/NEPADocuments

The Draft EA provides the information necessary to evaluate need and alternatives to the modification of the ODMDS pursuant to Section 102 of the Marine Protection, Research and Sanctuaries Act (MPRSA) of 1972, as amended. The purpose of the ODMDS modification is to accommodate disposal of dredged material from the planned Charleston Harbor Deepening Study (called “Post 45”), as well as maintenance dredged material and dredged material from non-Federal entities. The Draft EA considers six alternatives for meeting continued and anticipated dredging needs. Two alternatives are carried forward and evaluated in detail. Alternative 1 is the preferred alternative and reflects a reconfiguration of the ODMDS by expanding the current authorized disposal zone. The current ODMDS is 12.1 square nautical miles (nmi²) in area, while the current authorized disposal zone is 3 nmi². The proposed modification will result in the reconfigured ODMDS with an area of 7.4 nmi², with no proposed restrictive disposal zone delineated. All dredged material must meet the environmental criteria established in the EPA’s implementing regulations for MPRSA.

Through this letter, the EPA is requesting your review and any comments you may have regarding the Draft EA, the Draft Site Management and Monitoring Plan (see Appendix C of the Draft EA) and the Federal Consistency Evaluation pursuant to the Coastal Zone Management Act (see Appendix E of the Draft EA). As described in the Draft EA, the EPA has determined that that the preferred alternative regarding the modification of the ODMDS is consistent to the maximum extent practicable with the State coastal management program.
The EPA would appreciate a response to this letter by January 19, 2016. If you have any questions regarding this matter, please contact Mr. Gary Collins at (404) 562-9395 or collins.garyw@epa.gov.

Sincerely,

Thomas McGill
Chief
Oceans, Wetlands & Streams Protection Branch

Enclosure

cc: Mr. Blair Williams, SCDHEC/OOCR (via email, w/o enclosure)
   Mr. Bret Walters, USACE/SAC/Planning (via email, w/o enclosure)
   Mr. Mark Messersmith, USACE/SAC/Planning (via email, w/o enclosure)
Mr. David M. Bernhart  
Assistant Regional Administrator for Protected Resources  
Protected Resources Division  
National Marine Fisheries Service  
263 13th South  
St. Petersburg, FL  33701

Dear Mr. Bernhart:

Pursuant to the National Environmental Policy Act, the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Region 4, in cooperation with the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) Charleston District has prepared a Draft Environmental Assessment (EA) for modification of the Charleston Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site (ODMDS) offshore Charleston, South Carolina. An electronic copy of this document is included on the enclosed compact disc and is available to agencies and the public online at:

http://www2.epa.gov/sc/public-notice-draft-EA-Charleston-ODMDS

or

http://www.sac.usace.army.mil/Missions/CivilWorks/NEPADocuments

The Draft EA provides the information necessary to evaluate need and alternatives to the modification of the ODMDS pursuant to Section 102 of the Marine Protection, Research and Sanctuaries Act (MPRSA) of 1972, as amended. The purpose of the ODMDS modification is to accommodate disposal of dredged material from the planned Charleston Harbor Deepening Study (called “Post 45”), as well as maintenance dredged material and dredged material from non-Federal entities. The Draft EA considers six alternatives for meeting continued and anticipated dredging needs. Two alternatives are carried forward and evaluated in detail. Alternative 1 is the preferred alternative and reflects a reconfiguration of the ODMDS by expanding the current authorized disposal zone. The current ODMDS is 12.1 square nautical miles (nmi²) in area, while the current authorized disposal zone is 3 nmi². The proposed modification will result in the reconfigured ODMDS with an area of 7.4 nmi², with no proposed restrictive disposal zone delineated. All dredged material must meet the environmental criteria established in the EPA’s implementing regulations for MPRSA.

Through this letter, the EPA is requesting your review of the Draft EA and Draft Site Management and Monitoring Plan (see Appendix C of the Draft EA) and any comments you may have. In addition, we are requesting your concurrence with the EPA’s determination that the preferred alternative regarding the modification of the ODMDS is not likely to adversely affect federally-listed endangered or threatened species or critical habitat, pursuant to the Endangered Species Act (ESA). Our Biological Assessment, which describes the basis for our determination is incorporated into the Draft EA and organized in a
manner which we believe will be convenient for your review. Accordingly, we do not anticipate that formal consultation under ESA is warranted.

The EPA would appreciate a response to this letter by January 19, 2016. If you have any questions regarding this matter, please contact Mr. Gary Collins at (404) 562-9395 or collins.garyw@epa.gov.

Sincerely,

Thomas McGill
Chief
Oceans, Wetlands & Streams Protection Branch

Enclosure

cc: Dr. Pace Wilber, NOAA Habitat Conservation Division (via email, w/o enclosure)
    Mr. Bret Walters, USACE/SAC/Planning (via email, w/o enclosure)
    Mr. Mark Messersmith, USACE/SAC/Planning (via email, w/o enclosure)
Dr. Pace Wilber  
NOAA Habitat Conservation Division  
National Marine Fisheries Service  
219 Fort Johnson Road  
Charleston, South Carolina  29412-9110

Dear Dr. Wilber:

Pursuant to the National Environmental Policy Act, the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Region 4, in cooperation with the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) Charleston District has prepared a Draft Environmental Assessment (EA) for modification of the Charleston Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site (ODMDS) offshore Charleston, South Carolina. An electronic copy of this document is included on the enclosed compact disc and is available to agencies and the public online at:

http://www2.epa.gov/sc/public-notice-draft-EA-Charleston-ODMDS

or

http://www.sac.usace.army.mil/Missions/CivilWorks/NEPADocuments

The Draft EA provides the information necessary to evaluate need and alternatives to the modification of the ODMDS pursuant to Section 102 of the Marine Protection, Research and Sanctuaries Act (MPRSA) of 1972, as amended. The purpose of the ODMDS modification is to accommodate disposal of dredged material from the planned Charleston Harbor Deepening Study (called "Post 45"), as well as maintenance dredged material and dredged material from non-Federal entities. The Draft EA considers six alternatives for meeting continued and anticipated dredging needs. Two alternatives are carried forward and evaluated in detail. Alternative 1 is the preferred alternative and reflects a reconfiguration of the ODMDS by expanding the current authorized disposal zone. The current ODMDS is 12.1 square nautical miles (nmi²) in area, while the current authorized disposal zone is 3 nmi². The proposed modification will result in the reconfigured ODMDS with an area of 7.4 nmi², with no proposed restrictive disposal zone delineated. All dredged material must meet the environmental criteria established in the EPA’s implementing regulations for MPRSA.

Through this letter, the EPA is requesting your review of the Draft EA and Draft Site Management and Monitoring Plan (see Appendix C of the Draft EA) and any comments you may have. Pursuant to the Magnuson-Stevens Act, the EPA has determined that the preferred alternative regarding the modification of the ODMDS will not significantly affect managed species or Essential Fish Habitat (EFH). Our EFH Assessment is incorporated into the Draft EA and organized in a manner which we believe will be convenient for your review.
The EPA would appreciate a response to this letter by January 19, 2016. If you have any questions regarding this matter, please contact Mr. Gary Collins at (404) 562-9395 or collins.garyw@epa.gov.

Sincerely,

[Signature]

Thomas McGill
Chief
Oceans, Wetlands & Streams Protection Branch

Enclosure

cc: Mr. David Bernhart, NOAA Protected Resources Division (via email, w/o enclosure)
    Mr. Bret Walters, USACE/SAC/Planning (via email, w/o enclosure)
    Mr. Mark Messersmith, USACE/SAC/Planning (via email, w/o enclosure)
Mr. Thomas McGill, Chief  
Oceans, Wetlands and Stream Protection Branch  
U.S. Environmental Protection Agency  
Atlanta Federal Center  
61 Forsyth Street  
Atlanta, GA 30303-8960

Re: Draft Environmental Analysis, Modification to Ocean Dredge Material Disposal Site,  
Charleston, SC, FWS Log No. 2016-CPA-0046

Dear Mr. McGill:

The U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (Service) has received the draft Environmental Assessment (EA) for the modification of the Ocean Dredge Material Disposal Site (ODMDS) located offshore from Charleston South Carolina. The ODMDS is to be modified to accommodate disposal of material dredged from the planned Charleston Harbor Deepening. In addition, the modified ODMDS will be able to accommodate material from other future dredging activities. Pursuant to the Endangered Species Act of 1973 (ESA), the Environmental Protection Agency is requesting concurrence with their determination that modifying the ODMDS is not likely to adversely affect federally listed species or adversely modify designated critical habitat.

The entire project will occur several miles offshore from Charleston, South Carolina, and with the exception of the West Indian manatee (Trichechus manatus) and marine turtles, no Federal trust resources managed by the Service are known to occur in the vicinity of the project. Potential impacts to the manatee and sea turtles would result from operational activities associated with the ODMDS modification. The placement of fill on the sea floor is likely to result in sediment plumes around the work area. These plumes should quickly disperse; however, they may disorient and disrupt foraging of manatees or sea turtles should they come in contact with the turbidity. The EA should include the use of dedicated spotters or monitors on all vessels working in the ODMDS area to notify operators if one or more of these species are in the work area. Dredge and fill activities should be suspended until the species are clear of potential harm.
Based on our review of the information received, and of the project parameters, the Service concurs with your determination that the proposed modification of the ODMDS is not likely to adversely affect the West Indian manatee. We recommend you contact the NOAA – Protected Services Division for consultation requirements regarding the Atlantic and shortnose sturgeon as well as sea turtles and cetaceans that may be in the project area. Please note that due to obligations under the ESA the potential impacts of this project must be reconsidered if: (1) new information reveals impacts of this identified action may affect any listed species or critical habitat in a manner not previously considered; (2) this action is subsequently modified in a manner, which was not considered in this assessment; or (3) a new species is listed or critical habitat is designated that may be affected by the identified action.

The Service appreciates the opportunity to provide comments on the Draft EA, and we look forward to continued involvement in the development of this project. If you have any questions on the Service’s comments please contact Mr. Mark Caldwell at 843-727-4707 ext. 215, and reference FWS Log No. 2016-CPA-0046.

Sincerely,

Thomas D. McCoy
Field Supervisor

TDM/MAC
Modification of the Charleston ODMDS

LEAD AGENCY: U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Region 4
COOPERATING AGENCY: U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Charleston District

Outline

- Proposed Action – purpose and need
- Review NEPA/Section 102 site modification process
- Review alternatives
- Summarize potential environmental and socioeconomic impacts of proposed action
- Discuss rationale for selection of preferred alternative
- Project timeline
Purpose and Need

- **Proposed Action:** USACE is requesting an MPRSA Section 102 site modification of the existing Charleston ODMDS.
- **Purpose:** Provide a long-term and environmentally acceptable site for disposal of dredged material (maintenance and new work)
- **Need:** Based on existing ODMDS capacity, increases in new work and maintenance dredging volumes, limited capacity at existing CDFs, limited beneficial use options

Disposal Needs and ODMDS Capacity

**Estimated Volume of New Work and Maintenance Material to Be Disposed of in the Charleston ODMDS during a 25-year Timeframe**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Material</th>
<th>New Work (mcy)</th>
<th>O&amp;M (mcy)</th>
<th>Total (mcy)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 to 25-year estimate</td>
<td>31.2</td>
<td>34.4</td>
<td>65.6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- 2012 estimated ODMDS capacity ~25 to 29 mcy
- Will provide capacity for ~21 years of maintenance material, but will not accommodate Post 45 new work material
- Therefore, ODMDS needs to be modified to accommodate both new work and maintenance material.
Charleston ODMDS – History/Background

Site Designation Process

- USACE determines a Need and Requests EPA designate or modify a Disposal Site (USACE)
- Site Characterization Studies/Surveys
- NEPA EIS/EA
  - 5 General Criteria 40 CFR 228.5
    - Avoid areas of existing fisheries/shellfisheries (EFH)
    - Maintain ambient water quality conditions before reaching any beach, shoreline, marine sanctuary, or geographically limited fishery
    - Limit size to localize impacts and implement effective monitoring program
    - Locate beyond the continental shelf or in areas historically used for dumping.
  - 11 Specific Criteria 40 CFR 228.6
- Proposed and Final Rulemaking
- Total Time: > 2.5 years
Ocean Disposal Site Designation Activities

- Water Quality Studies [40CFR228.13(d)]
- Benthic Characterizations [40CFR228.13(e)]
- Habitat Mapping [40CFR228.5(a)]
  - Sidescan Sonar
  - Video
- Current & Wave Measurements [40CFR228.13(f)]

NEPA Considerations

- Threatened and Endangered Species (e.g., large whales, sea turtles, sturgeon)
- Hardbottoms and other geographically limited benthic habitats
- Essential Fish Habitat
- Commercial Fisheries (e.g., shrimping)
- Socioeconomic Considerations
- Recreation (e.g., artificial reefs)
- Cultural Resources
- Mineral and Energy Resources
- Shipping Lanes, Navigation Restrictions
Scoping Comments

SCDNR/NMFS recommendations:

- Maximize the usefulness of existing data.
- Minimize the extent of any unavoidable impacts to hardbottom habitat.
- Extend the existing berm to include the west and south sides of the expanded disposal area to prevent the migration of disposed dredged material into hardbottom areas.
- Construct a new berm along the north side of the expanded disposal area if substantial areas of live-bottom habitat are found in the cells north of the disposal area.
- Minimize encroachment into previously undisturbed soft-bottom areas to the extent possible.
- Conduct capacity computer modeling to determine the size of the expansion area needed to accommodate the anticipated volume of new work and maintenance material from the Charleston Harbor Deepening Project.
- Limit expansion to the smallest area needed to achieve this goal while also maintaining a statistically comparable monitoring schematic with SCDNR.
- Avoid expansion into monitoring cells D11 and D12 if possible (eastern areas identified during the NOI where there was potential for HB).

Alternatives

The alternatives considered in the Draft EA include:

- No Action Alternative
- **Alternative 1:** Modification of the Charleston ODMDS (Preferred)
- Alternative 2: Use Existing Charleston ODMDS and Remove Disposal Zone Restriction
- Alternative 3: New ODMDS North of the Entrance Channel
- Alternative 4: Disposal Off the Continental Shelf
- Alternative 5: Upland Disposal
- Alternative 6: Beach Nourishment, Nearshore Placement, and Other Beneficial Uses
Existing Charleston ODMDS – No Action Alternative

- Current disposal zone = 4 mi²
- 2012 estimated capacity = ~25 to 29 mcy
- Post 45 volume of approx. 31 mcy will use existing capacity
- Not enough capacity for long-term management of O&M material (1.4 mcy/yr)
- Could limit long-term use of site which could impact dredging and navigation operations

Alternative 1 – Modification of the Charleston ODMDS (Preferred)

- Increase ODMDS from 4 mi² (green polygon) to 9.8 mi² (gold polygon)
- De-designate 10.4 mi² of restricted disposal area (blue hatch polygon)
- Overall footprint decreased from 15.1 mi² to 9.8 mi²
- Dump zone (pink polygon) will have buffers
- U-shaped berm will be constructed
**Alternative 1 – Modeling Results**

Depth inside Alternative 1 Boundaries after the 25-year MPFATE-LTFATE Simulations  
Source: USACE 2015

**Alternative 2 – Use of Existing Charleston ODMDS and Remove Disposal Zone Restriction**

- Remove 4-mi$^2$ disposal zone restriction, use existing ODMDS (blue polygon)
- Would require new EPA ruling and further delineation of HB in western portion of site
- May impact shrimping grounds and sand borrow areas
Alternative 3 – New ODMDS North of the Entrance Channel

- New ODMDS north of channel (gold polygon)
- Would require additional HB and cultural surveys
- Concern about potential sediment transport in channel
- Further offshore would result in increase transit time and fuel costs
- Close proximity to anchorage areas

Other Alternatives Considered But Eliminated

- Alternative 4: Disposal Off the Continental Shelf
  - Transporting material and performing long-term monitoring is not economically or operationally feasible
- Alternative 5: Upland Disposal
  - Upland capacity and land for new disposal areas are limited and environmental impacts may be unacceptable or require too much mitigation
- Alternative 6: Beach Nourishment, Nearshore Placement, and Other Beneficial Uses
  - Historically, the majority of the maintenance material dredged from the Charleston Harbor Navigation Project is not suitable for beach nourishment, nearshore placement, or other beneficial uses. USACE is assessing Lower Harbor material under CAP 204.
Threatened & Endangered Species
Summary of Effects on Listed Species and Critical Habitat

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Species</th>
<th>ESA Status</th>
<th>Effects Determination</th>
<th>Occurrence in Project Area</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>SEA TURTLES</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Threatened</td>
<td>May affect, not likely to adversely affect</td>
<td>Occasional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loggerhead</td>
<td>Threatened*</td>
<td>May affect, not likely to adversely affect</td>
<td>Common</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leatherback</td>
<td>Endangered</td>
<td>Not likely to adversely affect</td>
<td>Rare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kemp’s Ridley</td>
<td>Endangered</td>
<td>May affect, not likely to adversely affect</td>
<td>Occasional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hawksbill</td>
<td>Endangered</td>
<td>Not likely to adversely affect</td>
<td>Rare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MARINE MAMMALS</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>North Atlantic right whale</td>
<td>Endangered**</td>
<td>May affect, not likely to adversely affect</td>
<td>Occasional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Humpback whale</td>
<td>Endangered</td>
<td>May affect, not likely to adversely affect</td>
<td>Occasional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>West Indian Manatee</td>
<td>Endangered</td>
<td>Not likely to adversely affect</td>
<td>Rare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FISH</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shortnose sturgeon</td>
<td>Endangered</td>
<td>May affect, not likely to adversely affect</td>
<td>Rare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atlantic sturgeon</td>
<td>Endangered</td>
<td>May affect, not likely to adversely affect</td>
<td>Occasional</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *Critical habitat designated in the nearshore area, south of the entrance channel
- **Critical habitat proposed in the project area

Summary of Potential Impacts:
- Temporary and minor impacts during disposal operations
- Increased turbidity and sedimentation
- Loss of sessile biota and finfish assemblages
- Loss of productivity

Measures to Quantify and Minimize Impacts:
- **Survey** – results indicate 1.6 acres of hardbottom within the ODMDS.
- **Berm** - minimize sediment transport and create additional hardbottom habitat and EFH (~427 acres).
- **Buffer** - 3000-ft along northern perimeter, 2000-ft on other sides, modified southern boundary during coordination
- **Modeling** - results indicate depths of sediment deposited outside the ODMDS will not exceed the 5 cm deposition contour.

Conclusion:
No significant impacts to hardbottoms or EFH are expected as a result of the proposed action.

Hardbottom Habitat/EFH

Summary of Potential Impacts:
- Temporary and minor impacts during disposal operations
- Increased turbidity and sedimentation
- Loss of sessile biota and finfish assemblages
- Loss of productivity

Measures to Quantify and Minimize Impacts:
- **Survey** – results indicate 1.6 acres of hardbottom within the ODMDS.
- **Berm** - minimize sediment transport and create additional hardbottom habitat and EFH (~427 acres).
- **Buffer** - 3000-ft along northern perimeter, 2000-ft on other sides, modified southern boundary during coordination
- **Modeling** - results indicate depths of sediment deposited outside the ODMDS will not exceed the 5 cm deposition contour.

Conclusion:
No significant impacts to hardbottoms or EFH are expected as a result of the proposed action.
Alternative 1 – Rationale for Selection

- Meets EPA's general and specific criteria for site selection.
- Provides a long-term ocean disposal option in an area historically used for dredged material disposal.
- Can be managed as a contiguous site and make use of existing monitoring data.
- Minimizes environmental and socioeconomic impacts—removed from beaches, heavily used shrimping grounds, shipping lanes, hardbottom, artificial reefs, and sand borrow areas.
- 2013 surveys concluded site does not contain historic or cultural resources.
- Formally de-designates 10.4 mi² of restricted disposal area that contains widespread hardbottom habitat.
- Creates additional fish and benthic habitat as a result of berm construction.

Timeline

- Release Draft EA: December 4, 2015
- End of comment period: January 19, 2016
- Release of Final EA/Preliminary FONSI: March 1, 2016
- Publish Draft Rule: March 15, 2016
- End of Comment Period on Draft Rule: May 1, 2016
- Finalize SMMP: May 1, 2016
- Publish Final Rule: May 28, 2016
- Site Modification: June 28, 2016
Contact Information

USACE Charleston District
Mark Messersmith
Mark.J.Messersmith@usace.army.mil
(843) 329-8162

EPA Region 4
Gary Collins
collins.garyw@epa.gov
(404) 562-9395
Meeting Minutes

Charleston ODMDS Modification EA – Resource Agency Meeting
January 7, 2016, at USACE Offices in Charleston, SC

ATTENDEES:

USACE:
Mark Messersmith – Biologist/ODMDS Modification Lead, Planning and Environmental Branch
Alan Shirey – Environmental Engineer, Planning and Environmental Branch
Sara Brown – Hydrologic Engineer
Holly Carpenter – Post 45 Project Manager
Jeffery Fersner – Cost Engineer
Scott Glass – Navigation Chief
Layla Kashlan (phone-in) – ODMDS LTFATE and MDFATE Modeling, Wilmington District
Brian Williams – Former Post 45 Project Manager
Phil Wolf – Navigation Spatial Data Specialist

USEPA Region 4:
Gary Collins – Project Manager/Ocean Dumping Coordinator
Thomas McGill – Chief, Ocean, Wetlands, and Stream Protection Branch

NOAA-Fisheries:
Pace Wilber (phone-in) – Habitat Conservation Division, Atlantic Branch

USFWS:
Mark Caldwell – Biologist, SC Field Office

BOEM:
Doug Piatkowski (phone-in) – Division of Environmental Assessment

NRCS:
Ayana Brown (phone-in) – Engineer

SC DNR:
Denise Sanger – Marine Resources Research Institute

SC DHEC:
Curtis Joyner – Coastal Zone Consistency Section Manager

SC Ports Authority:
Patrick Moore (phone-in) – Environmental Stewardship Manager
Jim Van Ness (phone-in) – Director of Engineering

ANAMAR:
Michelle Rau – Project Manager, Technical Writer for the EA
Jason Seitz – Biologist, Technical Writer for EFH Assessment
AGENDA
Welcome and Introductions
Charleston ODMDS Presentation for Resource Agencies
1. Project Background and Need (Mark Messersmith)
2. ODMDS Modification Process and NEPA (Gary Collins)
3. Discussion of Alternatives Considered and Rationale for Selection of Preferred Alternative (Michelle Rau)
4. Timeline (Gary Collins)
Open Discussion and Questions

SUMMARY OF MEETING MINUTES
Introductions – Led by Mark Messersmith
- Kicked off the meeting with an overview of the project timeline and the agenda for the meeting
- Everyone introduced themselves
- Brief outline of the presentation (Slide 2)

Project Background and Need – Led by Mark Messersmith
Discussed the project background and need (refer to Slides 3 and 4)
- Brief overview of USACE responsibility for navigation channel maintenance and Post 45 project
  - Changes to the channel over the years has resulted in increased need for dredge material disposal capacity
  - Management of maintenance material and the need to have a suitable place to put it
  - Projected changes due to Panama Canal expansion and the Post 45 study to maximize net benefit to the nation
  - Post 45 will result in a large amount of dredged material; therefore, need to modify existing ODMDS due to capacity issues based on new work volumes and 25 years of future maintenance material
  - Capacity within the current ODMDS dump zone is estimated at 25 to 29 mcy. The range is due to potential use of material from the ODMDS for the Port’s terminal expansion. Regardless, there is still not enough capacity to meet long-term maintenance material disposal needs.
- BOEM staff later indicated that the new lease authorizes up to 6 mcy.

Comment: Denise Sanger asked if the 31 mcy of new work material included the berm.
Response: Yes. It does include the volume of material needed for berm construction.

Comment: Denise asked if the estimated 75 mcy of capacity within the modified ODMDS included the berm.
Response: No. The 75 mcy of estimated capacity is the capacity within the 5.1-mi² modified disposal zone. Mark M. further explained that the disposal zone is the smaller polygon (5.1...
(9.8 mi\(^2\)) and is where dumping will occur. The zone is set within the larger polygon (9.8 mi\(^2\)) that represents the ODMDS boundaries. (Refer to Slide 12)

**Comment:** Does the estimated maintenance volume over the next 25 years take into account the increases in shoaling rates as a result of the new work project?

**Response:** Scott Glass confirmed that the maintenance material volume does take into account increased shoaling rates following completion of the new work.

**ODMDS Designation and NEPA Process – Led by Gary Collins**

Discussed the ODMDS modification and NEPA process and some background/history on the Charleston ODMDS (refer to Slides 5 through 7)

- Briefly explained the history of this ODMDS and the modifications made to the boundaries after hardbottom resources were identified in the western portion of the site
- SMMP, SC DNR established monitoring zones, and the value of previous monitoring surveys
- Review the site designation process:
  - Establishing the need for site modification
  - EPA general and specific site selection criteria
  - NEPA process
  - Site designation activities
  - Timeline: 2.5-year minimum time to complete the designation process. It usually takes longer than that, but the previous monitoring work provided much of the baseline data needed to characterize the project area.

**Comment:** Mark Caldwell asked what the 5th general criterion is (only 4 criteria were listed on slide)

**Response:** Gary Collins and Michelle Rau explained that the interim basis criterion does not apply to this project

**Alternatives Considered and Rationale for Selection – Led by Michelle Rau**

Discussed the NEPA process, scoping comments, alternatives considered, and the rationale for selection of the preferred alternative (refer to Slides 8 through 19)

- Briefly listed the resources and uses that were considered during the NEPA process and how that information was used to identify sensitive and incompatible areas
- Reviewed the scoping comments that were received and how concerns regarding hardbottom were addressed by performing additional hardbottom and cultural resource surveys. The survey results were used to help identify a suitable ODMDS modification area that minimizes impacts to hardbottom areas.
- Discussed each alternative that was considered in the draft EA and the pros and cons associated with each one
- The people who called in were unexpectedly disconnected. Mark Messersmith re-established phone access. Pace Wilbur said his phone was down for about 10 minutes. Therefore, Michelle Rau went back and reviewed the information that was missed.
Alternative 1 Discussion Questions/Answers

There were some questions and discussion about the berm construction and why no berm is proposed to be constructed on the north end of the modified ODMDS. The rationale is that the scows and barges will be entering the site on the north end and USACE wanted to avoid placing a berm there that could potentially be a hazard to the fully loaded barges and scows. There is a 3000-foot buffer between the disposal zone and the boundary of the ODMDS to help minimize transport outside the ODMDS. There was also concern about leaking scows transiting over hardbottom areas and how that can be avoided. A summary of comments and responses is provided below.

Comments on Berm Construction

Comment: Alan Shirey asked what the estimated size of the berm in Alternative 1 is.
Response: Mark Messersmith stated the berm is estimated at 15000 x 16000 x 600 feet, 3:1 slope, 400 feet across, not to exceed 10 feet high from the seafloor. He also stated that dredging is not an exact science and disposal in that exact configuration cannot be guaranteed. The disposal will likely occur along transect lines with surveys performed to determine if the general dimensions were met.

Comment: Mark Caldwell asked if USACE considered placing a partial berm along the eastern half of the northern boundary as a protective measure for the probable hardbottom located to the north of the modified ODMDS, but keeping it low enough to avoid damage to scows. He mentioned the occurrence of probable hardbottom areas north of the ODMDS and concern for potential transport of material onto those resources.
Response: Mark Messersmith explained that the prevailing currents are generally from NW to SE so transport of sediment from the ODMDS to the north is not as likely. A berm along the northern boundary may impede the travel efficiency of scows.

Comment: Denise Sanger suggested that scow traffic to and from the modified site via the northern boundary could impact potential hardbottom located just north of the site during transit.
Response: Alan Shirey explained that while there used to be issues from leaky scows, they now had improved tracking and monitoring of scow travel, and scow maintenance has also improved, so this is not as much of an issue as it once was. Gary Collins commented about past problems with misdumps due to a malfunctioning scow that would open over hardbottom during transit, but this issue has not occurred in a while.

Comment: Denise stated that SC DNR continues to recommend that scows/barges avoid transiting over hardbottom areas during disposal operations to avoid potential issues with leaking/spillage of material during transit. She further suggested clarification in the SMMP for a new path for the scows so as to avoid hardbottom areas. The path currently in the SMMP goes through the hardbottom area to the west of the site.
Response: Mark asked Denise to submit this as a comment and it can be addressed in the response to comments in the Final EA and in the SMMP. Dredging contractors do need some flexibility in their transit routes for safety and efficiency so that needs to be considered when defining a transit route.

Comment: Denise asked if the new berm continues beyond the length of the old berm.
Response: Yes, it does continue beyond the old berm. It will be constructed south of the old L-shaped berm. The berm is estimated to be about 427 acres. Mark Messersmith stated that this was just a rough estimate of the berm size and dimensions, and the berm may actually be
more patchy and sporadic considering the limitations of material placement over the seafloor and of weather conditions. USACE will provide the dredge contractor with tracks to follow during dumping.

Comment: Pace asked what the draft depths of scows were.
Response: Mark Messersmith stated that scows can be as deep as 25 feet when fully loaded. Jeff Fersner stated that the Glen Edwards split-hull barge has a draft of 28 feet when fully loaded.
Gary Collins stated that weather conditions (waves) can make avoidance of berm impact by scows difficult when they are passing over it.

Comment on penaeid shrimp EFH
Comment: Pace asked where the shrimp EFH is on the Alternative 1 map. It is listed in the legend on the slide.
Response: Michelle Rau explained that the penaeid shrimp EFH is beyond the limits of the map shown, and that it is farther inshore (it’s shown on a larger version of the map included in the Draft EA). It is not within or near the Alternative 1 site.

Comments about leaking scows
Comment: Pace Wilbur mentioned the issue with leaking scows on the Miami project and asked how that would be avoided with this project.
Response: Tom McGill explained that the dredging contractor and disposal operations need to be monitored to avoid leakage from scows and to have systems in place for immediately detecting if scows are leaking.
Tom McGill encouraged Pace Wilbur (and other resource personnel) to send formal written comments to EPA and USACE so they can be documented and fully addressed in the Final EA.
Mark Messersmith stated that the SMMP could be used to address concerns related to leaking scows and transit routes, not necessarily the EA. The SMMP is included as an appendix to the EA.
Gary Collins re-stated that leaking scows are not nearly as much of an issue off Charleston as they have been in other areas, such as Miami.

Comments on Use of ODMDS by Non-Federal Users
Comment: Mark Caldwell asked if the new dump site will be used for other projects besides Charleston Harbor federal navigation project.
Response: Mark Messersmith explained that the capacity needs provided in the EA are based on Post 45 new work and 25 years of maintenance dredging in the federal channel. However, there is enough buffer built into the capacity to allow non-federal users to use the site.
Alan Shirey and Gary Collins stated that historically, the port authority and other entities have used the Charleston Harbor ODMDS. Alan further stated that any project that wants ocean disposal must first undergo the rigorous MPRSA sediment testing before material can be determined suitable for ocean disposal.

Comments on Modeling Results
Comment: Pace Wilbur asked how the modeling results for 5-cm sediment contour deposition was verified. He mentioned the use of a SPI camera as a tool to assess deposition of dredged material outside the boundaries of the ODMDS.
Response: Gary Collins explained that while the SPI camera data can help assess deposition, the results can be hard to interpret and the data quality is not always very good. He also acknowledged that modeling tools always have assumptions built in and results are hard to verify. Therefore, there is no 100% guarantee of the ≤5-cm deposition outside the site. However, the site will be monitored periodically to determine if material is migrating outside the boundaries. The SMMP can be updated if needed to address how material is managed in the site.

Mark Messersmith clarified that the ≤5-cm deposition outside the site is for 25 years of disposal (all predicted events during that time) and not just per disposal event.

Comment: Denise Sanger asked where in the disposal zone the dumps were conducted during modeling analysis.

Response: Layla stated that the modeling was conducted with disposal events taking place randomly throughout the disposal zone. This was done to make sure that the -25-foot MLLW and other criteria were not violated.

**Timeline – Led by Gary Collins**

Summarized the timeline for the proposed modification:

- Comments due 19 Jan 2016
- Final EA release with preliminary FONSI 1 Mar 2016
- Publish draft rule 15 Mar 2016
- Comments on rule due 1 May 2016
- Finalize SMMP 1 May 2016 (same date as comments due on draft rule)
- Publish final rule 28 May 2016
- Site modification complete 28 Jun 2016

**Comments on Timeline**

Comment: Denise Sanger asked if comments relating to the new SMMP must be submitted soon.

Response: Gary answered that yes, submit comments on the draft SMMP soon.

Comment: Curtis Joyner asked about coastal zone consistency. “What if these comments lead to a modification of the project in a way that then makes the project inconsistent with coastal zone management?”

Response: Tom McGill said that USACE will work with Curtis and other coastal zone managers to ensure that the project is consistent before the final rule is published. Tom further explained that EPA and USACE are seeking input and that the process is still open. The agency has the option to withhold their determination until all comments are addressed. Tom stressed that although USACE and EPA are very interested in moving forward with this project, they will make sure to adequately address all of the issues of concern.

**Conclusion**

Meeting adjourned at 10:52 hours
From: Piatkowski, Douglas [mailto:douglas.piatkowski@boem.gov]
Sent: Thursday, January 14, 2016 2:12 PM
To: Messersmith, Mark J SAC <Mark.J.Messersmith@usace.army.mil>
Cc: Jennifer Bosyk <Jennifer.Bosyk@boem.gov>; Jennifer Culbertson <Jennifer.Culbertson@boem.gov>; Paul Knorr <paul.knorr@boem.gov>; Brian Krevor <brian.krevor@boem.gov>; Douglas Piatkowski <douglas.piatkowski@boem.gov>; Brian Jordan <Brian.Jordan@boem.gov>
Subject: [EXTERNAL] Fwd: Charleston ODMDS modification EA (EPA and USACE)

Mark,

Thank you for the opportunity to comment on the “Draft Environmental Assessment for Modification of the Charleston Ocean Dredged material Disposal Site (ODMDS), Charleston, South Carolina.” This particular review was focused on content related to BOEM’s Marine Minerals Program (MMP), specifically our current lease agreement with the SC State Ports Authority (SCSPA) for dredging of up to 6 MCY of material for the ODMDS site. Relevant sections of the EA were also shared with BOEM’s subject matter expert for cultural resources as well as a representative from our oil and gas and renewable energy programs. With respect to the Oil and Gas program, attached is recommended revised text from Section 3.15.2. Comments regarding Cultural Resources and renewable energy may be forthcoming and comments regarding the MMP are provided in the ensuing text.

Regarding MMP specific comments, as you are aware, an amended lease agreement with the SCSPA was executed on June 15 2015 (see attached). The negotiated agreement (OCS-A 0477) authorizes up to 6,000,000 cubic yards of outer continental shelf (OCS) sediment resources from the Charleston ODMDS for use in the Charleston Naval Base Container Terminal Project. Two specific borrow areas have been identified within the Charleston ODMDS: the West Excavation Area and the East Excavation Area. The coordinates of these two borrow areas are provided below along with a detailed map attached (Figure 1):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area</th>
<th>Lat.</th>
<th>Long.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>West Excavation Area</td>
<td>32o 39’ 03.88”</td>
<td>79o 45’ 18.87”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>32.65108</td>
<td>79.75315</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lat. (Degrees)

Long.

Lat.

Long.

Area
West Excavation
32° 38' 54.30"
79° 44' 58.43"
32.63905
79.73974

West Excavation
32° 37' 54.05"
79° 45' 37.86"
32.62166
79.76052

West Excavation
32° 38' 03.64"
79° 45' 58.32"
32.63601
79.75972

West Excavation
32° 38' 44.72"
79° 44' 37.96"
32.73745
79.73633

East Excavation
32° 38' 30.05"
79° 44' 06.66"
32.63501
In general, we recommend that the document more specifically reference, where appropriate, the existing lease agreement dated 15 June 2015 and the potential use for up to 6,000,000 cubic yards instead of the current 4-6 MCY projected range based on prior requests. Though the document references the potential removal of this material to support the terminal expansion project it is not clear if it was considered in any of the modeling or whether future disposal actions under the Site Management and Monitoring Plan (SMMP) would be managed to avoid dumping within the currently leased area. As described on page 25 of the EA, “new work and O&M material can be disposed randomly within the ODMDS” with the objective of developing a “relatively flat-topped mound to maximize the ODMDS capacity and reduce transport of material from the ODMDS.” It is recommended that the USACE Charleston District and EPA coordinate with the SCSPA regarding the boundaries of the lease area, their proposed dredging schedule and volumes, and future management of sediment disposal to avoid impacting, where practicable, currently defined areas containing suitable material and facilitate beneficial use of sediment. This recommendation is in accordance with the management objective outlined on page 17/18 of the SMMP (Appendix C) to “provide for beneficial use of dredged material whenever practical.” The SMMP currently states that “no specific disposal technique is required for this site” but that there “is the intent to maximize any advantages of strategic placement of materials.” Recommend that the “site monitoring” section of the SMMP recognize and consider the potential future removal of up to 6 MCY and interest by the SCSPA in a disposal plan that maximizes for future beneficial use.

Thank you again for the opportunity to comment and please contact me if you have any questions.
Jen - See below information about a draft EA for modification of the Charleston ODMDS. The EA is attached and 2 links to it are provided. Would appreciate your eyes on it. Also, we are having a resource agency meeting in early January to present the findings of the EA and get agency comments/thoughts. A "doodle poll" link is provided below to enter your preferred times. We'll make a webinar available for it. No need to travel. Lastly, let's talk today about the beach projects. Sorry Friday didn't work out. Hope all's well.

http://doodle.com/poll/m3gbezbgatay7xs

Subject: Notice of Availability of a Draft Environmental Assessment (Draft EA) of a proposed modification of the Charleston Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site (ODMDS) pursuant to the National Environmental Policy Act and the Marine Protection, Research, and Sanctuaries Act.

Pursuant to the National Environmental Policy Act, the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), Region 4, in cooperation with the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) Charleston District has prepared a Draft Environmental Assessment (EA) on modification of the Charleston Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site (ODMDS) offshore Charleston Harbor, Charleston, South Carolina. This document is available to agencies and the public for a 45-day comment period. Comments will be accepted until January 19, 2016. The draft EA is available online at:

http://www2.epa.gov/sc/public-notice-draft-ea-charleston-odmds
or
http://www.sac.usace.army.mil/Missions/CivilWorks/NEPADocuments

A Notice of Intent (NOI) to prepare an EA for the designation of an expanded ODMDS offshore of Charleston, South Carolina, was published on December 31, 2012, in the Federal Register. The Draft EA was jointly prepared by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Region 4, and the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers Charleston District to fulfill the reporting requirements of the National Environmental Policy Act of 1969, as amended. The EPA is the lead Federal agency and the USACE is a cooperating agency. The Draft EA provides the information necessary to evaluate need and alternatives to the modification of the ODMDS pursuant to Section 102 of the Marine Protection, Research and Sanctuaries Act (MPRSA) of 1972, as amended. The purpose of the ODMDS modification is to accommodate disposal of dredged material from the planned Charleston Harbor Deepening Study (called "Post 45"), as well as maintenance dredged material and dredged material from non-Federal entities. The Draft EA considers six action alternatives for meeting continued and anticipated dredging needs. Two alternatives are carried forward for detailed analysis. Alternative 1 is the preferred alternative. Although it designates a
new ODMDS of approximately 9.8 mi2, it would formally de-designate approximately 10.4 mi2 of the current ODMDS. All planned dredged material for disposal at the ODMDS must meet the environmental criteria established in EPA’s Ocean Dumping Regulations. The Draft EA contains a Draft Site Management and Monitoring Plan (SMMP) (Appendix C). The MPRSA requires that these plans be developed prior to designation with an opportunity for public comment.

The Environmental Protection Agency and the US Army Corps of Engineers, Charleston District encourage public comments within the 45 day review period. All comments will be addressed within the final report. If there are any questions and comments concerning this public notice and EA, please contact Mr. Mark Messersmith, USACE at mark.j.messersmith@usace.army.mil or Mr. Gary Collins, USEPA, at collins.garyw@epa.gov.

Mark Messersmith
Planning and Environmental Branch
US Army Corps of Engineers
Charleston District
69A Hagood Ave
Charleston, SC 29403
(p) (843) 329 - 8162
(f) (843) 329 - 2231
mark.j.messersmith@usace.army.mil

--
Doug Piatkowski
Physical Scientist
douglas.piatkowski@boem.gov

703-787-1833
Department of the Interior, Bureau of Ocean Energy Management Headquarters,
Division of Environmental Assessment

45600 Woodland Road, VAM-OEP
Sterling, VA 20166
http://www.boem.gov/OEP/
With regard to offshore natural gas and oil operations and wind energy resources, the Charleston ODMDS is located within the BOEM South Atlantic Planning Area along the Atlantic seaboard. Currently, there are no oil and gas leases off the Atlantic Coast (Table 3.15-1). However, on June 16, 2014, BOEM published a request for information and comments from Draft Environmental Assessment for Modification of the Charleston ODMDS Industry stakeholders and the public regarding the next-upcoming 2017-2022 Outer Continental Shelf Oil and Gas Leasing Program (Javendel and Murray 2014). The request suggests that the upcoming program may allow drilling off the Atlantic coast by re-opening at least some of the nearly 270 million acres of Atlantic Outer Continental Shelf lands to oil and gas leasing. On January 29, 2015, BOEM released its Draft Proposed 2017-2022 Oil and Gas Leasing Program, which included one sale in 2021 in portions of the Mid- and South Atlantic Planning Areas (80 FR 4941). The Draft Proposed Program is the first step in a multi-stage process to determine areas available for leasing during the 2017-2022 Program. The next step is release of the Proposed Program in early 2016, followed by a Proposed Final Program in late 2016. BOEM has already committed significant resources to support the evaluation of potentially recoverable oil and gas resources in the Mid- and South Atlantic planning areas. In February 2014, BOEM completed a Programmatic Environmental Impact Statement needed for the approval of geological and geophysical surveys that would provide information about the location and extent of oil and gas reserves in those areas (BOEM 2014). BOEM has received several permit applications for geological and geophysical surveys; there are currently no active, approved permits. While no decisions have been made about whether drilling in the Atlantic will ultimately be allowed, data from the surveys will facilitate, among other things, better valuation of potential oil and gas leases in the study areas.

Commented [JRB1]: I would cite the FR notice for the RFI if anything, but there’s not really a need for a citation. The RFI cite is 79 FR 4941.
Figure 1. Detailed Map of the Charleston (ODMDS) Borrow Areas
Third Amendment to BOEM Negotiated Agreement  
No. OCS-A 0477

LEASE BETWEEN

THE BUREAU OF OCEAN ENERGY MANAGEMENT
OF THE DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR

AND

THE SOUTH CAROLINA STATE PORTS AUTHORITY

REGARDING THE USE OF OUTER CONTINENTAL SHELF
SAND RESOURCES

WHEREAS, on March 23, 2010, the Department of the Interior’s Minerals Management Service (MMS) and the South Carolina State Ports Authority (SCSPA, collectively the “Parties”) entered into Negotiated Agreement OCS-A 0477 through a two-party noncompetitive negotiated lease (Lease), which authorized the use of up to 6,000,000 cubic yards of Outer Continental Shelf (OCS) sediment resources from the Charleston Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site (CODMDS) for exclusive use in the Charleston Naval Base Container Terminal Project (hereinafter the "Project");

WHEREAS, the Bureau of Ocean Energy Management (BOEM) is now the successor agency to MMS for purposes of this Negotiated Agreement;

WHEREAS, the Bureau of Safety and Environmental Enforcement (BSEE) is the successor agency to MMS for purposes of inspections and enforcement with regard to operations under this Negotiated Agreement on the OCS;

WHEREAS, on March 21, 2013, the Parties executed the First Amendment to Negotiated Agreement No. OCS-A 0477, which provides that the Lease would expire no later than March 21, 2015;

WHEREAS, on January 21, 2015, the SCSPA submitted a written request to BOEM seeking an extension of the Lease;

WHEREAS, on March 21, 2015, the Parties executed the Second Amendment to Negotiated Agreement No. OCS-A 0477 to provide BOEM with additional time to evaluate the SCSPA’s request for an extension of the Lease, which provides that the Lease will expire no later than June 16, 2015;

WHEREAS, SCSPA has not issued a Notice to Proceed nor begun excavation activities for OCS sediment resources from the CODMDS and is not expected to complete the excavation of OCS sediment resources necessary to complete the Project prior to expiration of the lease;
WHEREAS, the Parties acknowledge that it is within BOEM’s sole discretion to determine whether to extend the Lease; and

THEREFORE, this Third Amendment to BOEM Negotiated Agreement No. OCS-A 0477 modifies the Lease as follows:

Section 3 is replaced with the following:

Section 3. **Effective / Expiration Date of the Lease**

The effective date of the lease is the date on which the signature of the last necessary party to the Lease is executed. This noncompetitive lease will terminate or expire upon:

(1) the SCSPA sending written notice to the Chief, BOEM Marine Minerals Branch, 45600 Woodland Road, Sterling, Virginia 20166, that the SCSPA has received sufficient OCS sand resources to complete the Project, up to 6,000,000 cubic yards; or

(2) three (3) years from the date of execution of the Third Amendment to this lease, whichever occurs first.

Upon execution of the Third Amendment to BOEM Negotiated Agreement No. OCS-A 0477, SCSPA must not proceed with activities in Federal waters related to the Project, unless and until all consultation responsibilities with the National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS) have been satisfied, in accordance with Section 7 of the Endangered Species Act (ESA) and the Chief, BOEM Marine Minerals Branch, has provided written notice to SCSPA granting permission to proceed. Based on the outcome of the consultation, BOEM reserves the right to amend this Lease, as necessary, if additional and/or different mitigation and minimization measures are required by NMFS to comply with the ESA. The SCSPA will require its contractor(s) to implement the mitigation terms, conditions, and measures required by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS), NMFS, BOEM, and South Carolina Department of Health and Environmental Control (SCDHEC) pursuant to applicable Federal and state laws and regulations prior to commencement of activities authorized under this Lease, including extraction, transportation, and placement of OCS sand resources from the CODMDS Borrow Area. The required mitigation terms, conditions, and measures are reflected in the relevant Biological Opinions, Conservation Recommendations, Water Quality Certifications, Consistency Determinations, the Lease and all amendments thereto, and applicable state or local permits.

Furthermore, BOEM reserves the right to review the Project’s “Construction Solicitation and Specifications Plan” and participate in any pre-construction meetings to ensure compliance with any new and/or existing mitigation and minimization measures established as a result of consultation prior to initiation of construction activities. If any unauthorized incidental take of threatened or endangered species should occur within Federal waters by SCPSA or its authorized contractor(s), BOEM may require suspension of activities authorized in the Lease and consultation with NMFS may be reinitiated. The type, amount, and severity of incidental
take not covered by an Incidental Take Statement that will trigger suspension, and the need for any such suspension or reinitiated consultation, will be determined by BOEM and NMFS jointly. Based on this joint assessment, BOEM expressly reserves the right to: (1) lift the suspension, (2) revoke and terminate the Lease, (3) negotiate with the SCSPA an amendment to the existing Lease, or (4) enter into a new Lease with additional terms and conditions to further protect threatened or endangered species. BOEM will provide prompt written notice to the SCSPA of any such suspension of the Lease and activities authorized herein. Furthermore, BOEM will not consider future requests for additional extensions of the Lease, but will consider requests for a new Lease.

Section 11 is replaced with the following:

Section 11. **Notices.** All notices, reports, and communications required under this lease will be sent to the Parties in the following manner, unless otherwise provided in this lease:

To BOEM:

Chief  
Marine Minerals Branch  
Bureau of Ocean Energy Management  
45600 Woodland Road  
Sterling, VA 20166

Electronic communications may be submitted through [dredgeinfo@boem.gov](mailto:dredgeinfo@boem.gov)

To SCSPA:

Mr. James K. Van Ness, III, P.E.  
Vice President, Engineering and Facilities Maintenance  
South Carolina State Ports Authority  
176 Concord Street  
PO Box 22287  
Charleston, SC 29413

Appendix 2 is updated with the following:

**STIPULATION No. 2 – Dredging Restrictions** is amended by replacing the following:

The sentence from the First Amendment to the Lease,

“Hopper dredging will only occur during the permissible hopper dredge window (November 1 through April 14) as specified in the 1997 South Atlantic Regional Biological Opinion as amended (see [http://erdc.usace.army.mil/seaturtles/refs-bo.cfm](http://erdc.usace.army.mil/seaturtles/refs-bo.cfm)).”

is replaced with the sentence,

“Hopper dredging will only occur during the permissible hopper dredge window (December 1 through March 31).”

This Third Amendment may be executed in counterparts, each of which will be deemed to be an
original. The signatures on this Third Amendment may be executed on separate pages and all of which together will constitute one and the same agreement.

[SIGNATURE PAGES FOLLOW]
Third Amendment to BOEM Negotiated Agreement
No. OCS-A 0477

LEASE BETWEEN

THE BUREAU OF OCEAN ENERGY MANAGEMENT
OF THE DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR

AND

THE SOUTH CAROLINA STATE PORTS AUTHORITY

REGARDING THE USE OF OUTER CONTINENTAL SHELF
SAND RESOURCES

Signature Pages

L. Renee Orr
Chief, Office of Strategic Resources
Bureau of Ocean Energy Management
Department of the Interior

Date: ____________________________

Mr. James K. Van Ness, III, P.E.
Vice President, Engineering and Facilities Maintenance
South Carolina State Ports Authority

Date: ________________ 2018
Third Amendment to BOEM Negotiated Agreement
No. OCS-A 0477

LEASE BETWEEN

THE BUREAU OF OCEAN ENERGY MANAGEMENT
OF THE DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR

AND

THE SOUTH CAROLINA STATE PORTS AUTHORITY

REGARDING THE USE OF OUTER CONTINENTAL SHELF
SAND RESOURCES

Signature Pages

L. Renee Orr
Chief, Office of Strategic Resources
Bureau of Ocean Energy Management
Department of the Interior
Date: 6/16/15

Mr. James K. Van Ness, III, P.E.
Vice President, Engineering and Facilities
Maintenance
South Carolina State Ports Authority
Date: _____________________________
January 19, 2016

Mr. Thomas McGill
EPA, Region 4
Atlanta Federal Center
61 Forsyth Street
Atlanta, Georgia 30303-8960

Re: Draft Environmental Assessment modification – Charleston Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site

Dear Mr. McGill:

SC Department of Health and Environmental Control’s Office of Ocean and Coastal Resource Management (DHEC OCRM) is currently reviewing the Draft Environmental Assessment (EA) and Federal Consistency request to modify the Charleston Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site (ODMDS). This activity is considered a Federal Agency Activity and, per CFR 15 930.41 State Agency Responses, the prescribed timeframe for a coastal state to review a request is 60 calendar days from the date of receipt. We received this request by email on December 4, 2015, and accordingly the deadline to provide a response is February 2, 2016. The requested timeframe for public comment was 45 days, which ends on January 19, 2016.

Given the 60 day timeframe captured in CFR 15 930.41 (found at coast.noaa.gov/czm/consistency/media/15CFRPart930_2007.pdf), DHEC OCRM will render a decision by February 2, 2016, while taking into account all information obtained during the public 45 day comment period. This would address concerns expressed in the January 7, 2016, teleconference meeting of not having the ability or time to fully consider submitted comments.

Please let me know if there are any questions or concerns.

Sincerely,

Curtis M. Joyner
Manager Coastal Zone Consistency, Regulatory Division
DHEC OCRM
1362 McMillan Avenue, Ste 400
Charleston, S. C. 29405
843-953-0205

Cc: Elizabeth von Kolnitz, SCDHEC OCRM
Rheta DiNovo SCDHEC OCRM
Mark Messersmith, USACOE
January 19, 2016

Ms. Jennifer S. Derby, Chief
Marine Regulatory and Wetlands Enforcement Section
U.S. Environmental Protection Agency
61 Forsyth Street, SW
Atlanta, Georgia 30303

RE:  Draft Environmental Assessment for Modification of the Charleston Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site (ODMDS), Charleston, South Carolina

Dear Ms. Derby:

The South Carolina Department of Natural Resources (DNR) has reviewed the Draft Environmental Assessment (EA) for Modification of the Charleston Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site (ODMDS) and offers the following comments.

**Project Description:** The EA describes six alternatives for providing additional ocean dredged material disposal capacity, as well as the “No Action” alternative. Only the “Preferred Alternative” (Alternative 1) and the “No Action Alternative” are evaluated in detail. The Preferred Alternative would modify the Charleston ODMDS by expanding the disposal area to the north, south, and east by adding 5.8 mi² (4.4 nmi²) which would increase the designated disposal area to 9.8 mi² (7.4 nmi²). In addition, the proposed action will formally de-designate 10.4 mi² (7.8 nmi²) of restricted disposal area within the current Charleston ODMDS primarily west of the current disposal zone that contains widespread hardbottom habitat. This ocean disposal site will be available as an alternative for the disposal of suitable dredged material when no economically practicable upland placement or beneficial reuse options are available. The size of the proposed ODMDS modification area is based on current capacity analysis of the existing disposal zone within the Charleston ODMDS, historical dredging volumes, future dredging volumes for new work and maintenance projects, estimated shoaling rates, capacity of upland Confined Disposal Facilities in the area, and consideration of historical ODMDS monitoring programs.
General Comments: Overall, the DNR concurs with the proposed action and believes it is generally consistent with recommendations we made in our earlier comment letter (dated 2/13/13) on the Notice of Intent (NOI) to modify the existing ODMDS. The DNR has some outstanding concerns regarding the identification of certain hardbottom areas within the modified ODMDS, the lack of a proposed berm along the northeastern edge of the modified ODMDS, the uncertainty about the structural stability and final dimensions of the proposed “U-shaped” berm along the western, southern, and eastern boundaries of the modified ODMDS, and certain aspects of the Site Management and Monitoring Plan (SMMP). These concerns and additional recommendations are described in greater detail below.

Comments on the Preferred Alternative (Alternative 1): In our earlier comment letter on the NOI (referenced above), we expressed concern about potential adverse impacts the proposed expansion might have on aquatic resources, particularly hardbottom areas that may support numerous species of epifaunal invertebrates and associated fishes of ecological, recreational, and commercial importance.

As reported in the EA, sidescan sonar and sub-bottom profile surveys conducted by SCDNR and Coastal Carolina University (CCU) confirmed the presence of hardbottom ledges to the north and west of the current disposal area, and possibly to the south. More recent surveys conducted by CCU in 2013 identified a 2.4-acre area of hardbottom that straddles the northern boundary of the modified ODMDS area, with approximately 1.6 acres of this hardbottom habitat contained within the proposed ODMDS itself. While this represents only 0.04% of the total area within the modified ODMDS, an additional 247.4 acres (6.6%) of the proposed ODMDS area is identified as “possible hardbottom”. In addition, the CCU survey identified an area of hardbottom habitat inside the original southern boundary of the proposed ODMDS modification area. The EA states that, in an effort to avoid impacts to hardbottom habitat, the southern boundary was moved farther north to provide a 100-meter buffer from the mapped hardbottom areas. Figure 3-9 shows two areas of known hardbottom within the original ODMDS near its southern boundary; however Figure 2-1 does not show these hardbottom areas. Furthermore, Figure 2-1 shows the southern boundary of the modified ODMDS as being farther south, rather than farther north, of the southern boundary of the existing ODMDS disposal area. This suggests that there may be additional hardbottom areas within the modified ODMDS that are neither shown in Figure 2-1 nor included in the total area of hardbottom that may be impacted by the proposed expansion. This seeming discrepancy between the earlier and more recent survey data (as illustrated by a comparison between Figures 2-1 and 3-9) should be corrected or explained in EA.

In order to prevent fine-grained sediments from migrating out of the proposed ODMDS and possibly onto hardbottom habitat, the EA proposes to create a U-shaped berm around three sides of the modified ODMDS by extending an existing berm along the
western boundary and constructing new berms along the southern and eastern boundaries of the modified ODMDS. The berm would consist of limestone rock dredged from the navigation channel as part of the Post-45 Charleston Harbor Deepening Project. Although there is probable hardbottom located north of the modified ODMDS, no berm is proposed to be constructed along the northern boundary so that vessels transporting dredged material can easily access the ODMDS from this direction. Instead, a 3000-foot buffer along the northern perimeter of the ODMDS is proposed, within which dumping would not occur. Modeling conducted as part of the EA indicates that this buffer should be sufficient to protect probable hardbottom areas to the north of the site; however, the DNR recommends that a partial berm along the northeastern corner of the modified ODMDS be considered, in order to protect the known and probable hardbottom areas that straddle the northern boundary of the modified ODMDS, as shown in Figure 2-1. If insufficient limestone rock (or other consolidated dredged material) is available to extend the berm along the northeastern boundary of the modified ODMDS, consideration should be given to shortening the north end of the western berm to provide the needed material (provided there are no currently unidentified hardbottom areas that would be impacted by shortening the western berm). This action could have the additional benefit of preventing the western berm from intersecting the designated transportation route for vessels travelling to and from the Charleston ODMDS, as shown in Figure 3 of the Site Management and Monitoring Plan (SMMP) (Appendix C).

Overall, the DNR supports the “beneficial use” of dredged material to create the proposed berm, and believes it would serve as appropriate compensatory mitigation for potential impacts to known, possible, and probable hardbottom areas within and adjacent to the modified ODMDS. As such, a rigorous monitoring program should be developed to verify the proposed berm is constructed as described in the EA, remains stable, and eventually supports many, if not all, of the ecological functions of natural hardbottom habitat.

**Site Management and Monitoring Plan (SMMP):**

As noted in the EA, an interagency team has existed since the development of the original Site Management and Monitoring Plan (SMMP) for the Charleston ODMDS in 1993, and is responsible for the development of subsequent revisions to this plan. The team consists of representatives from the following agencies: US Army Corps of Engineers Charleston District, US Environmental Protection Agency Region 4, US Fish and Wildlife Service, National Marine Fisheries Service, SCDNR, and SC State Ports Authority. To date, this team has not met to discuss the details of the revised SMMP as presented in the EA, so the DNR regards the proposed plan as a draft document that requires further collaboration, discussion, and modification. A final SMMP agreed to by all agencies should be developed well in advance of any future dredged material disposal in the modified ODMDS area. The DNR offers the following general comments on the proposed SMMP to be further discussed by the interagency team.
• **Site Management:**

1. As stated in the SMMP, a transportation route for vessels travelling to and from the Charleston ODMDS will be specified to minimize possible interference with nearby fishing grounds and commercial navigation. The specified transportation route should also avoid crossing any known or probable hardbottom areas to prevent adverse impacts to these areas from the inadvertent loss or unauthorized disposal of dredged material from vessels en route to the ODMDS.

2. It is stated that any coarse-grained material, or suitable consolidated material which is not used for another beneficial purpose (i.e., beach nourishment), will be used as needed to expand the boundary berms. The DNR questions the advisability of using coarse grained material for constructing the proposed berms and recommends that only consolidated material, such as limestone rock, be used for this purpose.

• **Site Monitoring:**

1. It is stated in the SMMP that a monitoring plan will be implemented to determine if disposal at the site is significantly affecting adjacent areas and to detect the presence of long-term adverse effects. At a minimum, the monitoring program will consist of bathymetric surveys, sediment grain size analysis, chemical analysis of constituents of concern in the sediments, and an assessment of the benthic community. The DNR recommends that the monitoring program specifically include a comprehensive assessment of the final dimensions and physical characteristics of the proposed berm, as well as a long-term assessment of its structural stability, its efficacy as a sediment containment device, and its development as functional habitat for “livebottom” communities of invertebrates and fishes.

2. It is further stated that “Upon initiation of construction of the Charleston Harbor Deepening Project (Post45) the following monitoring programs may be implemented, where possible and when funding is available.” The DNR recommends that a more firm commitment be made to implementing these programs by modifying the second part of this sentence to read “…the following monitoring programs will be implemented, provided funding is available.” Furthermore, in order to provide adequate lead time to design and conduct appropriate baseline studies in and around the modified ODMDS, the DNR recommends that a meeting of the interagency SMMP task force be convened as soon as possible, so that the monitoring programs can be implemented at least one year in advance of the initiation of the Post 45 Project (or any other disposal...
activity in the expanded ODMDS area, whichever occurs first). Although extensive data already exists for the ODMDS as it is currently configured, no comparable data exists for the modified ODMDS as proposed. In addition, the most recent published studies of biological communities in the vicinity of the existing ODMDS are over 10 years old. Therefore, new baseline studies are needed to determine any impacts of the proposed action and to inform future management decisions.

3. The SMMP lists several objectives of the proposed monitoring program, including evaluating “…the success of the proposed submerged berm construction on (1) retarding the over-bottom movement of dredged material, (2) the development of habitat and attraction of recreationally important fish species to demonstrate beneficial uses of ODMDS berm design and (3) the recruitment of sessile invertebrates to the substrate.” As noted above, the DNR supports this objective; however, in the following section (“Additional Monitoring Approach and Rationale”), no mention is made of a proposed approach to monitoring the berm. Such an approach should be developed in consultation with the SMMP task force and included in the text of the final EA.

Conclusions:

The DNR generally concurs with the proposed modification of the Charleston ODMDS and, with the caveats noted above, believes the EA is largely consistent with recommendations made in our earlier comment letter on the NOI for this project. The DNR looks forward to further coordinating with the EPA and Corps, as a member of the interagency SMMP task force, to further develop and refine a monitoring plan that will adequately address the potential impacts of the proposed modification and inform future management decisions regarding the Charleston ODMDS.

If you have any questions regarding these comments, please contact me at wendtp@dnr.sc.gov.

Sincerely,

Priscilla H. Wendt
Priscilla H. Wendt
Office of Environmental Programs

Cc: USACE
    USFWS
    NOAA/NMFS
    SCDHEC/ EQC
    SCDHEC/ OCRM
-----Original Message-----
From: Jordan, Brian [mailto:brian.jordan@boem.gov]
Sent: Wednesday, January 20, 2016 3:37 PM
To: Messersmith, Mark J SAC <Mark.J.Messersmith@usace.army.mil>
Cc: Piatkowski, Douglas <douglas.piatkowski@boem.gov>; Jennifer Bosyk <Jennifer.Bosyk@boem.gov>; Jennifer Culbertson <Jennifer.Culbertson@boem.gov>; Paul Knorr <paul.knorr@boem.gov>; Brian Krevor <brian.krevor@boem.gov>; Collins, Gary <Collins.Garyw@epa.gov>
Subject: Re: [EXTERNAL] Fwd: Charleston ODMDS modification EA (EPA and USACE)

Hi Doug,

I have reviewed the pertinent sections of the document related to historical and cultural resources. It appears that the ACOE has been in consultation with the SCIAA to perform the marine cultural resources survey and analysis of the data. Since they have no issues with the expansion, I do not have any issues with the proposed expansion. I applaud the ACOE's work with SCIAA to address the potential impacts to these resources in a proactive manner.

Cheers,

Brian

ATTENTION: New Office Address (See Below)

Brian Jordan, Ph.D.
Federal Preservation Officer 703.787.1748
Headquarters Archaeologist Cell/571.835.8970
Brian.Jordan@boem.gov <mailto:Brian.Jordan@boem.gov> Fax/703.787.1026

Bureau of Ocean Energy Management
Office of Environmental Programs
45600 Woodland Road, VAM-OEP
Sterling, VA 20166

On Thu, Jan 14, 2016 at 7:52 PM, Messersmith, Mark J SAC <Mark.J.Messersmith@usace.army.mil>
<mailto:Mark.J.Messersmith@usace.army.mil> wrote:

Doug et al.,

Thanks for your timely review of the project and for the specific comments and suggested language changes. We look forward to any further comments related to cultural resources or renewable energy. Please let us know if you'll need additional time to submit those comments. I'd like to let your team know that this Wednesday we received a letter from the SC SHPO that concurred with a determination of no adverse effect to historic properties. I can make that letter available to you...
tomorrow if needed. I have cc'd Gary Collins, USEPA, as he is the EPA lead on the project. We will follow up with you if we have any questions.

Respectfully,

Mark

Mark Messersmith
Planning and Environmental Branch
US Army Corps of Engineers
Charleston District
69A Hagood Ave
Charleston, SC 29403
(p) (843) 329 - 8162
(f) (843) 329 - 2231
mark.j.messersmith@usace.army.mil
Hi Doug,

I have reviewed the pertinent sections of the document related to historical and cultural resources. It appears that the ACOE has been in consultation with the SCIAA to perform the marine cultural resources survey and analysis of the data. Since they have no issues with the expansion, I do not have any issues with the proposed expansion. I applaud the ACOE's work with SCIAA to address the potential impacts to these resources in a proactive manner.

Cheers,

Brian

---

ATTENTION: New Office Address (See Below)

Brian Jordan, Ph.D.
Federal Preservation Officer 703.787.1748
Headquarters Archaeologist Cell/571.835.8970
Brian.Jordan@boem.gov Fax/703.787.1026

Bureau of Ocean Energy Management
Office of Environmental Programs
45600 Woodland Road, VAM-OEP
Sterling, VA 20166

On Thu, Jan 14, 2016 at 7:52 PM, Messersmith, Mark J SAC <Mark.J.Messersmith@usace.army.mil> wrote:

Doug et al.,

Thanks for your timely review of the project and for the specific comments and suggested language changes. We look forward to any further comments related to cultural resources or renewable energy. Please let us know if you'll need additional time to submit those comments. I'd like to let your team know that this Wednesday we received a letter from the SC SHPO that concurred with a determination of no adverse effect to historic properties. I can make that letter available to you
tomorrow if needed. I have cc'd Gary Collins, USEPA, as he is the EPA lead on the project. We will follow up with you if we have any questions.

Respectfully,

Mark

Mark Messersmith  
Planning and Environmental Branch  
US Army Corps of Engineers  
Charleston District  
69A Hagood Ave  
Charleston, SC 29403  
(p) (843) 329 - 8162  
(f) (843) 329 - 2231  
mark.j.messersmith@usace.army.mil
January 19, 2016
F/SER47:JD/pw

(Sent via Electronic Mail)

Lt. Col. Matthew Luzzatto
Charleston District, Corps of Engineers
69A Hagood Avenue
Charleston, South Carolina 29403-5107

Jennifer Derby, Chief
U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Region 4
61 Forsyth Street
Atlanta, Georgia 30303

Attention: Mark Messersmith and Gary Collins

Dear Colonel Luzzatto and Ms. Derby:

NOAA’s National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS) reviewed the Draft Environmental Assessment for Modification of the Charleston Harbor Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site (ODMDS), Charleston, South Carolina, dated November 2015. Present staffing levels prevent further analysis of the proposed ODMDS expansion by the NMFS Habitat Conservation Division. This position is neither supportive of nor in opposition to the proposed expansion.

In accordance with section 7 of the Endangered Species Act of 1973, as amended, it is the responsibility of the Charleston District and U.S. Environmental Protection Agency to review and identify any proposed activity that may affect endangered or threatened species and their designated critical habitat. Determinations involving species under NMFS jurisdiction should be reported to NMFS Protected Resources Division at the letterhead address.

Sincerely,

/ for

Virginia M. Fay
Assistant Regional Administrator
Habitat Conservation Division

cc: COE, Mark.J.Messersmith@usace.army.mil
    EPA, derby.jennifer@epa.gov, collins.garyw@epa.gov
    SCDNR, WendtP@dnr.sc.gov
    F/SER4, David.Dale@noaa.gov
    F/SER47, Jaclyn.Daly@noaa.gov
January 6, 2016

Gary Collins
U.S. Environmental Protection Agency
Atlanta Federal Center
61 Forsyth Street, SW
Atlanta, GA 30303

Re: Modification of the Charleston ODMDS Draft EA
Charleston County, South Carolina
SHPO Project Number 15-JS0638

Dear Gary Collins:

Thank you for your letter of December 4, which we received on December 9, and follow up email dated January 4 regarding the above-referenced project. We also received a copy of the draft EA as supporting documentation for this undertaking. The State Historic Preservation Office is providing comments to the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA) pursuant to Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act and its implementing regulations, 36 CFR 800. Consultation with the SHPO is not a substitution for consultation with Tribal Historic Preservation Offices, other Native American tribes, local governments, or the public.

Archaeological survey was completed for this project during the Post 45 deepening study. The targets that were identified and investigated were found to be modern debris. The USEPA has determined that the project will have no adverse effect on historic properties; however, we don’t believe that recommendation is appropriate due to the absence of historic properties in the Area of Potential Effects (APE). Based on the description of the APE and the identification of historic properties within the APE, our office would concur with the assessment that no properties listed in or eligible for listing in the National Register of Historic Places will be affected by this project.

If you have any questions, please contact me at (803) 896-6181 or edale@scdah.sc.gov.

Sincerely,

Emily Dale
Staff Archaeologist/GIS Coordinator
State Historic Preservation Office

cc: Jim Spirek, SCIAA
    Mark Messersmith, USACE
February 2, 2016

Mr. Thomas McGill
EPA, Region 4
Atlanta Federal Center
61 Forsyth Street
Atlanta, Georgia 30303-8960

Re: Draft Environmental Assessment modification – Charleston Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site – Extension Request

Dear Mr. McGill:

SC Department of Health and Environmental Control’s Office of Ocean and Coastal Resource Management (DHEC OC RM) is continuing with the review of the Draft Environmental Assessment (EA) and Federal Consistency request to modify the Charleston Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site (ODMDS). This activity is considered a Federal Agency Activity pursuant to CFR 15 930.41 and within “State Agency Responses” Section (b), the State may request an extension of 15 days beyond the prescribed 60 days review timeframe. The regulation further states “Federal agencies shall approve one request for an extension period of 15 days or less.” We had previously stated the 60 day timeframe ended on February 2, 2016.

DHEC OC RM will render a decision by February 17, 2016, given the timeframes captured in CFR 15 930.41(b) (found at coast.noaa.gov/czm/consistency/media/15CFRPart930_2007.pdf). The extension would provide DHEC OC RM the ability to more fully consider all recently received Agency comments.

Please provide an acceptance to the 15 day extension request by mail or my email address listed below. Otherwise, please let me know if there are any questions or concerns.

Sincerely,

[Signature]

Curtis M. Joyner
Manager Coastal Zone Consistency, Regulatory Division
DHEC OC RM
1362 McMillan Avenue, Ste 400
Charleston, S. C. 29405
843-953-0205
joynercm@dhec.sc.gov

Cc: Elizabeth von Kolnitz, SCDHEC OC RM
Rheta DiNovo SCDHEC OC RM
Mark Messersmith, USACOE
February 17, 2016

Mr. Thomas McGill
EPA, Region 4
Atlanta Federal Center
61 Forsyth Street
Atlanta, Georgia 30303-8960

Re: Draft Environmental Assessment on modification of the Charleston Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site - Coastal Zone Consistency, CZC-15-1337

Dear Mr. McGill:

This letter is in response to the US Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA), in coordination with the US Army Corps of Engineers, Draft Environmental Assessment (EA) and Federal Consistency request to modify the Charleston Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site (ODMDS).

The purpose of the proposed modification is to accommodate disposal of dredged material from the planned Charleston Harbor Deepening Study (Post 45), as well as maintenance dredging material and dredged material from non-Federal entities. The preferred alternative consists of the reconfiguration of the ODMDS by expanding the current authorized disposal zone. The preferred alternative also includes the placement of a U shaped berm on the eastern, southern and western perimeters of the modified ODMDS. The current disposal zone is 12.1 square nautical miles (nmi$^2$) in area, while the current authorized disposal zone is 3 nmi$^2$. The proposed modification will result in the reconfigured ODMDS with an area of 7.4 nmi$^2$, with no proposed restrictive zone delineated. Dredging and dredge material disposal are approved listed activities contained in the South Carolina Coastal Zone Management Program (SCCZMP) which resulted in this review. The USEPA has stated the proposed action is consistent with the SCCZMP and is requesting concurrence.

After reviewing the Draft EA, the Draft Site Management and Monitoring Plan, the Consistency Determination, as well as comments received in response to this proposed activity, the South Carolina Department of Health and Environmental Control (SCDHEC) conditionally concurs that the proposed expansion and reconfiguration of the ODMDS complies with the enforceable policies contained within the SCCZMP pursuant to 15 C.F.R. § 930.55. This concurrence is based upon review of the Guidelines for Evaluation of All Projects as well as the (1) Dredging (Dredged Material Disposal), (2) Wildlife and Fisheries Management and (3) Activities in Areas of Special Resource Significance (Public Open Spaces) policies contained within the SCCZMP.
Therefore, pursuant to 15 C.F.R. § 930.4 (Conditional Concurrences) SCDHEC is providing the following conditions to ensure consistency with the previously mentioned enforceable policies of the SCCZMP.

1. Only the 7.4 (nmi²) area identified in the Draft EA was reviewed by SCDHEC and any expansion beyond that area has not been reviewed nor has a consistency concurrence been issued.

2. The Draft Site Management and Monitoring Plan contained in the EA should be finalized in consultation with SCDHEC and other State and Federal Resource Agencies in advance of any future dredged material disposal event.

Please do not hesitate to contact me should you have any questions.

Sincerely,

Curtis M. Joyner
Manager, Coastal Zone Consistency Section
SCDHEC OCRM
1362 McMillan Avenue, Suite 400
Charleston, SC 29405
843-953-0205
joynercm@dhec.sc.gov

cc: Elizabeth von Kolnitz, SCDHEC OCRM
Rheta DiNovo, SCDHEC OCRM
Mark Messersmith, USACOE
Mr. Gary Collins
Marine Regulatory and Wetlands Enforcement Section
U.S. Environmental Protection Agency
61 Forsyth Street SW
Atlanta, Georgia 30303

Mr. Mark Messersmith
Planning Division
Charleston District
U.S. Army Corps of Engineers
69A Hagood Avenue
Charleston, South Carolina 29403

Dear Sirs:

This letter responds to your request for consultation with us, the National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS), pursuant to Section 7 of the Endangered Species Act (ESA) for the following action.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Applicants</th>
<th>SER Number</th>
<th>Project Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) and U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE)</td>
<td>SER-2016-17630</td>
<td>Modification of the Charleston Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site (ODMDS)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Consultation History
We received your letter on December 4, 2015, requesting consultation for the project referenced above. It was assigned to a Consultation Biologist on January 13, 2016, but consultation was not initiated until March 16, 2016, due to a large backlog of project reviews. The EPA, as a cooperating agency with the USACE, prepared a Draft Environmental Assessment (EA) for the proposed project. The ODMDS modification is being designed to accommodate disposal of dredged material from the Charleston Harbor Deepening, as well as maintenance dredged material and dredged material from non-federal entities. Potential impacts to ESA-listed species associated with the Charleston Harbor Deepening were addressed by our biological opinion (SER-2014-15433), dated April 22, 2015, and impacts associated with maintenance dredging were covered under the 1997 South Atlantic Regional Biological Opinion (SARBO).
Table 1. Coordinates of Existing Charleston ODMDS in the Atlantic Ocean

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Latitude/Longitude (North American Datum 1983)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SE Corner</td>
<td>32.60778° N, 79.73000° W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SW Corner</td>
<td>32.65111° N, 79.82250° W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE Corner</td>
<td>32.63500° N, 79.69917° W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NW Corner</td>
<td>32.67833° N, 79.79167° W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Center</td>
<td>32.64305° N, 79.76083° W</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 1. Location of Charleston ODMDS showing existing boundaries in blue and proposed modifications (Anamar Environmental Consulting 2015)

**Existing Site Conditions**

The Charleston ODMDS is located approximately 9 miles east of Charleston, South Carolina, and south of the Charleston Harbor Entrance Channel in water depths ranging from -35 feet (ft) to -45 ft mean low water. There are 1.6 acres of hardbottom within the ODMDS site. Hardbottom is also found south of the ODMDS adjacent to a portion of the existing site that is proposed for de-designation. In addition, the EA states that probable hardbottom lies adjacent to the proposed boundary modification on the northeast corner.

**Project Descriptions**

The EPA, at the request of the USACE, is evaluating proposed action to modify the Charleston ODMDS as a permanent site for the ocean disposal of dredged material resulting from new dredging work and in support of the Charleston Harbor Federal Navigation Project. The current site is 15.1 square miles (sq mi) and the authorized disposal zone with the ODMDS is 4 sq mi. The modification would increase the area of the disposal site to the north, east, and south by 5.8 sq mi, which would expand the total disposal area to 9.8 sq mi. A new berm would be created...
around the expanded disposal site using limestone rock material dredged from deepening the entrance channel. This will add approximately 427 acres of new hardbottom habitat. The proposed modification would also de-designate 10.4 sq mi of restricted disposal area within the current ODMDS that contains widespread hardbottom habitat.

Table 2. Status of Listed Species and Critical Habitat in the Action Area

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Species</th>
<th>ESA Listing Status</th>
<th>Action Agency Effect Determination</th>
<th>NMFS Effect Determination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Turtles</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green</td>
<td>E/T</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kemp's ridley</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loggerhead</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hawksbill</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leatherback</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fish</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shortnose sturgeon</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>NP</td>
<td>NP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atlantic sturgeon</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>NP</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smalltooth Sawfish</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>NP</td>
<td>NP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Marine Mammals</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>North Atlantic right whale</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Humpback whale</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Shortnose Sturgeon and Smalltooth Sawfish
We concur with the EPA's determination that shortnose sturgeon and smalltooth sawfish would not be present in the project area since shortnose sturgeon are primarily found in lower salinities within rivers and the project area is located north of the known range for smalltooth sawfish.

North Atlantic Right Whale (NARW) Critical Habitat
The Charleston ODMDS is located within Unit 2 of the NARW critical habitat. Disposal-related activities occurring within the Charleston ODMDS modification will not significantly alter the existing water depths. The EPA has stated that the modification will have no effect on critical habitat for right whales.

Loggerhead Sea Turtle Critical Habitat
Designated loggerhead sea turtle critical habitat unit LOGG-N-07 lies approximately 8 mi west of the closest point of the Charleston ODMDS, but because it is located outside of the action area and beyond the effects of dredging-related turbidity plumes it will not be affected by the proposed modification.

1 E = Endangered, T = Threatened, NP = Not Present, NLAA = Not Likely to Adversely Affect
2 Green turtles are listed as threatened except for the Florida and Pacific coast of Mexico breeding populations, which are listed as endangered.
3 NWA DPS
4 River and in-shore habitats within the action area may affect Atlantic sturgeon from the Carolina and South Atlantic DPS; however, Atlantic sturgeon from all DPSs may be affected in off-shore waters within the action area.
Analysis of Potential Routes of Effects to Species

We believe that North Atlantic right and humpback whales; loggerhead, green, and Kemp’s ridley sea turtles; and Atlantic sturgeon may be present in the action area and may be affected by the project. We have identified the following potential effects to these species and concluded that the species are not likely to be adversely affected:

Effects to ESA-listed species include the risk of injury from the physical action associated with construction of the berm, vessel strike from dredge related vessels going to and from the ODMDS, and dredged material disposal in the ODMDS. The creation of the berm will function as artificial habitat and could be beneficial to ESA species as new foraging and resting habitat. In addition, the de-designation of the western area of the ODMDS will protect hardbottom found within the boundaries of that portion of the ODMDS from being impacted by disposal activities. This will also benefit ESA species by protecting habitat that could be used for foraging and resting.

**Whales**

There is a potential for construction related activities and vessel strike to affect whales in the area. Berm construction and sediment disposal in the ODMDS may cause a whale to move away from the immediate area, but there are ample available habitats nearby. Given the slow speed and low number of individual dredge-related vessels and the small footprint of the dredged material dumps, right whales will not be prevented from moving about in or migrating through the area. Established whale conservation measures required for dredge-related vessels will also protect whales. Thus, we believe berm construction and dredging related actions at the ODMDS and vessel transport to and from the ODMDS will have an insignificant effect on whales.

**Atlantic Sturgeon and Sea Turtles**

Due to their expected avoidance of project activity, we would not expect an Atlantic sturgeon or sea turtle to remain stationary within the action area while the new berm is being constructed or during disposal of dredged sediments within the ODMDS. There are many other suitable foraging and resting areas in the vicinity of the project that lie outside of the ODMDS that listed species could utilize. In addition, the project area can be used by these species during quiet periods between dredging disposal actions. Compliance with NMFS’s *Sea Turtle and Smalltooth Sawfish Construction Conditions*, dated March 2006, will provide an additional measure of protection. In summary, we believe the effects on Atlantic sturgeon and sea turtles caused during construction of the berm and during dredged material disposal will be insignificant.

**Conclusion**

Because all potential project effects to listed species were found to be discountable, insignificant, or beneficial, we conclude that the proposed actions are not likely to adversely affect listed species under NMFS’s purview. This concludes the EPA’s and USACE’s consultation responsibilities under the ESA for species under NMFS’s purview. Consultation must be reinitiated if a take occurs or new information reveals effects of the action not previously considered, or the identified actions are subsequently modified in a manner that causes an effect to the listed species or critical habitat in a manner or to an extent not previously considered, or if a new species is listed or critical habitat designated that may be affected by the identified action. NMFS’s findings on the project’s potential effects are based on the project description in this
response. Any changes to the proposed action may negate the findings of this consultation and may require reinitiation of consultation with NMFS.

We have enclosed additional relevant information for your review. We look forward to further cooperation with you on other projects to ensure the conservation of our threatened and endangered marine species and designated critical habitat. If you have any questions on this consultation, please contact Kay Davy, Consultation Biologist, at (727) 415-9271, or by email at kay.davy@noaa.gov.

Sincerely,

[Signature]

Roy E. Crabtree, Ph.D.
Regional Administrator

Enc.:  PCTS Access and Additional Considerations for ESA Section 7 Consultations
       (Revised March 10, 2015)

File:  1514-22.F.2
PCTS Access and Additional Considerations for ESA Section 7 Consultations
(Revised 03-10-2015)

Public Consultation Tracking System (PCTS) Guidance: PCTS is a Web-based query system at https://pcts.nmfs.noaa.gov/ that allows all federal agencies (e.g., U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE)), project managers, permit applicants, consultants, and the general public to find the current status of NMFS’s Endangered Species Act (ESA) and Essential Fish Habitat (EFH) consultations which are being conducted (or have been completed) pursuant to ESA Section 7 and the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act’s (MSA) Sections 305(b)2 and 305(b)(4). Basic information including access to documents is available to all.

The PCTS Home Page is shown below. For USACE-permitted projects, the easiest and quickest way to look up a project’s status, or review completed ESA/EFH consultations, is to click on either the “Corps Permit Query” link (top left); or, below it, click the “Find the status of a consultation based on the Corps Permit number” link in the golden “I Want To…” window.

Then, from the “Corps District Office” list pick the appropriate USACE district. In the “Corps Permit #” box, type in the 9-digit USACE permit number identifier, with no hyphens or letters. Simply enter the year and the permit number, joined together, using preceding zeros if necessary after the year to obtain the necessary 9-digit (no more, no less) number. For example, the USACE Jacksonville District’s issued permit number SAJ-2013-0235 (LP-CMW) must be typed in as 201300235 for PCTS to run a proper search and provide complete and accurate results. For querying permit applications submitted for ESA/EFH consultation by other USACE districts, the procedure is the same. For example, an inquiry on Mobile District’s permit MVN201301412 is entered as 201301412 after selecting the Mobile District from the “Corps District Office” list.

PCTS questions should be directed to Kelly Shotts at Kelly.Shotts@noaa.gov or (727) 551-5603.
EFH Recommendations: In addition to its protected species/critical habitat consultation requirements with NMFS’ Protected Resources Division pursuant to Section 7 of the ESA, prior to proceeding with the proposed action the action agency must also consult with NMFS’ Habitat Conservation Division (HCD) pursuant to the MSA requirements for EFH consultation (16 U.S.C. 1855 (b)(2) and 50 CFR 600.905-.930, subpart K). The action agency should also ensure that the applicant understands the ESA and EFH processes; that ESA and EFH consultations are separate, distinct, and guided by different statutes, goals, and time lines for responding to the action agency; and that the action agency will (and the applicant may) receive separate consultation correspondence on NMFS letterhead from HCD regarding their concerns and/or finalizing EFH consultation.

Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) Recommendations: The ESA Section 7 process does not authorize incidental takes of listed or non-listed marine mammals. If such takes may occur an incidental take authorization under MMPA Section 101 (a)(5) is necessary. Please contact NMFS’ Permits, Conservation, and Education Division at (301) 713-2322 for more information regarding MMPA permitting procedures.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Comment</th>
<th>EPA Region 4 and USACE Charleston District Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>United States Department of the Interior</strong>&lt;br&gt;FISH AND WILDLIFE SERVICE&lt;br&gt;170 Coghan Spur Road, Suite 200&lt;br&gt;Charleston, South Carolina 29407&lt;br&gt;January 5, 2016</td>
<td>Please note: The comment/letter number refers to the correspondence index provided at the beginning of Appendix A. The index includes a complete list of all of the comments/letters received during both the scoping period and the public comment period on the Draft EA. Scoping comments are summarized in Section 1.6.1 of the EA. This matrix addresses comments received on the Draft EA during the public comment period which start with letter #15.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mr. Thomas McGill, Chief&lt;br&gt;Oceas, Wetlands and Stream Protection Branch&lt;br&gt;U.S. Environmental Protection Agency&lt;br&gt;Atlanta Federal Center&lt;br&gt;61 Forsyth Street&lt;br&gt;Atlanta, GA 30303-8960</td>
<td>15 p.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Re:</strong> Draft Environmental Analysis, Modification to Ocean Dredge Material Disposal Site, Charleston, SC, FWS Log No. 2016-CPA-0046</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dear Mr. McGill:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (Service) has received the draft Environmental Assessment (EA) for the modification of the Ocean Dredge Material Disposal Site (ODMDS) located offshore from Charleston, South Carolina. The ODMDS is to be modified to accommodate disposal of material dredged from the planned Charleston Harbor Deepening. In addition, the modified ODMDS will be able to accommodate material from other future dredging activities. Pursuant to the Endangered Species Act of 1973 (ESA), the Environmental Protection Agency is requesting concurrence with their determination that modifying the ODMDS is not likely to adversely affect federally listed species or adversely modify designated critical habitat.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The entire project will occur several miles offshore from Charleston, South Carolina, and with the exception of the West Indian manatee (Trichechus manatus) and marine turtles, no Federal trust resources managed by the Service are known to occur in the vicinity of the project. Potential impacts to the manatee and sea turtles would result from operational activities associated with the ODMDS modification. The placement of fill on the seafloor is likely to result in sediment plumes around the work area. These plumes should quickly disperse; however, they may disorient and disrupt foraging of manatees or sea turtles should they come in contact with the turbidity. The EA should include the use of dedicated spotters or monitors on all vessels working in the ODMDS area to notify operators if one or more of these species are in the work area. Dredge and fill activities should be suspended until the species are clear of potential harm.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. The proposed ODMDS modification does not result in a change in whether or not spotters are needed during any disposal operation operating within its boundaries. We believe any requirement for use of dedicated spotters should be during the NEPA compliance phase of any project or permit proposing use of the ODMDS, and not within the EA for site modification.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Based on our review of the information received, and of the project parameters, the Service concurs with your determination that the proposed modification of the ODMDS is not likely to adversely affect the West Indian manatee. We recommend you contact the NOAA – Protected Services Division for consultation requirements regarding the Atlantic and shortnose sturgeon as well as sea turtles and sea cucumbers that may be in the project area. Please note that due to obligations under the ESA the potential impacts of this project must be reconsidered if: (1) new information reveals impacts of this identified action may affect any listed species or critical habitat in a manner not previously considered; (2) this action is subsequently modified in a manner, which was not considered in this assessment; or (3) a new species is listed or critical habitat is designated that may be affected by the identified action.

The Service appreciates the opportunity to provide comments on the Draft EA, and we look forward to continued involvement in the development of this project. If you have any questions on the Service’s comments please contact Mr. Mark Caldwell at 843-727-4707 ext. 215, and reference FWS Log No. 20/6-CPA-0046.

Sincerely,

Thomas D. McCoy
Field Supervisor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Comment</th>
<th>Comment/Letter No.</th>
<th>EPA Region 4 and USACE Charleston District Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2. Coordination with the NOAA Protected Services Division has been completed. Their letter of comments and our responses are provided below (Letter 24).</td>
<td>15 p.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comment</td>
<td>Comment/Letter No.</td>
<td>EPA Region 4 and USACE Charleston District Response</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>From: Platkowski, Douglas [<a href="mailto:douglas.platkowski@boem.gov">mailto:douglas.platkowski@boem.gov</a>]</td>
<td>16 p.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sent: Thursday, January 14, 2016 2:12 PM</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To: Messersmith, Mark J [<a href="mailto:Mark.J.Messersmith@usace.army.mil">mailto:Mark.J.Messersmith@usace.army.mil</a>]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject: [EXTERNAL] Fwd: Charleston ODMDS Modification EA (EPA and USACE)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thank you for the opportunity to comment on the “Draft Environmental Assessment for Modification of the Charleston Ocean Dredged material Disposal Site (ODMDS), Charleston, South Carolina.” This particular review was focused on content related to BOEM’s Marine Minerals Program (MMP), specifically our current lease agreement with the SC State Ports Authority (SCSPA) for dredging of up to 6 MCY of material for the ODMDS site. Relevant sections of the EA were also shared with BOEM’s subject matter expert for cultural resources as well as a representative from our oil and gas and renewable energy programs. With respect to the Oil and Gas program, attached is recommended revised text from Section 3.15.3. Comments regarding Cultural Resources and renewable energy may be forthcoming and comments regarding the MMP are provided in the ensuing text.</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1. The revised text to Section 3.15.2 has been incorporated into the Final EA document.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Regarding MMP specific comments, as you are aware, an amended lease agreement with the SCSPA was executed on June 15, 2015 (see attached). The negotiated agreement (OCS-A 0477) authorizes up to 6,000,000 cubic yards of outer continental shelf (OCS) sediment resources from the Charleston ODMDS for use in the Charleston Naval Base Container Terminal Project. Two specific borrow areas have been identified within the Charleston ODMDS: the West Excavation Area and the East Excavation Area. The coordinates of these two borrow areas are provided below along with a detailed map attached (Figure 1):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lat. (Degrees)</th>
<th>Long.</th>
<th>Lat.</th>
<th>Long.</th>
<th>Area</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>32° 39' 03.89&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>32 65108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32° 45' 18.87&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>79° 75315</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Comment</th>
<th>Comment/ Letter No.</th>
<th>EPA Region 4 and USACE Charleston District Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>West Excavation</td>
<td>32° 30' 54.30&quot;</td>
<td>16 p.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>79° 44' 58.43&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>32.63905</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>79.78974</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>West Excavation</td>
<td>32° 37' 54.05&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>79° 45' 37.36&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>32.62166</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>79.76052</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>West Excavation</td>
<td>32° 38' 05.64&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>79° 45' 58.32&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>32.63601</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>79.75872</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>West Excavation</td>
<td>32° 38' 44.72&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>79° 44' 37.36&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>32.73745</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>79.73683</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>East Excavation</td>
<td>32° 38' 30.05&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>79° 44' 06.66&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>32.63501</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Comment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Comment</th>
<th>Comment/Letter No.</th>
<th>EPA Region 4 and USACE Charleston District Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>East Excavation</td>
<td>16 p.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32o 37' 29.80&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79o 44' 46.10&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32.52497</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79.71768</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>East Excavation</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32o 37' 44.47&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79o 45' 17.40&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32.52741</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79.75290</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>East Excavation</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In general, we recommend that the document more specifically reference, where appropriate, the existing lease agreement dated 15 June 2015 and the potential use for up to 6,000,000 cubic yards instead of the current 4.6 MCY projected range based on prior requests. Though the document references the potential removal of this material to support the terminal expansion project it is not clear if it was considered in any of the modeling or whether future disposal actions under the Site Management and Monitoring Plan (SMMP) would be managed to avoid dumping within the currently leased area. As described on page 25 of the EA, “new work and G&M material can be disposed randomly within the ODMDS with the objective of developing a relatively flat-topped mound to maximize the ODMDS capacity and reduce transport of material from the ODMDS.” It is recommended that the USACE Charleston District and EPA coordinate with the SCSPA regarding the boundaries of the lease area, their proposed dredging schedule and volumes, and future management of sediment disposal to avoid impacting, where practicable, currently defined areas containing suitable material and facilitate beneficial use of sediment. This recommendation is in accordance with the management objective outlined on page 17/18 of the SMMP (Appendix C) to “provide for beneficial use of dredged material whenever practical.” The SMMP currently states that “no specific disposal technique is required for this site” but that there is “the intent to maximize any advantages of strategic placement of materials.” Recommend that the “site monitoring” section of the SMMP recognize and consider the potential future removal of up to 6 MCY and interest by the SCSPA in a disposal plan that maximizes for future beneficial use.

Thank you again for the opportunity to comment and please contact me if you have any questions.

2. Sections 1.3.2, 2.1.1, and 3.15 of Final EA have been revised to reflect the existing lease agreement and the potential use for up to 6 mcy instead of the previous range of 4 to 6 mcy. Figure 2-1 has been updated to show the boundaries of the SCSPA/BOEM lease area. The detailed map of the borrow areas provided in this letter has been added to Section 3.15.2 as Figure 3-15.

3. The potential removal of up to 6 mcy of material was considered in the modeling; however, the modeled placement zones did not consider exclusion zones for the lease because the lease is temporary and disposal can avoid the lease area for a short period of time. The SMMP will be edited to include language recognizing potential competing interests in material located within the boundaries of the ODMDS.
1. All the comment letters received were forwarded to DHEC to allow time to fully consider submitted comments prior to rendering a decision by February 2, 2016.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Comment</th>
<th>Comment/Letter No.</th>
<th>EPA Region 4 and USACE Charleston District Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>South Carolina Department of Natural Resources</td>
<td>18 p.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ms. Jennifer S. Derby, Chief</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marine Regulatory and Wetlands Enforcement Section</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.S. Environmental Protection Agency</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61 Forsyth Street, SW</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atlanta, Georgia 3033</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RE: Draft Environmental Assessment for Modification of the Charleston Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site (ODMDS), Charleston, South Carolina</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dear Ms. Derby:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The South Carolina Department of Natural Resources (DNR) has reviewed the Draft Environmental Assessment (EA) for Modification of the Charleston Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site (ODMDS) and offers the following comments.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project Description: The EA describes six alternatives for providing additional ocean dredged material disposal capacity, as well as the “No Action” alternative. Only the “Preferred Alternative” (Alternative 1) and the “No Action Alternative” are evaluated in detail. The Preferred Alternative would modify the Charleston ODMDS by expanding the disposal area to the north, south, and east by adding 5.8 m³ (4.4 nm³) which would increase the designated disposal area to 9.6 m³ (7.4 nm³). In addition, the proposed action will formally de-designate 10.4 m³ (7.3 nm³) of restricted disposal area within the current Charleston ODMDS primarily west of the current disposal zone that contains widespread hardbottom habitat. This ocean disposal site will be available as an alternative for the disposal of suitable dredged material when no economically practicable upland placement or beneficial reuse options are available. The size of the proposed ODMDS modification area is based on current capacity analysis of the existing disposal zone within the Charleston ODMDS, historical dredging volumes, future dredging volumes for new work and maintenance projects, estimated shoaling rates, capacity of upland Confined Disposal Facilities in the area, and consideration of historical ODMDS monitoring programs.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### General Comments:

Overall, the DNR concurs with the proposed action and believes it is generally consistent with recommendations made in our earlier comment letter (dated 2/13/13) on the Notice of Intent (NOI) to modify the existing ODMDS. The DNR has some outstanding concerns regarding the identification of certain hardbottom areas within the modified ODMDS, the lack of a proposed berm along the northeastern edge of the modified ODMDS, the uncertainty about the structural stability and final dimensions of the proposed "U-shaped" berm along the western, southern, and eastern boundaries of the modified ODMDS, and certain aspects of the Site Management and Monitoring Plan (SMMP). These concerns and additional recommendations are described in greater detail below.

### Comments on the Preferred Alternative (Alternative 1):

In our earlier comment letter on the NOI (referred above), we expressed concern about potential adverse impacts the proposed expansion might have on aquatic resources, particularly hardbottom areas that may support numerous species of epifaunal invertebrates and associated fishes of ecological, recreational, and commercial importance.

As reported in the EA, sidescan sonar and sub-bottom profile surveys conducted by SCDNR and Coastal Carolina University (CCU) confirmed the presence of hardbottom ledges to the north and west of the current disposal area, and possibly to the south. More recent surveys conducted by CCU in 2013 identified a 2.4-acre area of hardbottom that straddles the northern boundary of the modified ODMDS area, with approximately 1.6 acres of this hardbottom habitat contained within the proposed ODMDS itself. While this represents only 0.04% of the total area within the modified ODMDS, an additional 24.7 acres (6.8%) of the proposed ODMDS area is identified as "possible hardbottom." In addition, the CCU survey identified an area of hardbottom habitat inside the original southern boundary of the proposed ODMDS modification area. The EA states that, in an effort to avoid impacts to hardbottom habitat, the southern boundary was moved farther north to provide a 100-meter buffer from the mapped hardbottom areas. Figure 3-9 shows two areas of known hardbottom within the original ODMDS near its southern boundary; however, Figure 2-1 does not show these hardbottom areas. Furthermore, Figure 2-1 shows the southern boundary of the modified ODMDS as being farther south, rather than farther north, of the southern boundary of the existing ODMDS disposal area. This suggests that there may be additional hardbottom areas within the modified ODMDS that are not shown in Figure 2-1 nor included in the total area of hardbottom that may be impacted by the proposed expansion. This seeming discrepancy between the earlier and more recent survey data (as illustrated by a comparison between Figures 2-1 and 3-9) should be corrected or explained in the EA.

In order to prevent fine-grained sediments from migrating out of the proposed ODMDS and possibly onto hardbottom habitat, the EA proposes to create a "U-shaped" berm around three sides of the modified ODMDS by extending an existing berm along the

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Comment</th>
<th>Comment/Letter No.</th>
<th>EPA Region 4 and USACE Charleston District Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Draft Environmental Assessment for Modification of the Charleston ODMDS</td>
<td>18 p.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Comments: Overall, the DNR concurs with the proposed action and believes it is generally consistent with recommendations made in our earlier comment letter</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comments on the Preferred Alternative (Alternative 1):</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In our earlier comment letter on the NOI (referred above), we expressed concern about potential adverse impacts the proposed expansion might have on aquatic resources, particularly hardbottom areas that may support numerous species of epifaunal invertebrates and associated fishes of ecological, recreational, and commercial importance.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>As reported in the EA, sidescan sonar and sub-bottom profile surveys conducted by SCDNR and Coastal Carolina University (CCU) confirmed the presence of hardbottom ledges to the north and west of the current disposal area, and possibly to the south. More recent surveys conducted by CCU in 2013 identified a 2.4-acre area of hardbottom that straddles the northern boundary of the modified ODMDS area, with approximately 1.6 acres of this hardbottom habitat contained within the proposed ODMDS itself. While this represents only 0.04% of the total area within the modified ODMDS, an additional 24.7 acres (6.8%) of the proposed ODMDS area is identified as &quot;possible hardbottom.&quot; In addition, the CCU survey identified an area of hardbottom habitat inside the original southern boundary of the proposed ODMDS modification area. The EA states that, in an effort to avoid impacts to hardbottom habitat, the southern boundary was moved farther north to provide a 100-meter buffer from the mapped hardbottom areas. Figure 3-9 shows two areas of known hardbottom within the original ODMDS near its southern boundary; however, Figure 2-1 does not show these hardbottom areas. Furthermore, Figure 2-1 shows the southern boundary of the modified ODMDS as being farther south, rather than farther north, of the southern boundary of the existing ODMDS disposal area. This suggests that there may be additional hardbottom areas within the modified ODMDS that are not shown in Figure 2-1 nor included in the total area of hardbottom that may be impacted by the proposed expansion. This seeming discrepancy between the earlier and more recent survey data (as illustrated by a comparison between Figures 2-1 and 3-9) should be corrected or explained in the EA.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In order to prevent fine-grained sediments from migrating out of the proposed ODMDS and possibly onto hardbottom habitat, the EA proposes to create a &quot;U-shaped&quot; berm around three sides of the modified ODMDS by extending an existing berm along the</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1. To address the seeming discrepancy between survey data between Figures 2-1 and 3-9:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 3-9 was intended to generally show that hardbottom is widely distributed along the coast. Figure 3-9 depicts results from a regional bottom habitat mapping and database compilation effort that was published in 2001 (SEAMAP 2001). Although Figure 3-9 shows two areas of known hardbottom within ODMDS dump zone, this data appears to have been collected in 1998 based on the date of the GIS shapefile provided on the CD that accompanies the 2001 SEAMAP report. These areas were identified on a cursory level and have likely been covered in sediments since that time. The hardbottom data collected during the 2013 survey conducted by CCU is depicted in Figure 2-1 because it is the most recent data available to show the extent of hardbottom resources within the proposed expansion area.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2. To clarify changes to the southern boundary:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The southern boundary of the currently proposed modified ODMDS was moved farther north compared to the original boundary proposed within the letter of intent (Letter 1, Figure 2) that was published February 10, 2012; not the southern boundary of the existing ODMDS disposal zone. The boundaries of the 2013 CCU survey area included all areas outside of the existing ODMDS parallelogram.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comment</td>
<td>Comment/Letter No.</td>
<td>EPA Region 4 and USACE Charleston District Response</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Draft Environmental Assessment for Modification of the Charleston ODMDS</td>
<td>18 p.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

western boundary and constructing new berms along the southern and eastern boundaries of the of the modified ODMDS. The berm would consist of limestone rock dredged from the navigation channel as part of the Fos0-45 Charleston Harbor Deepening Project. Although there is probable hardbottom located north of the modified ODMDS, no berm is proposed to be constructed along the northern boundary so that vessels transporting dredged material can easily access the ODMDS from this direction. Instead, a 3000-foot buffer along the northern perimeter of the ODMDS is provided, within which dumping would not occur. Modeling conducted as part of the EA indicates that this buffer should be sufficient to protect probable hardbottom areas to the north of the site; however, the DNR recommends that a partial berm along the northeastern corner of the modified ODMDS be considered, in order to protect the known and probable hardbottom areas that extend along the northern boundary of the modified ODMDS, as shown in Figure 2.1. Insufficient limestone rock (or other consolidated dredged material) is available to extend the berm along the northeastern boundary of the modified ODMDS, consideration should be given to shortening the north end of the western berm to provide the needed material (provided there are no currently unidentified hardbottom areas that would be impacted by shortening the western berm). This action could have the additional benefit of preventing the western berm from intersecting the designated transportation route for vessels traveling to and from the Charleston ODMDS, as shown in Figure 3 of the Site Management and Monitoring Plan (SMMP) (Appendix C).

Overall, the DNR supports the "beneficial use" of dredged material to create the proposed berm, and believes it would serve as appropriate compensatory mitigation for potential impacts to known possible, and probable hardbottom areas within and adjacent to the modified ODMDS. As such, a rigorous monitoring program should be developed to verify the proposed berm is constructed as described in the EA, remains stable, and eventually supports many, if not all, of the ecological functions of natural hardbottom habitat.

Site Management and Monitoring Plan (SMMP):

As noted in the EA, an interagency team has existed since the development of the original Site Management and Monitoring Plan (SMMP) for the Charleston ODMDS in 1993, and is responsible for the development of subsequent revisions to this plan. The team consists of representatives from the following agencies: US Army Corps of Engineers Charleston District, US Environmental Protection Agency Region 4, US Fish and Wildlife Service, National Marine Fisheries Service, SCDNR, and SC State Ports Authority. To date, this team has not met to discuss the details of the revised SMMP as presented in the EA, so the DNR regards the proposed plan as a draft document that requires further collaboration, discussion, and modification. A final SMMP agreed to by all agencies should be developed well in advance of any future dredged material disposal in the modified ODMDS area. The DNR offers the following general comments on the proposed SMMP to be further discussed by the interagency team.

3. Thank you for the recommendation. However, due to potential constraints to scows and hoppers accessing the ODMDS, the berm will not extend along the northern boundary. We are confident that the 3000 foot buffer provided is more than adequate to protect any habitat that may be present. We base our decision on the facts that this is more than one half of a mile distance (beyond what NMFS recommends) and our confidence in the results of the model (see Appendix D). Because our decision is based on adequacy of the current plan to protect the probable habitat and our desire to avoid any measures which could severely limit normal operations, and not lack of appropriate material for construction of berms, we see no need to reduce the northern portion of the western berm.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Comment</th>
<th>Comment/Letter No.</th>
<th>EPA Region 4 and USACE Charleston District Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Draft Environmental Assessment for Modification of the Charleston ODMDS</td>
<td>18 p.4</td>
<td>4. While it is true that historical operations from the early 1990's did have incidences of inadvertent opening of scows which resulted in mis-dumps occurring over live bottom areas, both EPA and the USACE have invested a significant amount of resources to eliminate the potential for this type of event. We believe the current compliance monitoring requirements contained within the SMMP to be adequate in addressing the concerns stated here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. As stated in the SMMP, a transportation route for vessels travelling to and from the Charleston ODMDS will be specified to minimize possible interference with nearby fishing grounds and commercial navigation. The specified transportation route should also avoid crossing any known or probable hardbottom areas to prevent adverse impacts to these areas from the inadvertent loss or unauthorized disposal of dredged material from vessels on route to the ODMDS.</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5. We appreciate the concerns you have regarding the use of coarse grained material for constructing berms. However, we only propose to continue how material has been used in previous berm construction of the current ODMDS. To date, monitoring data has shown this approach to be effective in containing the finer grained material.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. It is stated that any coarse grained material, or suitable consolidated material which is not used for another beneficial purpose (i.e., beach nourishment), will be used as needed to expand the boundary berms. The DNR questions the advisability of using coarse grained material for constructing the proposed berms and recommends that only consolidated material, such as limestone rock, be used for this purpose.</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6. The SMMP proposes a suite of additional environmental monitoring to be performed and your suggestions are included as part of the monitoring recommendations in the SMMP. The EPA and USACE intend to meet with the ODMDS task force in early summer 2016 to refine the details of the monitoring program in the SMMP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site Monitoring:</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>7. EPA and USACE agree that this is appropriate and needed for management and monitoring of the modified ODMDS. The suggested language change was made. A meeting with the ODMDS task force is planned for early summer 2016.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. It is stated in the SMMP that a monitoring plan will be implemented to determine if disposal at the site is significantly affecting adjacent areas and to detect the presence of long-term adverse effects. At a minimum, the monitoring program will consist of bathymetric surveys, sediment grain size analysis, chemical analysis of constituents of concern in the sediments, and an assessment of the benthic community. The DNR recommends that the monitoring program specifically include a comprehensive assessment of the final dimensions and physical characteristics of the proposed berm, as well as a long-term assessment of its structural stability, its efficacy as a sediment containment device, and its development as functional habitat for &quot;livebottom&quot; communities of invertebrates and fishes.</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>8. EPA and USACE agree this is a good idea. No change will be made to the SMMP, but USACE will convene the ODMDS task force in Spring 2016.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comment</td>
<td>Comment/Letter No.</td>
<td>EPA Region 4 and USACE Charleston District Response</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Draft Environmental Assessment for Modification of the Charleston ODMDS</td>
<td>18 p.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>activity in the expanded ODMDS area, whichever occurs first. Although</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extensive data already exists for the ODMDS as it is currently configured, no comparable data exists for the modified ODMDS as proposed. In addition, the most recent published studies of biological communities in the vicinity of the existing ODMDS are over 10 years old. Therefore, new baseline studies are needed to determine any impacts of the proposed action and to inform future management decisions.</td>
<td>8 cont</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. The SMMP lists several objectives of the proposed monitoring program, including evaluating the success of the proposed submerged berm construction on (1) retarding the over-bottom movement of dredged material, (2) the development of habitat and attraction of recreationally important fish species to demonstrate beneficial uses of ODMDS berm design and (3) the recruitment of sessile invertebrates to the substrate. As noted above, the DNR supports this objective; however, in the following section (&quot;Additional Monitoring Approach and Rationale&quot;), no mention is made of a proposed approach to monitoring the berm. Such an approach should be developed in consultation with the SMMP task force and included in the text of the final EA.</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>No change will be made to the EA. The SMMP will be edited to include language for berm monitoring.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Conclusions:

The DNR generally concurs with the proposed modification of the Charleston ODMDS and, with the caveats noted above, believes the EA is largely consistent with recommendations made in our earlier comment letter on the NOI for this project. The DNR looks forward to further coordinating with the EPA and Corps, as a member of the interagency SMMP task force, to further develop and refine a monitoring plan that will adequately address the potential impacts of the proposed modification and inform future management decisions regarding the Charleston ODMDS.

If you have any questions regarding these comments, please contact me at wendpt@dnr.sc.gov.

Sincerely,

Priscilla H. Wendt

Priscilla H. Wendt
Office of Environmental Programs

Cc: USACE
USFWS
NOAA/NMFS
SCDHEC/EDC
SCDHEC/OCR
**Response to Comments on Charleston ODMDS Environmental Assessment**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Comment</th>
<th>Comment/Letter No.</th>
<th>EPA Region 4 and USACE Charleston District Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.....Original Message.....</td>
<td>19 p.1</td>
<td>No response required.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**From:** Jordan, Brian [mailto:brian.jordan@boem.gov]

**Sent:** Wednesday, January 20, 2016 3:37 PM

**To:** Messersmith, Mark J SAC [mailto:Mark.J.Messersmith@usace.army.mil]

**Cc:** Pastkowski, Douglas [mailto:douglas.pastkowski@boem.gov] Jennifer Rosk [mailto:Jennifer.Rosk@boem.gov]; Jennifer Guibertson [mailto:Jennifer.Guibertson@boem.gov]; Paul Knorr [mailto:paul.knorr@boem.gov]; Brian Krevor [mailto:brian.krevor@boem.gov]; Collins, Gary [mailto:Collins.Gary@seaco.gov]

**Subject:** Re: [EXTERNAL] Fwd: Charleston ODMDS modification EA (EPA and USACE)

Hi Doug,

I have reviewed the pertinent sections of the document related to historical and cultural resources. It appears that the ACCE has been in consultation with the SCIAA to perform the marine cultural resources survey and analysis of the data. Since they have no issues with the expansion, I do not have any issues with the proposed expansion. I applaud the ACCE’s work with SCIAA to address the potential impacts to these resources in a proactive manner.

Cheers,

Brian

**ATTENTION: New Office Address [See Below]**

Brian Jordan, Ph.D.
Federal Preservation Officer 703.787.1748
Headquarters Archaeologist Cell/571.335.8970
[mailto:Brian.Jordan@boem.gov] Fax/703.787.1025

Bureau of Ocean Energy Management
[mailto:http://www.boem.gov/images/boem/layout/logo.png]
Office of Environmental Programs
45600 Woodland Road, VAM-OEP
Sterling, VA 20166
[mailto:http://www.boem.gov/OEP/]

On Thu, Jan 14, 2016 at 7:52 PM, Messersmith, Mark J SAC [mailto:Mark.J.Messersmith@usace.army.mil] wrote:

Doug et al.,

Thanks for your timely review of the project and for the specific comments and suggested language changes. We look forward to any further comments related to cultural resources or renewable energy. Please let us know if you’ll need additional time to submit those comments. I’d like to let your team know that this Wednesday we received a letter from the SC SHPO that concurred with a determination of no adverse effect to historic properties. I can make that letter available to you.
Response to Comments on Charleston ODMDS Environmental Assessment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Comment</th>
<th>Comment/ Letter No.</th>
<th>EPA Region 4 and USACE Charleston District Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tomorrow if needed. I have cc'd Gary Collins, USEPA, as he is the EPA lead on the project. We will follow up with you if we have any questions. Respectfully, Mark</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark Messersmith</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Planning and Environmental Branch</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>US Army Corps of Engineers</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charleston District</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69A Hagoood Ave</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charleston, SC 29403</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(p) (843) 324-8162</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f) (843) 324-3231</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><a href="mailto:mark.j.messersmith@usace.army.mil">mark.j.messersmith@usace.army.mil</a> <a href="mailto:mark.j.messersmith@usace.army.mil">mailto:mark.j.messersmith@usace.army.mil</a></td>
<td>19 p.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comment</td>
<td>Comment/Letter No.</td>
<td>EPA Region 4 and USACE Charleston District Response</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lt. Col. Matthew Luzzatto, Chief, Corps of Engineers, Charleston District, 69A Huger Avenue, Charleston, South Carolina 29403-3107</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>No response required.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

January 19, 2016

Matter via Electronic Mail

Lt. Col. Matthew Luzzatto
Charleston District, Corps of Engineers
69A Huger Avenue
Charleston, South Carolina 29403-3107

Jennifer Derby, Chief, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Region 4, 61 Forsyth Street, Atlanta, Georgia 30303

Attention: Mark Morrison and Gary Collins

Dear Colonel Luzzatto and Ms. Derby:

NOAA's National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS) reviewed the Draft Environmental Assessment for Modification of the Charleston Harbor Green Dredged Material Disposal Site (ODMDS), Charleston, South Carolina, dated November 2015. Present staffing levels prevent further analysis of the proposed ODMDS expansion by the NMFS Habitat Conservation Division. This position is neither supportive of nor in opposition to the proposed expansion.

In accordance with section 7 of the Endangered Species Act of 1973, as amended, it is the responsibility of the Charleston District and U.S. Environmental Protection Agency to review and identify any proposed activity that may affect endangered or threatened species and their designated critical habitat. Determinations involving species under NMFS jurisdiction should be reported to NMFS Protected Resources Division at the letterhead address.

Sincerely,

[Signature]

V. M. Fay
Assistant Regional Administrator
Habitat Conservation Division

cc: COE, Mark J. Morrison, mark.j.morrison@usace.army.mil
EPA, derby.jennifer@epa.gov, collins.garyw@epa.gov
SCDNR, Wanda.F Đầu@sc.dnr.gov
F/SER4, David.Dake@noaa.gov
F/SER47, Jocelyn.Daly@noaa.gov
January 6, 2015

Gary Collins
U.S. Environmental Protection Agency
61 Forsyth Street, SW
Atlanta, GA 30303

Re: Modification of the Charleston ODMDS Draft EA
Charleston County, South Carolina
SHPO Project Number 15-39698

Dear Gary Collins:

Thank you for your letter of December 4, which we received on December 9, and follow-up email dated January 4 regarding the above-referenced project. We also received a copy of the draft EA and supporting documentation for this undertaking. The State Historic Preservation Office is providing comments to the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA) pursuant to Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act and its implementing regulations, 36 CFR 800.

Consultation with the SHPO is not a substitute for consultation with Tribal Historic Preservation Offices, other Native American tribes, local governments, or the public.

Archaeological survey was completed for this project during the Phase 1 site assessment study. The targets that were identified and investigated were found to be modern debris. The USEPA has determined that the project will have no adverse effect on historic properties; however, we don't believe that recommendation is appropriate due to the absence of historic properties in the Area of Potential Effects (APE). Based on the description of the APE and the identification of historic properties within the APE, our office would comment with the assessment that no properties listed in or eligible for listing in the National Register of Historic Places will be affected by this project.

If you have any questions, please contact me at (803) 896-4181 or edale@odnah.sc.gov.

Sincerely,
Emily Dale
State Archaeologist/GIS Coordinator
State Historic Preservation Office

cc: Jim Spiro, SCIAA
    Mark Monrosenich, USACE

1. The language in Section 4.15.1 has been changed to the following:
   Based on these results, no properties listed in or eligible for listing in the National Register of Historic Places will be affected by this project.
February 2, 2016

Mr. Thomas McGill  
EPA, Region 4  
Atlanta Federal Center  
61 Forsyth Street  
Atlanta, Georgia 30303-8960

Re: Draft Environmental Assessment modification – Charleston Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site – Extension Request

Dear Mr. McGill:

SC Department of Health and Environmental Control’s Office of Ocean and Coastal Resource Management (DHEC OCRM) is continuing with the review of the Draft Environmental Assessment (EA) and Federal Consistency request to modify the Charleston Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site (OOMDS). This activity is considered a Federal Agency Activity pursuant to CFR 15 930.41 and within “State Agency Responses” Section (b), the State may request an extension of 15 days beyond the prescribed 60 days review timeframe. The regulation further states “Federal agencies shall approve one request for an extension period of 15 days or less.” We had previously stated the 90 day timeframe ended on February 2, 2016.

DHEC OCRM will render a decision by February 17, 2016, given the timeframe captured in CFR 15 930.41(b) (found at coast.naco.gov/cm/consistency/media/15CFRPart930_2007.pdf). The extension would provide DHEC OCRM the ability to more fully consider all recently received Agency comments.

Please provide an acceptance to the 15 day extension request by mail or my email address listed below. Otherwise, please let me know if there are any questions or concerns.

Sincerely,

Curtis M. Joyner  
Manager Coastal Zone Consistency, Regulatory Division  
DHEC OCRM  
1302 McMillan Avenue, Ste 400  
Charleston, S. C 29405  
843-953-6205  
joynercm@dhec.sc.gov

Cc: Elizabeth von Kohnitz, SCDHEC OCRM  
Rhea DiNardo SCDHEC OCRM  
Mark Messersmith, USACE

1. Extension was granted.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Comment</th>
<th>Letter No.</th>
<th>EPA Region 4 and USACE Charleston District Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Comment/</td>
<td>23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

February 17, 2016

Mr. Thomas McGill
EPA, Region 4
Atlanta Federal Center
61 Forsyth Street
Atlanta, Georgia 30303-8960

Re: Draft Environmental Assessment on Modification of the Charleston Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site - Coastal Zone Consistency, CZC-15-1357

Dear Mr. McGill:

This letter is in response to the US Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA), in coordination with the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Draft Environmental Assessment (DEA) and Federal Consistency request to modify the Charleston Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site (ODMDS).

The purpose of the proposed modification is to accommodate disposal of dredged material from the planned Charleston Harbor Deepening Study (Project 45), as well as maintenance dredging material and dredged material from non-Federal entities. The preferred alternative consists of the reconfiguration of the ODMDS by expanding the current authorized disposal zone. The preferred alternative also includes the placement of a U-shaped berm on the eastern, southern, and western perimeter of the modified ODMDS. The current disposal zone is 12.1 square nautical miles (nm²) in area, while the current authorized disposal zone is 3 nm². The proposed modification will result in the reconfigured ODMDS with an area of 7.4 nm², with the proposed restrictive zone delineated. Dredging and dredge material disposal are approved under activities contained in the South Carolina Coastal Zone Management Program (SCCZMP) as a result in this review. The USEPA has stated the proposed action is consistent with the SCCZMP and is requesting concurrence.

After reviewing the Draft DEA, the Draft Site Management and Monitoring Plan, the Consistency Determination, as well as comments received in response to this proposed activity, the South Carolina Department of Health and Environmental Control (SCDHHEC) conditionally concurs that the proposed expansion and reconfiguration of the ODMDS complies with the enforceable policies contained within the SCCZMP pursuant to 40 C.F.R. § 930.55. This concurrence is based upon review of the Guidelines for Evaluation of All Projects as well as the (1) Dredging (Dredged Material Disposal), (2) Wildlife and Fisheries Management and (3) Activities in Areas of Special Resource Significance (Public Open Spaces) policies contained within the SCCZMP.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Comment</th>
<th>Comment/Letter No.</th>
<th>EPA Region 4 and USACE Charleston District Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Page Two  
Mr. Thomas McGill  
February 17, 2016  

Therefore, pursuant to 15 C.F.R., § 930.4 (Conditional Concurrences) SCDHEC is providing the following conditions to ensure consistency with the previously mentioned enforceable policies of the SCCZMP.  

1. Only the 7.4 (mm^2) area identified in the Draft EA was reviewed by SCDHEC and any expansion beyond that area has not been reviewed nor has a consistency concurrence been issued.  

2. The Draft Site Management and Monitoring Plan contained in the EA should be finalized in consultation with SCDHEC and other State and Federal Resource Agencies in advance of any future dredged material disposal event.  

Please do not hesitate to contact me should you have any questions.  

Sincerely,  

Curtis M. Joyner  
Manager, Coastal Zone Consistency Section  
SCDHEC OCRM  
1362 McMillan Avenue, Suite 400  
Charleston, SC 29405  
843-953-0205  
joynercm@dhec.sc.gov

cc: Elizabeth von Kolnitz, SCDHEC OCRM  
Rheta DiNovo, SCDHEC OCRM  
Mark Messersmith, USACOE

1. A meeting to obtain final comments to the SMMP is being planned for early summer 2016.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Comment/Letter No.</th>
<th>EPA Region 4 and USACE Charleston District Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>No response required.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Comment

This letter responds to your request for consultation with the National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS), pursuant to Section 7 of the Endangered Species Act (ESA) for the following action:

Modification of the Charleston Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site (D.M. Site) proposal, as presented in the Draft Environmental Assessment (DEA) by the Charleston District.

Dear Sirs,

This letter responds to your request for consultation with the National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS), pursuant to Section 7 of the Endangered Species Act (ESA) for the following action:

Modification of the Charleston Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site (D.M. Site) proposal, as presented in the Draft Environmental Assessment (DEA) by the Charleston District.

We received your letter on December 4, 2015, requesting consultation for the project referenced above. This consultation was not initiated until March 16, 2016, due to a large backlog of project reviews. The NMFS, as a cooperating agency with the DEA, prepared a Draft Biological Opinion (DBO) for the project.

Consultation History

- The DEA, as a cooperating agency with the DEA, prepared a Draft Biological Opinion (DBO) for the project.

Applicants

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) and U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE)

Project Number

SER-2016-17630

Project Type

Dredged Material Disposal Site (D.M. Site)

Potential Impacts

- Potential impacts to ESA-listed species associated with the Charleston Harbor Deepening Project were covered under the 1997 South Atlantic Regional Biological Opinion (SARBO).
Response to Comments on Charleston ODMDS Environmental Assessment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Comment</th>
<th>Comment/Letter No.</th>
<th>EPA Region 4 and USACE Charleston District Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Table 1. Coordinates of Existing Charleston ODMDS in the Atlantic Ocean

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Latitude/Longitude: (North American Datum 1983)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SE Corner</td>
<td>32.6078°N, 79.7508°W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SW Corner</td>
<td>32.6511°N, 79.8235°W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE Corner</td>
<td>32.6330°N, 79.6991°W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NW Corner</td>
<td>32.6733°N, 79.7916°W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Center</td>
<td>32.6435°N, 79.7638°W</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 1. Location of Charleston ODMDS showing existing boundaries in blue and proposed modifications (Arthur Environmental Consulting 2015)

Existing Site Conditions
The Charleston ODMDS is located approximately 9 miles east of Charleston, South Carolina, and south of the Charleston Harbor Entrance Channel in water depths ranging from -3.5 feet (ft) to -48 ft mean low water. There are 1.6 acres of hardbottom within the ODMDS site. Hardbottom is also found south of the ODMDS adjacent to a portion of the existing site that is proposed for de-designation. In addition, the EA states that probable hardbottom lies adjacent to the proposed boundary modification on the northeast corner.

Project Descriptions
The EPA, at the request of the USACE, is evaluating proposed action to modify the Charleston ODMDS as a permanent site for the ocean disposal of dredged material resulting from new dredging work and in support of the Charleston Harbor Federal Navigation Project. The current site is 15.1 square miles (sq mi) and the authorized disposal zone with the ODMDS is 4 sq mi. The modification would increase the area of the disposal site to the north, east, and south by 5.8 sq mi, which would expand the total disposal area to 9.8 sq mi. A new beam would be created
Response to Comments on Charleston ODMDS Environmental Assessment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Species</th>
<th>ESA Listing Status</th>
<th>Action Agency Effect Determination</th>
<th>NMFS Effect Determination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Turtles</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green</td>
<td>E/T</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kemp’s ridley</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loggerhead</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hawksbill</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leatherback</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fish</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shortnose sturgeon</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>NF</td>
<td>NP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atlantic sturgeon</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>NF</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smalltooth Sawfish</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>NF</td>
<td>NP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marine Mammals</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>North Atlantic right whale</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Humpback whale</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Comment/ Letter No.**

**EPA Region 4 and USACE Charleston District Response**

around the expanded disposal site using limestone rock material dredged from deepening the entrance channel. This will add approximately 427 acres of new hardbottom habitat. The proposed modification would also de-designate 10.4 sq mi of restricted disposal area within the current ODMDS that contains widespread hardbottom habitat.

**Table 1. Status of Listed Species and Critical Habitat in the Action Area**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Species</th>
<th>ESA Listing Status</th>
<th>Action Agency Effect Determination</th>
<th>NMFS Effect Determination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Turtles</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green</td>
<td>E/T</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kemp’s ridley</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loggerhead</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hawksbill</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leatherback</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fish</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shortnose sturgeon</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>NF</td>
<td>NP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atlantic sturgeon</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>NF</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smalltooth Sawfish</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>NF</td>
<td>NP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marine Mammals</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>North Atlantic right whale</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Humpback whale</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
<td>NLAA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Shortnose Sturgeon and Smalltooth Sawfish**

We concur with the EPA’s determination that shortnose sturgeon and smalltooth sawfish would not be present in the project area since shortnose sturgeon are primarily found in lower salinities within rivers and the project area is located north of the known range for smalltooth sawfish.

**North Atlantic Right Whale (NARW) Critical Habitat**

The Charleston ODMDS is located within Unit 2 of the NARW critical habitat. Disposal-related activities occurring within the Charleston ODMDS modification will not significantly alter the existing water depths. The EPA has stated that the modification will have no effect on critical habitat for right whales.

**Loggerhead Sea Turtle Critical Habitat**

Designated loggerhead sea turtle critical habitat unit LGGG-N07 lies approximately 8 mi west of the closest point of the Charleston ODMDS, but because it is located outside of the action area and beyond the effects of disposal-related turbidity plumes it will not be affected by the proposed modification.

---

1 E = Endangered, T = Threatened, NP = Not Present, NLAA = Not Likely to Affect
2 Green turtles are listed as threatened except for the Florida and Pacific coast of Mexico breeding populations, which are listed as endangered.
3 SARA 2019
4 River and inshore habitats within the action area may affect Atlantic sturgeon from the Carolinas and South Atlantic DFOs. However, Atlantic sturgeon from all DFOs may be affected in offshore waters within the action area.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Analysis of Potential Route of Effects to Species</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We believe that North Atlantic right and humpback whales, loggerhead, green, and Kemp's ridley sea turtles, and Atlantic salmon may be present in the action area and may be affected by the project. We have identified the following potential effects to these species and concluded that the species are not likely to be adversely affected:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Effects to ESA-listed species include the risk of injury from the physical action associated with construction of the berms, vessel strike from dredge-related vessels going into and out of the ODMDS, and dredged material disposal in the ODMDS. The creation of the berms will function as artificial habitat and could be beneficial to ESA species as new foraging and resting habitat. In addition, the designation of the western area of the ODMDS will protect habitats found within the boundaries of that portion of the ODMDS from being impacted by disposal activities. This will also benefit ESA species by protecting habitat that could be used for foraging and resting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Whales</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There is potential for construction-related activities and vessel strike to affect whales in the area. Berm construction and sediment disposal in the ODMDS may cause a whale to move away from the immediate area, but there are ample available habitats nearby. Given the slow speed and low number of individual dredge-related vessels and the small footprint of the dredged material dumps, right whales will not be prevented from moving about in or migrating through the area. Established whale conservation measures acquired for dredge-related vessels will also protect whales. Thus, we believe berm construction and dredging-related activities at the ODMDS and vessel transport to and from the ODMDS will have an insignificant effect on whales.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Atlantic Salmon and Sea Turtles</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Due to their expected avoidance of project activity, we would not expect an Atlantic salmon or sea turtle to remain stationary within the action area while the berm is being constructed or during disposal of dredged sediments within the ODMDS. There are many other suitable foraging and resting areas in the vicinity of the project site outside of the ODMDS that listed species could utilize. In addition, the project area can be used by these species during quiet periods between dredging disposal actions. Compliance with NMFS's Sea Turtle and Smalltooth Sawfish Construction Conditions, dated March 2006, will provide an additional measure of protection. In summary, we believe the effects on Atlantic salmon and sea turtles caused during construction of the berm and during dredged material disposal will be insignificant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Conclusion</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Because all potential project activities to listed species were found to be discountable, insignificant, or beneficial, we conclude that the proposed actions are not likely to adversely affect listed species under NMFS's purview. This concludes the EPA's and USACE's consultation responsibilities under the ESA for species under NMFS's purview. Consultation must be reaffirmed if a new action occurs or if new information reveals effects of the action not previously considered, or if the identified actions are subsequently modified in a manner that causes an effect to the listed species or critical habitat in a manner or to an extent not previously considered, or if a new species is listed or critical habitat designated that may be affected by the identified action. NMFS's findings on the project's potential effects are based on the project description in this...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Response to Comments on Charleston ODMDS Environmental Assessment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Comment</th>
<th>Comment/Letter No.</th>
<th>EPA Region 4 and USACE Charleston District Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>response. Any changes to the proposed action may negate the findings of this consultation and may require reinitiation of consultation with NMFS. We have enclosed additional relevant information for your review. We look forward to further cooperation with you or other projects to ensure the conservation of our threatened and endangered marine species and designated critical habitat. If you have any questions on this consultation, please contact Kay Davy, Consultation Biologist, at (727) 415-9171, or by email at <a href="mailto:kay.davy@noaa.gov">kay.davy@noaa.gov</a>.</td>
<td>151-22.7.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sincerely,

Roy E. Crabtree, Ph.D.
Field Regional Administrator

Enc: FGTS Access and Additional Considerations for ESA Section 7 Consultations
(Revised March 10, 2013)
**Response to Comments on Charleston ODMDS Environmental Assessment**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Comment</th>
<th>Comment/ Letter No.</th>
<th>EPA Region 4 and USACE Charleston District Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **PCTS Access and Additional Considerations for ESA Section 7 Consultations**  
(Revised 03-10-2015)**  

Public Consultation Tracking System (PCTS) Guidance: PCTS is a Web-based query system at https://pcts.nmfs.noaa.gov/ that allows all federal agencies (e.g., U.S. Army Corps of Engineers - USACE) project managers, permit applicants, consultants, and the general public to find the current status of NMFS’s Endangered Species Act (ESA) and Essential Fish Habitats (EFH) consultations which are being conducted (or have been completed) pursuant to ESA Section 7 and the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act’s (MSA) Sections 306(b)(2) and 306(b)(4). Basic information including access to documents is available to all.  
The PCTS Home Page is shown below. For USACE-permitted projects, the easiest and quickest way to look up a project’s status, or review completed ESA/EFH consultations, is to click on either the “Corps Permit Query” link (top left); or, below it, click the “Find the status of a consultation based on the Corps Permit number” link in the golden “I Want To...” window.  

![PCTS Access and Additional Considerations for ESA Section 7 Consultations](image)

Then, from the “Corps District Office” list pick the appropriate USACE district. In the “Corps Permit ID” box, type in the 9-digit USACE permit number identifier, with no hyphens or letters. Simply enter the year and the permit number, joined together, using preceding zeros if necessary after the year to obtain the necessary 9-digit (no more, no less) number. For example, the USACE Jacksonville District’s issued permit number SAJ-2013-0235 (LP-CMW) must be typed in as 20130235 for PCTS to run a proper search and provide complete and accurate results. For querying permit applications submitted for ESA/EFH consultation by other USACE districts, the procedure is the same. For example, an inquiry on Mobile District’s permit MVN201301412 is entered as 201301412 after selecting the Mobile District from the “Corps District Office” list. PCTS questions should be directed to Kelly Shotts at Kelly.Shotts@noaa.gov or (727) 551-5603. |
| **PCTS Access and Additional Considerations for ESA Section 7 Consultations**  
(Revised 03-10-2015)**  

Public Consultation Tracking System (PCTS) Guidance: PCTS is a Web-based query system at https://pcts.nmfs.noaa.gov/ that allows all federal agencies (e.g., U.S. Army Corps of Engineers - USACE) project managers, permit applicants, consultants, and the general public to find the current status of NMFS’s Endangered Species Act (ESA) and Essential Fish Habitats (EFH) consultations which are being conducted (or have been completed) pursuant to ESA Section 7 and the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act’s (MSA) Sections 306(b)(2) and 306(b)(4). Basic information including access to documents is available to all.  
The PCTS Home Page is shown below. For USACE-permitted projects, the easiest and quickest way to look up a project’s status, or review completed ESA/EFH consultations, is to click on either the “Corps Permit Query” link (top left); or, below it, click the “Find the status of a consultation based on the Corps Permit number” link in the golden “I Want To...” window.  

![PCTS Access and Additional Considerations for ESA Section 7 Consultations](image)

Then, from the “Corps District Office” list pick the appropriate USACE district. In the “Corps Permit ID” box, type in the 9-digit USACE permit number identifier, with no hyphens or letters. Simply enter the year and the permit number, joined together, using preceding zeros if necessary after the year to obtain the necessary 9-digit (no more, no less) number. For example, the USACE Jacksonville District’s issued permit number SAJ-2013-0235 (LP-CMW) must be typed in as 20130235 for PCTS to run a proper search and provide complete and accurate results. For querying permit applications submitted for ESA/EFH consultation by other USACE districts, the procedure is the same. For example, an inquiry on Mobile District’s permit MVN201301412 is entered as 201301412 after selecting the Mobile District from the “Corps District Office” list. PCTS questions should be directed to Kelly Shotts at Kelly.Shotts@noaa.gov or (727) 551-5603. |
Response to Comments on Charleston ODMDS Environmental Assessment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Comment</th>
<th>Comment/ Letter No.</th>
<th>EPA Region 4 and USACE Charleston District Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EFH Recommendations: In addition to its protected species/critical habitat consultation requirements with NMFS’ Protected Resources Division pursuant to Section 7 of the ESA, prior to proceeding with the proposed action the action agency must also consult with NMFS’ Habitat Conservation Division (HCD) pursuant to the ESA requirements for EFH consultation. 16 U.S.C. 1831 (b)(2) and 50 CFR 600-905-.930, subpart K). The action agency should also ensure that the applicant understands the ESA and EFH processes; that ESA and EFH consultations are separate, distinct, and guided by different statutes, goals, and time lines for responding to the action agency; and that the action agency will (and the applicant may) receive separate consultation correspondence on NMFS letterhead from HCD regarding their concerns and/or finalizing EFH consultation.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) Recommendations: The ESA Section 7 process does not authorize incidental takes of listed or non-listed marine mammals. If such takes may occur an incidental take authorization under MMPA Section 101(a)(5) is necessary. Please contact NMFS’ Permits, Conservation, and Education Division at (301) 713-2322 for more information regarding MMPA permitting procedures.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 1.
Species Managed by the South Atlantic Fishery Management Council

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Management Group or Subgroup</th>
<th>Common Name¹ or Description</th>
<th>Scientific Name¹ or Taxonomic Group</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SARGASSUM FISHERY MANAGEMENT PLAN (2 species)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sargassum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sargassum fluitans</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sargassum natans</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CORAL, CORAL REEFS, AND LIVE/HARDBOTTOM HABITAT FISHERY MANAGEMENT PLAN (many species)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corals (many species)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydrocorals</td>
<td></td>
<td>Hydrozoa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire corals</td>
<td></td>
<td>Hydrozoa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Precious corals</td>
<td></td>
<td>Anthozoa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sea fans</td>
<td></td>
<td>Anthozoa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sea pens</td>
<td></td>
<td>Anthozoa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sea whips</td>
<td></td>
<td>Anthozoa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stony corals</td>
<td></td>
<td>Anthozoa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coral Reefs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constitutes hardbottom, deepwater banks, patch reefs, and outer bank reefs.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Live Rock</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any living organisms assembled or attached to a hard substrate, including dead coral or rock, but excluding individual mollusk shells.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHRIMP FISHERY MANAGEMENT PLAN (3 families, 6 species)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brown rock shrimp</td>
<td>Sicyonia brevirostris</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brown shrimp</td>
<td>Farfantepenaeus aztecus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pink shrimp</td>
<td>Farfantepenaeus duorarum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White shrimp</td>
<td>Litopenaeus setiferus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Royal red shrimp²</td>
<td>Pleoticus robustus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seabob</td>
<td>Xiphopenaeus kroyeri</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPINY LOBSTER FISHERY MANAGEMENT PLAN (1 species)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caribbean spiny lobster</td>
<td>Panulirus argus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GOLDEN CRAB FISHERY MANAGEMENT PLAN (1 species)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Golden crab²</td>
<td>Chaceon fenneri</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SNAPPER GROUPER COMPLEX FISHERY MANAGEMENT PLAN (10 families, 73 species)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sea Basses and Groupers (21 species)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bank sea bass</td>
<td>Centropristis ocyurus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Black grouper</td>
<td>Mycteroperca bonaci</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Black sea bass</td>
<td>Centropristis striata</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coney</td>
<td>Cephalopholis fulva</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gag</td>
<td>Mycteroperca microlepis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goliath grouper</td>
<td>Epinephelus itajara</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Graysby</td>
<td>Cephalopholis cruentata</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Misty grouper</td>
<td>Epinephelus mystacinus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nassau grouper</td>
<td>Epinephelus striatus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red grouper</td>
<td>Epinephelus morio</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red hind</td>
<td>Epinephelus guttatus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rock hind</td>
<td>Epinephelus ascensionis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rock sea bass</td>
<td>Centropristis philadelphica</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scamp</td>
<td>Mycteroperca phenax</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Snowy grouper</td>
<td>Epinephelus niveatus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speckled hind</td>
<td>Epinephelus drummondhayi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tiger grouper</td>
<td>Mycteroperca tigris</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warsaw grouper</td>
<td>Epinephelus nigritus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 1. (continued)  
Species Managed by the South Atlantic Fishery Management Council

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Management Group or Subgroup</th>
<th>Common Name or Description</th>
<th>Scientific Name or Taxonomic Group</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yellowedge grouper</td>
<td><em>Epinephelus flavolimbatus</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yellowfin grouper</td>
<td><em>Mycteroperca venenosa</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yellowmouth grouper</td>
<td><em>Mycteroperca interstitialis</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Wreckfishes (1 species)**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wreckfish</td>
<td><em>Polyprion americanus</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Snappers (14 species)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name or Description</th>
<th>Scientific Name or Taxonomic Group</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Black snapper</td>
<td><em>Apsilus dentatus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blackfin snapper</td>
<td><em>Lutjanus buccanella</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cubera snapper</td>
<td><em>Lutjanus cyanopterus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dog snapper</td>
<td><em>Lutjanus jocu</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gray snapper</td>
<td><em>Lutjanus griseus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lane snapper</td>
<td><em>Lutjanus synagris</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mahogany snapper</td>
<td><em>Lutjanus mahogoni</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mutton snapper</td>
<td><em>Lutjanus analis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Queen snapper</td>
<td><em>Etelis oculatus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red snapper</td>
<td><em>Lutjanus campechanus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schoolmaster</td>
<td><em>Lutjanus apodus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Silk snapper</td>
<td><em>Lutjanus vivanus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vermillion snapper</td>
<td><em>Rhomboplites aurorubens</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yellowtail snapper</td>
<td><em>Ocyurus chrysurus</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Porgies (9 species)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name or Description</th>
<th>Scientific Name or Taxonomic Group</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Grass porgy</td>
<td><em>Calamus arctifrons</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knobbed porgy</td>
<td><em>Calamus nodosus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Longspine porgy</td>
<td><em>Stenotomus caprinus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jolthead porgy</td>
<td><em>Calamus bajonado</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red porgy</td>
<td><em>Pagrus pagrus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saucereye porgy</td>
<td><em>Calamus calamus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scup</td>
<td><em>Stenotomus chrysops</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sheepshead</td>
<td><em>Archosargus probatocephalus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whitebone porgy</td>
<td><em>Calamus leucosteus</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Grunts (11 species)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name or Description</th>
<th>Scientific Name or Taxonomic Group</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Black margate</td>
<td><em>Anistotremus surinamensis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bluestriped grunt</td>
<td><em>Haemulon sciurus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cottonwick</td>
<td><em>Haemulon melanurum</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>French grunt</td>
<td><em>Haemulon flavolineatum</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Margate</td>
<td><em>Haemulon album</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porkfish</td>
<td><em>Anisotremus virgincus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sailor's choice</td>
<td><em>Haemulon parra</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smallmouth grunt</td>
<td><em>Haemulon chrysargeryum</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spanish grunt</td>
<td><em>Haemulon macrostomum</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tomtate</td>
<td><em>Haemulon aurolineatum</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White grunt</td>
<td><em>Haemulon plumieri</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Jacks (8 species)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name or Description</th>
<th>Scientific Name or Taxonomic Group</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Almaco jack</td>
<td><em>Seriola rivoliana</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Banded rudderfish</td>
<td><em>Seriola zonata</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bar jack</td>
<td><em>Caranx ruber</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blue runner</td>
<td><em>Caranx cryos</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crevalle jack</td>
<td><em>Caranx hippos</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greater amberjack</td>
<td><em>Seriola dumerili</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesser amberjack</td>
<td><em>Seriola fasciata</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yellow jack</td>
<td><em>Caranx bartholomaei</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 1.
Species Managed by the South Atlantic Fishery Management Council

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Management Group or Subgroup</th>
<th>Common Name(^1) or Description</th>
<th>Scientific Name(^1) or Taxonomic Group</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tilefishes (3 species)</strong></td>
<td>Blueline tilefish(^2)</td>
<td>Cauloplatilus microps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sand tilefish</td>
<td>Malacanthus plumieri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tilefish (AKA golden tilefish)(^2)</td>
<td>Lopholatilus chamaeleonticeps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Triggerfishes (3 species)</strong></td>
<td>Gray triggerfish</td>
<td>Balistes capriscus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ocean triggerfish</td>
<td>Canthidermis sufflamen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Queen triggerfish</td>
<td>Balistes vetula</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wrasses (2 species)</strong></td>
<td>Hogfish</td>
<td>Lachnolaimus maximus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Puddingwife</td>
<td>Halichoeres radiatus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Spadefishes (1 species)</strong></td>
<td>Atlantic spadefish</td>
<td>Chaetodipterus faber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COASTAL MIGRATORY PELAGICS FISHERY MANAGEMENT PLAN (2 families, 5 species)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cobia (1 species)</strong></td>
<td>Cobia</td>
<td>Rachycentron canadum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mackerels and Tunas (4 species)</strong></td>
<td>Cero</td>
<td>Scomberomorus regalis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Little tuna</td>
<td>Euthynnus aletteratus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>King mackerel</td>
<td>Scomberomorus cavalla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spanish mackerel</td>
<td>Scomberomorus maculatus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DOLPHINFISH WAHOO FISHERY MANAGEMENT PLAN (2 families; 3 species)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dolphinfishes (2 species managed as a single species)</strong></td>
<td>Dolphinfish(^3)</td>
<td>Coryphaena hippurus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pompano dolphinfish(^3)</td>
<td>Coryphaena equiselis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mackerels and Tunas (1 species)</strong></td>
<td>Wahoo</td>
<td>Acanthocybium solandri</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) Common and scientific names generally follow McLaughlin et al. (2005) for decapod crustaceans and Page et al. (2013) for fishes.

\(^2\) Known depth range or geographic range for species is far outside of the alternative site.

\(^3\) Dolphinfish and pompano dolphinfish are managed as a single species (dolphinfish) (SAFMC 2003, D. Dale pers. comm.).

Sources: South Atlantic Fishery Management Council (2003, no date), D. Dale pers. comm., and P. Wilber pers. comm.

Compiled by: ANAMAR Environmental Consulting, Inc.
Table 2. Atlantic Highly Migratory Species Managed by the National Marine Fisheries Service

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Management Group or Subgroup</th>
<th>Common Name¹</th>
<th>Scientific Name¹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SMOOTHHOUND SHARKS (1 family, 2 species managed as a single species)</td>
<td>Florida smoothhound²</td>
<td>Mustelus norrisi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Smooth dogfish¹</td>
<td>Mustelus canis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LARGE COASTAL SHARKS (3 families, 11 species)</td>
<td>Nurse shark</td>
<td>Ginglymostoma cirratum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nurse Sharks (1 species)</td>
<td>Blacktip shark</td>
<td>Carcharhinus limbatus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Requiem Sharks (7 species)</td>
<td>Bull shark</td>
<td>Carcharhinus leucas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lemon shark</td>
<td>Negaprion brevirostris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sandbar shark</td>
<td>Carcharhinus plumbeus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Silky shark</td>
<td>Carcharhinus falciformis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spinner shark</td>
<td>Carcharhinus brevipinna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tiger shark</td>
<td>Galeocerdo cuvier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hammerheads (3 species)</td>
<td>Great hammerhead</td>
<td>Sphyrna mokarran</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Scalloped hammerhead⁵</td>
<td>Sphyrna lewini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Smooth hammerhead</td>
<td>Sphyrna zygaena</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMALL COASTAL SHARKS (2 families, 4 species)</td>
<td>Atlantic sharpnose shark</td>
<td>Rhizoprionodon terraenovae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Requiem Sharks (3 species)</td>
<td>Blacknose shark</td>
<td>Carcharinus acronotus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Finetooth shark</td>
<td>Carcharhinus isodon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hammerheads (1 species)</td>
<td>Bonnethead</td>
<td>Sphyrna tiburo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PELAGIC SHARKS (3 families, 5 species)</td>
<td>Common thresher</td>
<td>Alopias vulpinus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Threshers (1 species)</td>
<td>Porbeagle³</td>
<td>Lamna nasus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mackerel Sharks (2 species)</td>
<td>Shortfin mako</td>
<td>Isurus oxyrinchus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Requiem Sharks (2 species)</td>
<td>Blue shark³</td>
<td>Prionace glauca</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Oceanic whitetip shark³</td>
<td>Carcharinus longimanus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PROHIBITED SHARKS (8 families, 19 species)</td>
<td>Bigeye sixgill shark³</td>
<td>Hexanchus nakamurai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cow Sharks (3 species)</td>
<td>Bluntnose sixgill shark³</td>
<td>Hexanchus griseus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sharpnose sevengill shark³</td>
<td>Heptranchias perlo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Angel Sharks (1 species)</td>
<td>Atlantic angel shark</td>
<td>Squatina dumeril</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whale Sharks (1 species)</td>
<td>Whale shark</td>
<td>Rhincodon typus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sand Tiger Sharks (2 species)</td>
<td>Bigeye sand tiger⁴</td>
<td>Odontaspis noronhai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sand tiger</td>
<td>Carcharias taurus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Threshers (1 species)</td>
<td>Bigeye thresher</td>
<td>Alopias superciliosus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Common Name ² Source: Florida training guide, ³ Source: Mace et al., 4 Source: Reef check, ⁵ Source: APHIS
Table 2. (continued)
Atlantic Highly Migratory Species Managed by the National Marine Fisheries Service

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Management Group or Subgroup</th>
<th>Common Name(^1)</th>
<th>Scientific Name(^1)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Basking Sharks (1 species)</td>
<td>Basking shark</td>
<td>Cetorhinus maximus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mackerel Sharks (1 family, 2 species)</td>
<td>White shark</td>
<td>Carcharodon carcharias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Longfin mako</td>
<td>Isurus paucus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Requiem Sharks (8 species)</td>
<td>Bignose shark</td>
<td>Carcharhinus altimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Caribbean reef shark(^3)</td>
<td>Carcharhinus perezi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Caribbean sharpnose shark</td>
<td>Rhizoprionodon porosus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dusky shark</td>
<td>Carcharhinus obscurus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Galapagos shark</td>
<td>Carcharhinus galapagensis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Narrowtooth shark(^3)</td>
<td>Carcharhinus brachyurus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Night shark(^3)</td>
<td>Carcharhinus signatus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Smalltail shark(^3)</td>
<td>Carcharhinus porosus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BILLFISH (1 family, 5 species)</td>
<td>Blue marlin(^3)</td>
<td>Makaira nigricans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Longbill spearfish(^3)</td>
<td>Tetrapturus pfluegeri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Roundscale spearfish</td>
<td>Tetrapturus georgii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sailfish</td>
<td>Isiophorus albicans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>White marlin(^3)</td>
<td>Tetrapturus (= Kajikia) albidus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SWORDFISH (1 species)</td>
<td>Swordfish(^3)</td>
<td>Xiphias gladius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TUNAS (1 family, 5 species)</td>
<td>Albacore(^3)</td>
<td>Thunnus alalunga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bigeye tuna(^3)</td>
<td>Thunnus obesus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bluefin tuna(^3)</td>
<td>Thunnus thynnus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Skipjack tuna(^3)</td>
<td>Katsuwonus pelamis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Yellowfin tuna(^3)</td>
<td>Thunnus albaares</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) Common and scientific names generally follow Page et al. (2013).
\(^2\) The Florida smoothhound and the smooth dogfish are managed as a single species (smooth dogfish) (NMFS 2010b).
\(^3\) Known depth range or geographic range for species is far outside of the alternative site.
\(^4\) There are no records of the bigeye sand tiger off the Carolinas. It is very rare in the western central Atlantic, with only one published record from off Florida's east coast (Kerstetter and Taylor 2008), and one unpublished record between Miami and the Bahamas (M. Harris pers. comm., G. Hubbell pers. comm.).
\(^5\) Four distinct population segments of the scalloped hammerhead are listed as threatened or endangered under ESA, effective since 07/13/14 (79 Federal Register 38213).

Compiled by: ANAMAR Environmental Consulting, Inc.
Table 3.
Species Managed by the Mid-Atlantic Fishery Management Council

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Management Group or Subgroup</th>
<th>Common Name¹</th>
<th>Scientific Name¹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ATLANTIC SURFCLAM AND OCEAN QUAHOG FISHERY MANAGEMENT PLAN (2 families, 2 species)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arcticidae (1 species)</td>
<td>Ocean quahog</td>
<td>Arctica islandica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mactrider (1 species)</td>
<td>Atlantic surfclam</td>
<td>Spisula solidissima</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATLANTIC MACKEREL, SQUID, AND BUTTERFISH FISHERY MANAGEMENT PLAN (4 families, 4 species)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inshore Squid (1 species)</td>
<td>Longfin inshore squid</td>
<td>Loligo pealeii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flying Squid (1 species)</td>
<td>Northern shortfin squid</td>
<td>Illex illecebrosus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Butterfishes (1 species)</td>
<td>Butterfish</td>
<td>Peprilus triacanthus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mackerels (1 species)</td>
<td>Atlantic mackerel</td>
<td>Scomber scombrus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dogfish Sharks (1 species)</td>
<td>Spiny dogfish</td>
<td>Squalus acanthias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goosefishes (1 species)</td>
<td>Goosefish (AKA monkfish)</td>
<td>Lophius americanus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tilefishes (1 species)</td>
<td>Tilefish (AKA golden tilefish)</td>
<td>Lopholatilus chamaeleonticeps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bluefishes (1 species)</td>
<td>Bluefish</td>
<td>Pomatomus saltatrix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUMMER FLOUNDER, SCUP, AND BLACK SEA BASS FISHERY MANAGEMENT PLAN (3 families, 3 species)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sea Basses (1 species)</td>
<td>Black sea bass</td>
<td>Centropristis striata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porgies (1 species)</td>
<td>Scup</td>
<td>Stenotomus chrysops</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sand Flounders (1 species)</td>
<td>Summer flounder</td>
<td>Paralichthys dentatus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Common and scientific names follow Turgeon et al. (1998) for mollusks and Page et al. (2013) for fishes.
² Known depth range for tilefish is far outside the depth range of the alternative site.


Compiled by: ANAMAR Environmental Consulting, Inc.
### Table 4.
EFH in the Vicinity of the Alternative Site Mapped by NOAA Fisheries for SAFMC-Managed Species

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EFH in Vicinity of Project Area</th>
<th>EFH and HAPC Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>SARGASSUM FISHERY MANAGEMENT PLAN (2 species)</strong></td>
<td>Sargassum EFH not identified in EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CORAL, CORAL REEFS, AND LIVE/ HARDBOTTOM HABITAT FISHERY MANAGEMENT PLAN (many species)</strong></td>
<td>Small EFH square polygons appear to be within vicinity of alternative site, and possibly contained within project area. HAPC for Coral Reefs and Hardbottom appear to be farther south, off Georgia and Florida. EFH and HAPC not broken down by life stages. Nearest Oculina Bank HAPC is far southeast of project area, associated with the edge of the continental shelf, off Palm Beach County.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SHRIMP FISHERY MANAGEMENT PLAN (3 families, 6 species)</strong></td>
<td>Rock shrimp EFH not identified in EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHRIMP not identified; HAPC outside of project area</td>
<td>Shrimp (as a group) EFH not identified in EFH Mapper. Nearest HAPC (as a group) found north of alternative site, along inshore areas of Long Bay and Onslow Bay and upper Wilmington Harbor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SPINY LOBSTER FISHERY MANAGEMENT PLAN (1 species)</strong></td>
<td>EFH appears to include alternative site and surrounding waters, including much of the inshore, nearshore, and offshore waters of the area. HAPC is identified south of the project area, in discrete squares in nearshore waters off Florida.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>GOLDEN CRAB FISHERY MANAGEMENT PLAN (1 species)</strong></td>
<td>Nearest EFH is far east of alternative site, along and beyond the continental slope. No HAPC has been identified in EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SNAPPER GROUPER COMPLEX FISHERY MANAGEMENT PLAN (10 families, 73 species)</strong></td>
<td>EFH includes alternative site and all surrounding waters, including inshore, nearshore, and most offshore waters from Virginia to Florida. HAPC identified near to project area, but nearer to shore, including much of Charleston Harbor and associated rivers. EFH and HAPC are for the Snapper-Grouper Complex as a collective unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COASTAL MIGRATORY PELAGICS FISHERY MANAGEMENT PLAN (2 families, 5 species)</strong></td>
<td>Nearest EFH appears to be inshore waters such as Charleston Harbor, and mid-shelf waters and farther offshore to the abyssal zone. Mapped EFH is not broken down to species-level, but rather treats Coastal Migratory Pelagics as a whole unit. EFH not broken down by life stages. No HAPC is identified in the EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DOLPHINFISH WAHOO FISHERY MANAGEMENT PLAN (2 families; 3 species)</strong></td>
<td>Dolphinfish and wahoo EFH not identified in EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Sargassum EFH was designated effective beginning January 30, 2012 (50 CFR Part 622). Sargassum EFH consists of the upper 10 m of the water column bound by the Gulf Stream within federal waters (50 CFR Part 622).

Source: NOAA Fisheries EFH Mapper (NOAA Fisheries 2014)
Compiled by: ANAMAR Environmental Consulting, Inc.
Table 5.
EFH in Vicinity of the Alternative Site Mapped by NOAA Fisheries for Atlantic Highly Migratory Species

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Management Group and Species Name¹</th>
<th>EFH in Vicinity of Project Area</th>
<th>EFH and HAPC Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>SMOOTHHOUND SHARKS (1 family, 2 species managed as a single species)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Florida smoothhound²,³ Mustelus norrisi Smooth dogfish² Mustelus canis</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>EFH is off much of the South Carolina coast including alternative site, and follows the coastline northward. EFH is not broken down by smoothhound species (managed as a single species). No HAPC identified in EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LARGE COASTAL SHARKS (3 families, 11 species)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nurse shark Ginglymostoma cirratum</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Nearest Adult EFH is off Jacksonville, Florida, and extending south along the Florida coast, from nearshore to edge of continental shelf. Juvenile and neonate EFH are not identified by EFH Mapper. No HAPC identified in EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blacktip shark Carcharhinus limbatus</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>No EFH or HAPC was shown anywhere in western North Atlantic while visiting the EFH Mapper site on 09/22–09/23/14.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bull shark Carcharhinus leucas</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>No EFH or HAPC was shown anywhere in western North Atlantic while visiting the EFH Mapper site on 09/22–09/23/14.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lemon shark Negaprion brevirostris</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>The nearest Juvenile and Adult EFH occurs off southern Georgia/northern Florida from nearshore to offshore waters. Nearest Neonate EFH is far south, in Florida Keys and Florida Bay (nearshore and inshore waters). No HAPC identified in EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sandbar shark Carcharhinus plumbeus</td>
<td>Neonate</td>
<td>Neonate EFH appears to include alternative site and extend south from nearshore out to about mid-shelf waters. Adult or juvenile EFH is not delineated in the map. Nearest HAPC is located off Pamlico Sound.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Silky shark Carcharhinus falciformis</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Nearest EFH is several miles east of alternative site, over deeper continental shelf waters. EFH not broken down by life stage. No HAPC identified in EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinner shark Carcharhinus brevipinna</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>All life stage EFH (incl. Neonate and Adult EFH) appear to occur to the north, east, and south of alternative site from nearshore to outer continental shelf waters. No EFH is found within the project area itself. No HAPC identified in EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tiger shark Galeocerdo cuvier</td>
<td>All life stages</td>
<td>All life stage EFH (including Neonate and Adult EFH) appear to include alternative site and much of the continental shelf. EFH extends to continental slope and slightly beyond. No HAPC identified in EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Great hammerhead Sphyrna mokarran</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>No EFH or HAPC identified in the EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scalloped hammerhead Sphyrna lewini</td>
<td>Adult</td>
<td>Adult EFH appears to include alternative site and continues north, east, and south of the area. The EFH extends from nearshore to outer continental shelf waters. No Neonate or juvenile EFH is delineated, and no HAPC identified in EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smooth hammerhead Sphyra zygaena</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Smooth hammerhead EFH not identified in EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 5. (continued)
EFH in Vicinity of the Alternative Site Mapped by NOAA Fisheries for Atlantic Highly Migratory Species

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Management Group and Species Name¹</th>
<th>EFH in Vicinity of Project Area</th>
<th>EFH and HAPC Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>SMALL COASTAL SHARKS (2 families, 4 species)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atlantic sharpnose shark</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>No EFH or HAPC identified in the EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhizoprionodon terraenovae</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blacknose shark</td>
<td>All life stages</td>
<td>Neonate, Juvenile, and Adult EFH appears to include alternative site, and extends north and south along the coastline from nearshore to at least a few miles offshore. No HAPC identified in EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcharinus acronotus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finetooth shark</td>
<td>All life stages</td>
<td>Neonate, Juvenile, and Adult EFH appears to include alternative site, and extends north and south along the coastline from nearshore to at least a few miles offshore. No HAPC identified in EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcharhinus isodon</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bonnethead</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>No EFH or HAPC identified in the EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sphyrna tiburo</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PELAGIC SHARKS (3 families, 5 species)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common thresher</td>
<td>All life stages</td>
<td>All life stages EFH appears to include alternative site, along with discrete polygons to the north and south, along the coastline and areas offshore over shelf and slope waters. Other EFH polygons include waters beyond continental slope. No HAPC identified in EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alopias vulpinus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porbeagle³</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>No EFH identified off South Carolina. Nearest EFH (consisting of Neonate and Juvenile EFH) is relatively discrete area off northern North Carolina, over the continental slope. No HAPC identified in EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lamna nasus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shortfin mako</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Nearest EFH is far east of alternative site, over the continental slope. EFH is not broken down by life stage in EFH Mapper. No HAPC identified in EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isurus oxyrinchus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blue shark³</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Nearest EFH is far east along and beyond the continental slope, and is used by juvenile and adult blue sharks. No HAPC identified in EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prionace glauca</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oceanic whitetip shark³</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Nearest EFH is far east, along and beyond the continental slope. This EFH is not broken down by life stage. No HAPC identified in EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcharhinus longimanus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PROHIBITED SHARKS (8 families, 19 species)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bigeye sixgill shark³</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Bigeye sixgill shark EFH not identified in EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hexanchus nakamurai</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bluntnose sixgill shark³</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Bluntnose sixgill shark EFH not identified in EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hexanchus griseus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sharpnose sevengill shark³</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Sharpnose sevengill shark EFH not identified in EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hexanchias perlo</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atlantic angel shark</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>No EFH identified off South Carolina. Nearest EFH is off Pamlico Sound, for Juvenile and Adult angel sharks. No HAPC identified in EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Squatina dumeril</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whale shark</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>No EFH identified along U.S. Atlantic coast. Nearest EFH in Gulf of Mexico, over the West Florida Escarpment. No HAPC identified in EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhincodon typus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bigeye sand tiger⁴</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Bigeye sand tiger EFH not identified in EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Odontaspis noronhai</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sand tiger</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Neonate, Juvenile, and Adult EFH includes alternative site in shallow shelf waters off Charleston, and an additional polygon extends north along the coastline. No HAPC identified in EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcharias taurus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Species Name

² Management Group

³ HAPC

⁴ Neonate, Juvenile, & Adult EFH includes alternative site in shallow shelf waters off Charleston, and an additional polygon extends north along the coastline. No HAPC identified in EFH Mapper.
Table 5. (continued)
EFH in Vicinity of the Alternative Site Mapped by NOAA Fisheries for Atlantic Highly Migratory Species

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Management Group and Species Name</th>
<th>EFH in Vicinity of Project Area</th>
<th>EFH and HAPC Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bigeye thresher</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Nearest EFH far east of alternative site, above continental slope and beyond. No HAPC identified in EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Alopias superciliosus</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basking shark</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>No EFH identified off South Carolina. Nearest EFH (Adult and Juvenile EFH) found off northern North Carolina. No HAPC identified in EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Cetorhinus maximus</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White shark</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>No EFH or HAPC identified in the EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Carcharodon carcharias</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Longfin mako</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Nearest EFH far east of alternative site, associated with continental slope and beyond. No HAPC identified in EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Isurus paucus</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bignose shark</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Nearest EFH far east of alternative site, loosely associated with the continental slope and beyond. No HAPC identified in EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Carcharhinus altimus</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caribbean reef shark</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Nearest EFH far south of alternative site, off the coast of southeastern Florida and also off west of Key West. No HAPC identified in EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Carcharhinus perezi</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caribbean sharpnose shark³</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Caribbean sharpnose shark EFH not identified in EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Rhizoprionodon porosus</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dusky shark</td>
<td>Neonate, Juvenile, &amp; Adult</td>
<td>All three life stage EFH appear to include alternative site and the general vicinity. No HAPC identified in EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Carcharhinus obscurus</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galapagos shark</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Galapagos shark EFH not identified in EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Carcharhinus galapagensis</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Narrowtooth shark²</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Narrowtooth shark EFH not identified in EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Carcharhinus brachyurus</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Night shark²</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Nearest EFH far east of alternative site, associated with continental slope and beyond. No HAPC identified in EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Carcharhinus signatus</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smalltail shark³</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Smalltail shark EFH not identified in EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Carcharhinus porosus</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>BILLFISH (1 family, 5 species)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blue marlin³</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Nearest EFH (Adult and Juvenile EFH) far east of alternative site, above and beyond continental slope. Nearest spawning EFH is located far south of the project area. No HAPC identified in EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Makaira nigricans</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Longbill spearfish³</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Nearest EFH far east by east of alternative site, associated with continental slope and beyond. No HAPC identified in EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Tetrapturus pfluegeri</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roundscale spearfish³</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Nearest roundscale spearfish EFH located far east of alternative site, along and beyond the continental slope.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Tetrapturus georgii</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sailfish</td>
<td>Juvenile</td>
<td>Juvenile EFH located directly off Charleston Harbor and appears to include alternative site. Adult EFH is far east off the slope. Spawning EFH is off southeastern Florida. No HAPC identified in EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Istiophorus albicans</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White marlin³</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Nearest EFH (Juvenile and Adult EFH) far east, associated with continental slope and beyond. No HAPC identified in EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Tetrapturus (= Kajikia) albidus</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SWORDFISH (1 family, 1 species)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swordfish</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Nearest EFH far east of alternative site and appears to be associated with continental slope and abyssal waters. No HAPC identified in EFH Mapper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Xiphius gladius</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 5. (continued)
EFH in Vicinity of the Alternative Site Mapped by NOAA Fisheries for Atlantic Highly Migratory Species

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Management Group and Species Name¹</th>
<th>EFH in Vicinity of Project Area</th>
<th>EFH and HAPC Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TUNAS (1 family, 5 species)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Albacore³  
*Thunnus alalunga*           | None                            | Nearest EFH far southeast of alternative site, beyond continental slope. No HAPC identified in EFH Mapper. |
| Bigeye tuna³  
*Thunnus obesus*            | None                            | Nearest EFH far east of alternative site, associated with continental slope and beyond. No HAPC identified in EFH Mapper. |
| Bluefin tuna³  
*Thunnus thynnus*         | None                            | Nearest EFH (spawning, eggs, and larval EFH) far south of alternative site, associated with the Florida Current as well as waters east of continental slope. HAPC located within the Gulf of Mexico only. |
| Skipjack tuna³  
*Katsuwonus pelamis*       | None                            | Nearest EFH far east of alternative site, associated with the continental slope. No HAPC identified in EFH Mapper. |
| Yellowfin tuna³  
*Thunnus albacares*       | None                            | Nearest EFH far east of alternative site, associated with the continental slope and beyond. No HAPC identified in EFH Mapper. |

¹ Common and scientific names generally follow Page et al. (2013).
² The Florida smoothhound and the smooth dogfish are managed as a single unit (smooth dogfish) (NMFS 2010b).
³ Known depth range or geographic range for species is far outside of the alternative site.
⁴ There are no records of the bigeye sand tiger off the Carolinas. It is very rare in the western central Atlantic, with only one published record from off Florida's east coast (Kerstetter and Taylor 2008), and one unpublished record between Miami and the Bahamas (M. Harris pers. comm., G. Hubbell pers. comm.).

Source: NOAA Fisheries EFH Mapper (NOAA Fisheries 2014)
Compiled by: ANAMAR Environmental Consulting, Inc.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Management Group and Species Name</th>
<th>EFH in Vicinity of Project Area</th>
<th>EFH and HAPC Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>ATLANTIC SURFCLAM AND OCEAN QUAHOG FISHERY MANAGEMENT PLAN (2 families, 2 species)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ocean quahog</td>
<td>Artica islandica</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atlantic surfclam</td>
<td>Spisula solidissima</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ATLANTIC MACKEREL, SQUID, AND BUTTERFISH FISHERY MANAGEMENT PLAN (4 families, 4 species)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Longfin inshore squid</td>
<td>Loligo pealeii</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern shortfin squid</td>
<td>Illex illecebrosus</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Butterfish</td>
<td>Peprilus triacanthus</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atlantic mackerel</td>
<td>Scomber scombrus</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DOGFISH FISHERY MANAGEMENT PLAN (1 species)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spiny dogfish</td>
<td>Squalus acanthias</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MONKFISH FISHERY MANAGEMENT PLAN (1 species)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goosefish (AKA monkfish)</td>
<td>Lophius americanus</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>TILEFISH FISHERY MANAGEMENT PLAN (1 species)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tilefish² (AKA golden tilefish)</td>
<td>Lopholatilus chamaeleonticeps</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>BLUEFISH FISHERY MANAGEMENT PLAN (1 species)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bluefish</td>
<td>Pomatomus saltatrix</td>
<td>Eggs, Larvae, J uvenile, &amp; A dult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SUMMER FLOUNDER, SCUP, AND BLACK SEA BASS FISHERY MANAGEMENT PLAN (3 families, 3 species)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Black sea bass</td>
<td>Centropristis striata</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scup</td>
<td>Stenotomus chrysops</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Summer flounder</td>
<td>Paralichthys dentatus</td>
<td>Larvae, J uvenile, &amp; A dult</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Common and scientific names follow Turgeon et al. (1998) for mollusks and Page et al. (2013) for fishes.
² Known depth range for tilefish is far outside the depth range of the the alternative site.

Source: NOAA Fisheries EFH Mapper (NOAA Fisheries 2014)
Compiled by: ANAMAR Environmental Consulting, Inc.
CHARLESTON OCEAN DREDGED MATERIAL DISPOSAL SITE

SITE MANAGEMENT AND MONITORING PLAN

July 2015
The following Site Management and Monitoring Plan for the Charleston ODMDS has been developed and agreed to pursuant to the Water Resources and Development Act Amendments of 1992 (WRDA 92) to the Marine Protection, Research, and Sanctuaries Act of 1972 for the management and monitoring of ocean disposal activities, as resources allow, by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency and the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers.

MATTHEW W. LUZZATOO, P.E., PMP  Date
Lieutenant Colonel, EN
Commander, U.S. Army Engineer District, Charleston

Heather McTeer Tomey  Date
Regional Administrator
U.S. Environmental Protection Agency
Region 4
Atlanta, Georgia

This plan is effective from the date of signature for a period not to exceed 10 years. The plan shall be reviewed and revised more frequently if site use and conditions at the site indicate a need for revision.
# CHARLESTON OCEAN DREDGED MATERIAL DISPOSAL SITE (ODMDS) 
## SITE MANAGEMENT AND MONITORING PLAN 
### 2015

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>INTRODUCTION</strong></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SITE MANAGEMENT AND MONITORING PLAN TEAM</strong></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PROJECT DESCRIPTION</strong></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DISPOSAL HISTORY AND SITE CHARACTERISTICS</strong></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DREDGED MATERIAL VOLUMES</strong></td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>BASELINE ASSESSMENT OF CONDITIONS</strong></td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SITE MANAGEMENT</strong></td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Management Objectives</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timing of disposal</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disposal Techniques</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disposal Location</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information Management of Dredged Material Placement Activities</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Designated Route To and From the Charleston ODMDS</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disposal ‘Zone’ Within the ODMDS</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SITE MONITORING</strong></td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre Disposal Monitoring</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disposal Monitoring</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reporting and Data Formatting</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Post Disposal Monitoring</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional Material Tracking and Disposal Effects Monitoring</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitoring Approach and Rationale</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tracking Disposal Activity</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sediment Mapping and Bathymetry</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side Scan Sonar Surveys</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benthic Infaunal and Sediment Sampling</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Live/Hard Bottom Mapping</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sediment Transport/Current Studies</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sediment Contaminant Monitoring</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reporting and Data Formatting</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project Initiation and Violation Reporting</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disposal Monitoring Data</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Post Disposal Summary Reports</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Environmental Monitoring</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MODIFICATION OF THE CHARLESTON ODMDS SMMP</strong></td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IMPLEMENTATION OF THE CHARLESTON ODMDS SMMP</strong></td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>REFERENCES</strong></td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Charleston ODMDS

Site Management and Monitoring Plan

INTRODUCTION

It is the responsibility of the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) and the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (COE) under the Marine Protection, Research, and Sanctuaries Act (MPRSA) of 1972 to manage and monitor Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Sites (ODMDSs) designated by the EPA pursuant to Section 102 of MPRSA. The goals of the monitoring and management are to ensure that ocean dredged material disposal activities will not unreasonably degrade the marine environment or endanger human health or economic potential. The Marine Protection, Research, and Sanctuaries Act (MPRSA), the Water Resources Development Act of 1992 (WRDA), and a Memorandum of Understanding (MOU) between EPA and USACE requires the development of a Site Management and Monitoring Plan (SMMP) to specifically address the disposal of dredged material at the Charleston ODMDS. A Site Management and Monitoring Plan (SMMP) for the Charleston ODMDS was originally developed as a result of issues related to resource protection in March 1993. In 2005, the SMMP was modified. As part of a Section 102 of the MPRSA modification to the existing ODMDS an Environmental Assessment was prepared to support federal designation of the new site. This modified SMMP replaces the original and incorporates subsequent monitoring results and provisions of WRDA 92 as well as replaces the 2005 revision. Upon finalization of this revised SMMP and designation of the new Charleston ODMDS, these SMMP provisions shall be requirements for all dredged material disposal activities at the site. All Section 103 (MPRSA) ocean disposal permits or evaluations shall be conditioned as necessary to assure consistency with the SMMP.

This SMMP has been prepared in accordance with the Guidance Document for Development of Site Management Plans for Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Sites (EPA and Corps, 1996). This document provides a framework for the development of SMMPs required by MPRSA and WRDA 92. The SMMP may be modified if it is determined that such changes are warranted as a result of information obtained during the monitoring process.

SITE MANAGEMENT AND MONITORING PLAN TEAM

An interagency SMMP team has existed since the development of the original plan and is responsible for this revised SMMP. The team consists of the following agencies and their respective representatives:

Charleston District Corps of Engineers  EPA Region 4
SC Dept. of Natural Resources  U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service
SC State Ports Authority  National Marine Fisheries Service

Other agencies such as the South Atlantic Fisheries Management Council and the South Carolina Department of Health and Environmental Control will be asked to participate as appropriate. The SMMP team will assist EPA and the COE in evaluating existing monitoring data, including the type of disposal, the type of material, location of placement within the ODMDS and quantity of material. The team will assist EPA and the Corps on deciding on appropriate monitoring techniques, the level of monitoring, the significance of results and potential management options.

Specific responsibilities of EPA and the Corps, Charleston District are:

**EPA**: EPA is responsible for designating/de-designating MPRSA Section 102 ODMDSs, for evaluating environmental effects of disposal dredged material at these sites and for reviewing and concurring on dredged material suitability determinations.

**Corps**: The Corps is responsible for evaluating dredged material suitability, issuing MPRSA Section 103 permits, regulating site use, and developing and implementing disposal monitoring programs.
PROJECT DESCRIPTION

The new Charleston ODMDS has a total area comprising 9.8 \( \text{mi}^2 \). The coordinates are shown below (Table 1). The site will consist of a “U” shaped berm constructed of limestone rock dredged from the entrance channel upon new work construction of the Post 45 deepening project. Figure 1 also shows the monitoring zones of the new ODMDS and its proximity to the Charleston Harbor federal navigation channel.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Site</th>
<th>Geographic (NAD83, Decimal Degrees)</th>
<th>State Plane (South Carolina US Survey Feet)</th>
<th>Area (nmi(^2))</th>
<th>Area (mi(^2))</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Latitude</td>
<td>Longitude</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modified</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charleston</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Center</td>
<td>32.63522</td>
<td>-79.73939</td>
<td>294137.61</td>
<td>2388059.58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SE</td>
<td>32.60467</td>
<td>-79.72770</td>
<td>283067.78</td>
<td>2391795.475</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SW</td>
<td>32.62744</td>
<td>-79.77627</td>
<td>291170.82</td>
<td>2376741.168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NW</td>
<td>32.66571</td>
<td>-79.75113</td>
<td>305185.82</td>
<td>2384312.304</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE</td>
<td>32.64299</td>
<td>-79.70253</td>
<td>297104.71</td>
<td>2399371.043</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 1. Charleston ODMDS and SCDNR monitoring schematic
DISPOSAL HISTORY AND SITE CHARACTERISTICS

The Charleston, South Carolina, Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site is one of the most active, frequently used sites in the South Atlantic Bight (part of EPA’s Region 4 area of responsibility). The general site has been in use since 1896 for disposal activities. The original management plan for ocean dredged materials disposal associated with the Charleston Harbor complex (1987) called for two sites. The permanently designated ODMDS was approximately 2.8 x 1.1 nautical miles in size. This site was designated to receive all dredged material emanating from maintenance dredging activities in the harbor and entrance channels. Surrounding the permanent ODMDS was a larger ODMDS. This site encompassed an area of approximately 5.3 x 2.3 nautical miles (Figure 2, labeled “larger ODMDS”), and was designated for one time use, only, for placement of material obtained during the Charleston Harbor Deepening Project. This larger ODMDS was designated for a seven year period of use (1987-1994) for placement of material obtained during the Charleston Harbor Deepening Project.

In the fall/winter of 1989-1990, local fishermen reported that disposal operations occurring in the permanently designated, smaller ODMDS were impacting a live bottom area within the western quarter of that area. Until that time, no significant live bottom areas were known by EPA and USACE to exist within or near either the larger or small disposal area. Due to the existence of live bottom habitat, a line was immediately put in place by the EPA that was located on the eastern edge of the smaller ODMDS, in an effort to protect these valuable resources (Figure 2, labeled “EPA line”). The final rule regarding this line was published in the Federal Register in 1991, and stated that “All dredged material, except entrance channel material, shall be limited to that part of the site east of the line between coordinates 32°39'04"N, 79°44'25"W and 32°37'24"N, 79°45'30"W unless the materials can be shown by sufficient testing to contain 10% or less of fine material (grain size of less than 0.074 mm) by weight and shown to be suitable for ocean disposal.”

Video mapping of the seafloor was conducted during this same time period (1990) by the EPA in the vicinity of the ODMDSs in an effort to precisely map the location and extent of live bottom within and beyond the boundaries of both the smaller and larger ODMDSs. Based on the results of the video survey, the interagency SMMP Team (EPA, SCDNR, COE, and SCSPA) jointly decided in 1993 that the area actively used for disposal should be moved to a new
location within the larger ODMDS to avoid future disposal of materials on sensitive live bottom habitat. This location was four square miles in size, and agreed upon by all agencies (Figure 2, four square mile Disposal Zone). The creation of this four square mile Disposal Zone within the larger ODMDS required the development of a Management Plan which included a comprehensive Monitoring Plan for the site. The monitoring plan was regarded as a flexible strategy with the various task and techniques applied as appropriate and as dictated by disposal activities. (Charleston ODMDS Site Management Plan, 1993). The four square mile Disposal Zone and surrounding areas were divided into three zones, which formed 20 discrete areas (or strata) of comparable size (one square mile). Based on the Site Management Plan, the COE began building an L-shaped berm on the western side of the four square mile Disposal Zone using material from the 42-ft deepening project. The berm was to be constructed of harder and/or cohesive materials and was designed to serve as a barrier, with finer, unconsolidated materials to be placed to the east of the barrier.

In 1995, the smaller ODMDS was officially de-designated in the Federal Register due to the presence of live bottom habitat in the area. The language describing the larger ODMDS was modified such that the site could be used for all disposal materials permitted for offshore disposal, which meant that the site was no longer limited for the disposal of deepening materials. In addition, the time limit restricting the use of the larger disposal area to a seven year period was removed, and the site was promulgated for “continued use.”

The U.S. Congress authorized the most recent Charleston Harbor Deepening Project in 1996. The project was planned to deepen the entrance channel from 42 ft to 47 ft, and the inner harbor channel from 40 ft to 45 ft. Approximately 20-25 million cubic yards of sediments were planned for disposal in the four square mile Disposal Zone selected by the Task Force in 1993.

On October 10, 2001, a proposed rule was published in the Federal Register [66 FR 51628] to modify the site name and restriction of use. The proposed action was (1) to define the four square mile Disposal Zone as the only area in which disposal can continue, (2) to shorten the official name of the site from the Charleston Harbor Deepening Project ODMDS to the Charleston ODMDS and (3) to remove the line that restricts the disposal of fine-grained material. The only letter received during the 45 day comment period came from the Office of Ocean and Coastal Resource Management, South Carolina Department of Health and Environmental Control. Upon receipt of the consistency determination for the Coastal Zone Management Act, EPA proceeded with the final rule which became effective on June 6, 2002.

In response to the need to deepen the navigation channel, USACE Charleston District has proposed several navigation improvements to meet anticipated shipping requirements. These improvements consist of deepening and widening portions of the federal navigation channel (Post 45 Project). Based on this proposed new work material and subsequent increase in maintenance material, the Corps requested a Section 102 study to modify the existing ODMDS to accommodate the increased demands from dredged material. The EPA and the Corps have been working together to perform the necessary environmental studies and documentation to support the rule-making to modify the ODMDS.

**DREDGED MATERIAL VOLUMES**

It is intended that the Charleston ODMDS will be used for dredged material from the greater Charleston, South Carolina vicinity. The two primary users of the Charleston ODMDS have been and are expected to be:

1) U.S. Army Corps of Engineers for Civil Works
2) South Carolina State Ports Authority

Since 1987, approximately 52,000,000 million cubic yards of dredged material have been disposed of at the Charleston ODMDS. In addition, the estimated projected use of the ODMDS from new work dredging for the Post 45 project and twenty-five years of maintenance is approximately 65,600,000 cubic yards. The SC State Ports Authority has historically used the ODMDS and their past use of the ODMDS is shown in Table 2.
Table 2. Historical Use of the Charleston ODMDS by a Non-Federal User

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DATE</th>
<th>PROJECT (SPA Terminal)</th>
<th>SPONSOR</th>
<th>CUBIC YARDS</th>
<th>NEW WORK OR MAINTENANCE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mar-91</td>
<td>Union Pier</td>
<td>State Ports Authority</td>
<td>43,195</td>
<td>Maintenance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mar-91</td>
<td>Columbus Street</td>
<td>State Ports Authority</td>
<td>24,898</td>
<td>Maintenance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jan-92</td>
<td>Union Pier</td>
<td>State Ports Authority</td>
<td>117,266</td>
<td>Maintenance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feb-92</td>
<td>Columbus Street</td>
<td>State Ports Authority</td>
<td>141,400</td>
<td>New Work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aug-92</td>
<td>Wando Welch</td>
<td>State Ports Authority</td>
<td>1,056,425</td>
<td>New Work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jun-00</td>
<td>Wando Welch</td>
<td>State Ports Authority</td>
<td>55,430</td>
<td>Maintenance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aug-00</td>
<td>Wando Welch</td>
<td>State Ports Authority</td>
<td>106,235</td>
<td>New Work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oct-00</td>
<td>Union Pier</td>
<td>State Ports Authority</td>
<td>119,809</td>
<td>Maintenance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jun-01</td>
<td>Wando Welch</td>
<td>State Ports Authority</td>
<td>37,368</td>
<td>Maintenance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mar-02</td>
<td>Wando Welch</td>
<td>State Ports Authority</td>
<td>54,273</td>
<td>Maintenance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>June-03</td>
<td>Union Pier</td>
<td>State Ports Authority</td>
<td>69,889</td>
<td>Maintenance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Annual disposal from the federal projects is shown in Table 3. No restrictions are presently placed on disposal volumes. Disposal of unrestricted volumes is dependent upon results from future monitoring surveys and studies of site capacity, as well as concerns for navigational safety.

Material suitability. Two basic sources of material are expected to be placed at the site, new work dredged material and maintenance material. These materials will consist of mixtures of soft limestone rock, silt, clay and sand in varying percentages.
Table 3. Historical Use of the Charleston ODMDS by the US Army Corps of Engineers, Charleston District since 1994 (thousand CY per fiscal year)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reach or Segment Typically Dredged</th>
<th>Primary Dredge Method (1)</th>
<th>Thousand CY per Fiscal Year</th>
<th>Placement Area Used</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Entrance Channel/Fort Sumter Reach/Mt. Pleasant Reach</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1,735</td>
<td>775</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rebellion Reach</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short Creek Access</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>198</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anchorage Basin</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>708</td>
<td>333</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folly Reach</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shem Creek Access</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horse Reach</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tidelwater Reach</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>297</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom House Reach</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Town Creek Lower (ex-ODMDS)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>152</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hog Island Reach</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Town Creek Upper</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drum Island Reach</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>244</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myers Bend</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>48</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wando River Lower Reach</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>121</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wando Upper TB</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>286</td>
<td>241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wando Upper Reach</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>222</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total ODMDS</td>
<td></td>
<td>1,735</td>
<td>775</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTES:
1. Dredging Method: 1- Hopper Dredge, 2- Pipeline Dredge, 3- Mechanical (Clamshell).
2. All quantities are based on required pay prism and not gross yardage.
3. New Work Quantities were excluded from these numbers.
4. During the 1996, 1997, 1999 Dredging events, all Lower Harbor shoals and some Upper Harbor Shoals were deposited in Daniel Island, with the exception of Ordnance Reach and Ordnance Reach TB, which were deposited in Clouter Creek.
BASELINE ASSESSMENT OF CONDITIONS

Extensive monitoring of the Charleston ODMDSs has occurred throughout the years. The following sections describe these efforts by type.

Bathymetry:

Detailed bathymetric monitoring of the smaller ODMDS and surrounding area have generally been conducted every 12-18 months by the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (COE) since 1972 (Winn et al. 1989). The primary objectives of these bathymetric surveys were: (1) document the location and configuration of mounds created with dredged material, which was placed along narrow corridors within the smaller ODMDS, and (2) determine whether these mounds were remaining stable.

Sediment Characteristics and Sediment Contaminants:

Numerous nearshore studies have evaluated the distribution of sediments for a variety of purposes. These include core and sub-bottom sonar profiling to evaluate the thickness of the surficial sand lens and studies that have evaluated the characteristics of surficial sediments collected in conjunction with benthic community sampling for various environmental investigations. In general, nearshore sediments consist mainly of fine to very fine-grained sands with some river-derived silts (USACE 1987). A reference sample for the Charleston Harbor Post 45 Section 103 Evaluation collected approximately 7 miles northeast of the ODMDS was comprised primarily of sand (>93% sand) and was classified as poorly-graded sand/silty sand (ANAMAR 2013). Sediment grab samples collected as part of the 2012-2013 hardbottom and cultural resources survey largely consisted of fine to coarse sands, with some areas containing extensive coarse grains and shell hash. Fines were typically less than 10% (Gayes et al. 2013).

An assessment of bottom sediment characteristics and sediment contaminant levels in the area was first completed in 1978 by the South Carolina Wildlife and Marine Resources Department, (SCWMRD 1979, now the South Carolina Department of Natural Resources). The SCWMRD study provided sediment data at 40 sites and contaminant levels at 24 sites in and around the larger ODMDS (SCWMRD 1979, Van Dolah et al. 1983). Interstate Electronics Corporation (IEC) tested sediments at 10 sites in the area of the larger ODMDS during 1979 (USEPA 1983). These studies did not find elevated levels of contaminants. The SCWMRD study found higher levels of mercury and cadmium than the IEC study, which may have been due to analytical methodology (USEPA 1983).

Winn et al. (1989) tested samples at 28 sites in the larger ODMDS and surrounding areas. None of the stations displayed contaminant levels above the range observed in the 1978 SCWMRD study. Minor changes in sediment characteristics were detected, with some movement of material away from the disposal site. However, surficial sediment composition outside the disposal site did not appear to be altered.

A baseline assessment of the current 4-mi² disposal zone was completed in 1993 and 1994, and 200 sediment samples were collected in and around the disposal zone during both years (Van Dolah et al. 1996, 1997). Bottom sediments in the area were comprised primarily of medium to fine-grained sands, with variable concentrations of silt/clay and shell hash. In 1993, relatively high concentrations of mud (>10%) were found within the disposal area, although most of the muddy sediments had dispersed by the 1994 assessment. Forty composite sediment chemistry samples were also collected during the 1993-1994 assessment. Metal contaminants were detected in several strata, but concentrations were generally below known bioeffects levels.

In 2000, the sediment characteristics and sediment contaminants within and surrounding the Charleston ODMDS were assessed approximately halfway through the 1999-2002 Charleston Harbor Deepening Project (Zimmerman et al. 2002). Study results indicate that sediment contaminant levels were low within the disposal zone and surrounding areas, as would be expected of material approved for ocean disposal. Trace metal, PAH, PCB, and pesticide concentrations were found above the detection limit in several of the monitoring and disposal cells, with the highest levels consistently in disposal zone sediments. Contaminant concentrations were all below published bioeffects guidelines. These findings indicate that sediments containing detectable contaminants were largely limited to the disposal zone and comprised a small proportion of the deposited material.
In 2002, sediment characteristics and sediment contaminants within and surrounding the Charleston ODMDS were assessed after completion of the Charleston Harbor Deepening Project (Jutte et al. 2005). This deepening project involved placement of approximately 20 to 25 mcy of material at the ODMDS. Levels of contaminants within the disposal zone and surrounding areas were low. Trace metal, PAH, PCB, and pesticide concentrations were below published bioeffects guidelines, with the exception of cadmium levels in one stratum within the disposal area. These findings suggest that the presence of contaminated sediments was low and limited to the designated disposal zone. It should be noted that detection limits were above published bioeffects guidelines (effects range low [ERL] levels) for six contaminants, which were therefore not adequately assessed as part of this study and could potentially be present at levels that could adversely affect biological resources.

**Biological Communities:**

Benthic habitats are comprised of a variety of sediments, substrates, and marine life that are commercially and economically valuable. The structural foundation of sand and mud in soft-bottom (sedimentary) areas can be enhanced by sand waves or shell aggregations created by physical processes and by tube assemblages, burrows, or depressions created by plants or animals (Lindholm et al. 1998). Soft-bottom habitats contain epifauna (organisms that live on the sediment), infauna (organisms that live within the sediment), and pelagic species (free-swimming species that migrate in and out of the area), whereas hardbottom habitats typically contain only epifaunal and pelagic assemblages.

Benthic assemblages in the vicinity of the Charleston ODMDS have been monitored since 1978. SCWMRD (1979) completed an assessment in 1978. No major differences were found in the benthic communities collected within the larger ODMDS compared to adjacent areas (Van Dolah et al. 1983). The IEC sampled the benthos at 10 sites during March and December 1979 in the vicinity of the larger ODMDS (EPA 1983). Their findings did not indicate any differences in the benthic communities present that could be attributed to previous disposal operations.

An updated assessment was completed in 1987 by SCWMRD due to the changes in the site designation that occurred at that time (Winn et al. 1989). The benthic sampling program was designed around the corridor disposal concept with a network of stations positioned to intercept the migration of material over the bottom, if it occurred, and to assess changes in the benthic communities resulting from the movement of dredged material. The 1987 baseline survey detected minor changes in benthic community structure related to a disposal operation completed in 1986, and some movement of the material was detected away from the disposal site (Winn et. al. 1989). However, this movement did not appear to significantly alter benthic communities outside the smaller ODMDS.

SCDNR completed intensive benthic infaunal sampling in the 4-mi² disposal zone and surrounding boundary areas in 1993 and 1994 as part of a baseline assessment of the area (Van Dolah et al. 1996, 1997). They collected benthic samples at 200 stations each of these years in 20 zones within and around the current disposal site. Species composition, faunal density, and number of species varied among zones and strata. The density of some general taxonomic groups was found to be related to sediment type, a finding which suggests that future large-scale disposal operations could lead to disposal-related changes in the benthic communities.

Results from benthic studies conducted in 2000 and 2002 to assess impacts from Charleston Harbor Deepening project are summarized below.

**Overview—2000 Benthic Data**

Zimmerman et al. (2002) assessed the bottom habitats within and surrounding the Charleston ODMDS approximately halfway through the 1999-2002 Charleston Harbor Deepening Project. The ODMDS disposal zone and surrounding boundary area were divided into 20 discrete strata of comparable size, approximately 1 mi². Benthic grabs were collected at 10 randomly selected locations within each of the 20 strata.

The soft-bottom benthic assemblages of the coastal ocean off South Carolina, which include the proposed ODMDS modification area, are typical of the subtropical continental shelf. During the 2000 study, 402 taxa were collected with a site-wide mean density of 3,939 individuals per square meter. Polychaetes were the most abundant taxonomic group, comprising 56% of all organisms identified in samples collected during the survey. The category 'other taxa'
(e.g., Nemertina, Branchiostoma sp., Polygordiidae) made up 21% of the total abundance, and amphipods and mollusks comprised 13% and 10% of the total abundance, respectively.

At the ODMDS, the monitoring cells affected by disposal activities had benthic assemblages somewhat different than those of the non-impacted cells. A statistical comparison showed that while seven of the 11 numerically dominant taxa were common to both non-impacted and impacted cells, the impacted cells had fewer Prionospio cristata and Polygordiidae and more P. dayi and Nemertina than the non-impacted cells. Furthermore, Branchiostoma sp. and Eudevenopus honduramus were among the top 11 taxa for the non-impacted cells but not for the impacted cells. Both of these taxa, according to Zimmerman et al. (2002), are not characteristic of muddy sediments. Magelona sp. and Protophaustorius deichmannae, both associated with muddy sediments, were among the dominants in the impacted cells but not in the non-impacted cells. These changes indicate that the disposal of fine-grained material, which has occurred almost every year since 1988 (USACE et al. 2005), has somewhat changed the composition of the benthic infaunal community at the ODMDS, although Zimmerman et al. (2002) characterize the changes as subtle.

Overview—2002 Benthic Data

Jutte et al (2005) assessed the biological condition of bottom habitats within and surrounding the Charleston ODMDS after the conclusion of disposal activities associated with the 1999-2002 Charleston Harbor Deepening Project. During the 2002 study, more than 18,600 organisms representing 448 taxa were collected. The general taxonomic structure of the benthic assemblage was dominated by polychaetes, which comprised 35% of the total number of individuals collected. Dominant polychaetes included Prionospio cristata, Microspio pigmentata, P. dayi, Prionospio sp., Mediomastus sp., Myriochele oculata, Bhawania heteroseta, and Magelona sp. Amphipods composed approximately 14% of the total abundance, with mollusks and other taxa contributing 26% and 25% of the total number of individuals collected, respectively. Table 4 summarizes the 25 numerically dominant taxa from the 2000 and 2002 studies.
Table 4. Numerically Dominant Taxa Collected in and around the ODMDS in 2000 and 2002

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Species Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Total Abundance</th>
<th>Species Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Total Abundance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prionospio dayi</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>3078</td>
<td>Polygordiidae</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>4785</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pionospio cristata</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>2413</td>
<td>Crassinella martinicensis</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>2180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Branchiostoma sp.</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>1840</td>
<td>Prionospio cristata</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>2078</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhepoxynius epistomus</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>1818</td>
<td>Rhepoxynius epistomus</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sabellaria vulgaris</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>1728</td>
<td>Nemertea</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>1560</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nemertinea</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>1633</td>
<td>Parvilucina multiilineata</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>1260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prionospio sp.</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>1103</td>
<td>Crassinella lunulata</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>1233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sabellariidae</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>1103</td>
<td>Eudevenopus honduranus</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>1030</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magelona sp.</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>1018</td>
<td>Branchiostoma sp.</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>913</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polygordiidae</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>1008</td>
<td>Caecum pulchellum</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>865</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mediomastus sp.</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>870</td>
<td>Microspio pigmentata</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>825</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eudevenopus honduranus</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>835</td>
<td>Prionospio dayi</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>788</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protohaustorius deichmanniae</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>800</td>
<td>Tellinidae</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>758</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myriochele oculata</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>633</td>
<td>Strigilla mirabilis</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>720</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bhawania heteroseta</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>578</td>
<td>Cylichnella bidentata</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>663</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mediomastus californiensis</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>555</td>
<td>Prionospio sp.</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>663</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mellita sp.</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>555</td>
<td>Sipuncula</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>628</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goniada littorea</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>495</td>
<td>Mediomastus sp.</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>590</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ophiuroidea</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>493</td>
<td>Oligochaeta</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>568</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acanthoaustrorius intermedius</td>
<td>OA</td>
<td>455</td>
<td>Myriochele oculata</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>560</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oligochaeta</td>
<td>PO</td>
<td>453</td>
<td>Tellina agilis</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>553</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synelmis ewingi</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>435</td>
<td>Bhawania heteroseta</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>540</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Armandia maculate</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>380</td>
<td>Pelecypoda</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>523</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Natica pusilla</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>370</td>
<td>Aspidosiphon gosnoldi</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>485</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crassinella martinicensis</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>343</td>
<td>Magelona sp.</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>450</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

P = Polychate, A = Amphipod, M = Mollusk, O = Other

Sources: Zimmerman et al. (2002), Jutte et al. (2005)

Spatial comparisons of the 2002 benthic community data included a variety of metrics and statistical techniques and documented patterns in the benthic community structure indicating that disposal-related effects are still present and detectable in the boundary areas surrounding the Charleston ODMDS. Comparisons between non-impacted (east of the disposal area) and impacted strata (west and northwest of the disposal area) found significantly greater abundance of mollusks and amphipods and a greater diversity of polychaetes, amphipods, mollusks, and other taxa in non-impacted areas compared to impacted areas. Cluster analyses revealed that the benthic community structure in most impacted strata was similar based on species composition and relative abundance. A second strata group resulted from the cluster analysis and was composed of both impacted and non-impacted strata, suggesting either recovery of benthic communities in some impacted strata or the occurrence of disposal-related effects in non-impacted strata.

Analyses of the ten dominant taxa collected in 2002 indicated that five of these species were found in significantly fewer numbers in impacted strata than in non-impacted strata, and one species was found in significantly greater numbers in impacted strata than in non-impacted strata. The remaining species showed no significant differences among strata types. Patterns in the abundance of individual species are likely consequences of physiological or behavioral responses to alterations in sediment characteristics caused by disposal operations.
Temporal comparisons of benthic assemblages from the baseline assessment (1993-1994), interim assessment (2000), and post-disposal assessment (2002) indicate significant effects on benthic community structure related to disposal operations completed as part of the 1999-2002 Charleston Harbor Deepening Project. A general trend of decreased benthic abundance, reduced species numbers, and decreased diversity was observed in impacted strata to the west and northwest of the ODMDS. In strata classified as non-impacted, many biological metrics were not significantly different from baseline assessments or did not exhibit a significant trend over time. Temporal analyses of general taxonomic structure suggested that these community metrics showed alterations in the impacted strata following disposal operations. However, since many differences were also observed in non-impacted strata, differences cannot be attributed directly to disposal activities. Additional analyses were completed on the abundance of the five dominant taxa collected in 1993, 1994, and 2002. In most impacted strata, two species showed significant declines in abundance in 2002 when compared to the baseline assessment, a response that was likely due to physiological or behavioral responses to changes in sediment composition from disposal operations. The other three dominant taxa showed either no significant change over time or shifts in abundance that appear related to natural population fluctuations.

Hydrographic Data:

Hydrographic data has been collected as part of most assessments of the Charleston ODMDSs. In 1978, SCWMRD collected hydrographic data at 40 sites during their August sampling effort (SCWMRD 1979). The IEC assessment in 1979 provided additional hydrographic data for the larger ODMDS in the March and December sampling seasons (EPA 1983). Water quality data were collected by SCWMRD in 1987 during the summer and winter (Winn et al. 1989). Hydrographic data were also collected by SCDNR during summer sampling periods in 1993 and 1994 (Van Dolah et al. 1996, 1997).

Data on ocean currents at the Charleston ODMDSs were collected by EPA in summer and winter 1991, and NOAA also collected a limited number of observations in the seaward reaches of the Charleston Harbor Entrance Channel. The ocean current data were used by the Corps of Engineers, Waterways Experiment Station (WES), for input into a model simulating sediment plume dispersion for a dumping episode at the site. Ocean current data revealed a predominant NNE component during the summer. While the strong NNE component was also present during the winter, a westerly component was evident during that season as well. Currents toward the southern, and neighboring sectors, were minimal during these sampling periods.

The National Ocean Service (NOS), Coastal Estuarine and Oceanography Branch (CEOB) deployed a 1200 kHz acoustic Doppler current profiler (ADCP) in the larger ODMDS from January 1994 through September 1995 in an effort to measure ocean currents in the vicinity of the site. The results of this study found that the currents in the vicinity of the Charleston ODMDS consist of tidal, wind-driven, and density-driven currents. The currents flowing toward the southwest or west could potentially transport dredged material to the benthic communities in the southwest corner of the larger ODMDS (Williams et al. 1997).

USEPA 2014 summarized the waves and currents at the Charleston ODMDS with the following: “Currents in the vicinity of the Charleston ODMDS tend to have a significant tidal component with predominant currents in the cross-shore direction. Non-tidal currents show periodic oscillations that may be related to overtides. There was a consistent northeasterly drift to the non-tidal currents until September 2013, upon which the drift shifted southwesterly. The depth averaged median current velocity was 18 cm/sec (0.6 ft/sec) with 90 percent of the measurements below 30 cm/sec (1.1 ft/sec).

Waves in the vicinity of the Charleston ODMDS are out the east-southeast. The highest measured waves were in excess of 2.5 meters (8.2 feet) and occurred in the spring (April – June) and were out of the east. Ninety percent of the wave measurements were less than 1.6 meters (5.2 feet) with wave periods in the 4 to 11 second range. Based on linear wave theory, wave periods in excess of 4.4 seconds are of sufficient length to influence bottom velocities at the depths of the ODMDS (USACE, 1984) and therefore waves are likely to frequently affect resuspension and transport of dredged material at the ODMDS.”
Sediment Mapping Surveys:

To assist in defining dredged material placement and migration within the Charleston Harbor ODMDSs, real time mapping of the seafloor sediments in the Charleston ODMDS and surrounding areas has been conducted. Two sampling techniques were used in these surveys, one sled equipped to detect selective stable gamma isotopes in the surficial sediments (gamma sled), and another sled selective to fine surficial seafloor sediments (CS3 sled). Sites were mapped along transects spaced approximately 1000 feet apart.

The EPA, in conjunction with the University of Georgia’s Center for Applied Isotope Studies (CAIS), completed a survey within the smaller ODMDS site in July 1988, and within the larger ODMDS site in March 1990. Survey results indicated the seafloor within the smaller site was relatively homogeneous, from a selected gamma isotope perspective, and relatively void of fine sediments since the CS3 sled, which is selective to sediments generally smaller than 400 microns, did not retrieve any material. The larger site was mapped again on the following dates: August 1991, May 1993, and June 1994. Each of these surveys was successful in tracking and documenting the dispersion of the dredged material deposited at the disposal site. The construction of the L-shaped berm was clearly indicated, as well as other areas of elevated silt/clay concentrations due to historical disposal operations or unidentified origins (Noakes 1995).

Based on reports from commercial shrimpers (January 2000), SCDNR staff investigated muddy areas found outside the four square mile Disposal Zone. SCDNR sampled in February-March 2000, and confirmed that sediments high in silt/clay content were found in areas surrounding the ODMDS. SCDNR identified these concerns to the COE, who reviewed logs and found unauthorized dumps made outside the four square mile Disposal Zone. Reconnaissance of about 50 unauthorized dump sites was completed by a subcontractor to the dredging company and reviewed by SCDNR staff. At least one of the unauthorized dump sites appeared to have occurred over live bottom, and other dumps may also have occurred over other live bottom areas, but if so, the bottom and evidence of reef growth were completely buried by the unauthorized dumps. A report summarizing these findings (Jutte et al. 2000) was sent to USACOE, the contractor (Norfolk Dredging Company), and USEPA. SCDNR made several recommendations to the COE regarding future disposal operations:

1. For the remainder of this disposal operation, and for all subsequent offshore dredge material disposal projects off South Carolina, electronically unalterable cruise tracks and dump locations should be examined on a weekly basis by the COE and made available upon request to state and federal resource agencies. The coordinates of any unauthorized dumps should be reported immediately after discovery by the COE to those concerned agencies so that immediate actions can be taken to investigate the problem.
2. The dredge material scows or hopper dredges (loaded or unloaded) should never use routes that cross known live bottom areas. Currently this includes any area outside of the ODMDS and south of a line from the center of the ODMDS to the seaward tip of the south jetty. This would avoid any inadvertent dump of material over sensitive bottom areas due to equipment failure.
3. The dredge material scows or hopper dredges should close their doors before leaving the ODMDS. This will ensure that all disposal materials are released within the authorized area, and that no trails of sediment are left outside the ODMDS from barges that have not completely released their material.
4. In the event of additional “misdumps” similar investigations should be conducted to determine what measures would be necessary to restore or to mitigate the impacted bottoms as appropriate.

During the March 2000 SMMP meeting, the COE noted that the berms under construction at the ODMDS were being built with a mixture of materials, rather than the more consolidated materials as originally planned. It was agreed that future barge loads of material would be assessed by the subcontractor, with more consolidated materials (e.g., cooper marl, rocky material) being placed on the berm, and finer, unconsolidated, materials placed to the SE of the berm. The SMMP Team also discussed the path of barge traffic over live bottom reef habitat en route to the ODMDS. Team members agreed that by traveling a northerly track to the shipping channel, the potential for accidental dumps over live bottom reefs could be eliminated.

An interim assessment of the biological, sediment, contaminant, and bathymetric conditions was planned to occur approximately halfway through the current Charleston Harbor Deepening Project. This effort was initiated in 2000, with some portions of the study expedited to further investigate unauthorized dumping activities. In March 2000, Coastal Carolina University’s Center for Marine and Wetland Studies, in cooperation with the US-Geological Survey,
completed a side scan sonar survey, swath bathymetry survey, and CHIRP sub-bottom profiling of the ODMDS and surrounding areas. During the same year (September), SCDNR staff also collected biological and sediment samples at 200 sites in and around the ODMDS, and composite sediment contaminant samples in each strata. A sediment mapping survey by the University of Georgia’s Center for Applied Isotope Studies was conducted in October 2000.

In July and August 2001, exploratory dives were completed in areas surrounding the four square mile Disposal Zone likely to have hard bottom with epifaunal sponge and coral growth based on available data. Several general areas with possible hard bottom reef habitat were selected for exploratory dives. These general areas were chosen based on (1) side scan sonar and CHIRP sub-bottom profiling surveys collected in March 2000 by Coastal Carolina University’s Center for Marine and Wetland Studies (CMWS) and US-Geological Survey (USGS), (2) reports of hard bottom locations from the SEAMAP Bottom Mapping Project, (3) communication with knowledgeable SCDNR staff, (4) 1990 EPA video survey data, and (5) additional side scan sonar and video camera tows in August 2000. Four suitable study sites were located outside the boundary areas to the west, east, and southwest, and within the boundary area in the southwest corner. Two reference study sites were also identified.

Each of the six sites has been surveyed numerous times to date. During each sampling period, video surveys of sponge/coral communities, video surveys of fish communities, surficial sediment depths, surficial sediment characteristics, and sedimentation rates are collected. In addition, a detailed side scan sonar survey with simultaneous underwater video has been completed annually to determine any changes in the areal extent of each reef site. Biannual assessments of these index hard bottom reef sites continued through spring 2005 although reporting of the results are not anticipated prior to spring 2006.

Two cruises completed in 2001 collected additional data in the vicinity of the Charleston ODMDS. The EPA’s OSV Anderson July 2001 cruise, in cooperation with CMWS, collected detailed side scan and bottom video in the areas surrounding the six index reef sites also being studied by SCDNR. In addition, approximately 25% of the four square mile Disposal Zone, inner boundary zone, and outer boundary zone was resurveyed. During this same cruise, University of South Carolina (USC) staff, in cooperation with the EPA and SCDNR, deployed a sedimentation sensor (optical backscatter sensor) and current profiler (acoustic Doppler velocimeter) near the ODMDS to measure the combined actions of waves and currents in the ODMDS, measure the local suspended sediment concentration, and calculate threshold conditions for re-suspension. The reporting of these efforts failed to produce the anticipated threshold conditions due to the limited nature of field measurements actually obtained.

The CMWS conducted a second geophysical cruise, using the NOAA Ship Ferrel, in August 2001. The remaining area of the disposal site and the boundary areas surrounding the disposal site were imaged. In addition, side scan coverage was extended offshore 1.5 kilometers as a preliminary assessment of the area seaward of the existing disposal site. Also in support of the ODMDS study, CMWS and SCDNR, using the Ferrel, recovered the USC equipment deployed on the July EPA cruise.

A post-assessment was conducted upon completion of the 1996 harbor deepening project (Crowe et al., 2006). The goal of this study was to establish biological, sediment, sediment contaminant, and bathymetric conditions following large-scale disposal activity, and compare these findings with baseline and interim assessments. In addition, this study documented to what extent the deepening project filled available space within the four square mile Disposal Zone.

The post-assessment incorporated the same sampling strategies and previous assessments (see below). Biannual assessments of index hard bottom reef sites continued through 2006 (see details below). Based on the data collected during these studies, specific recommendations for monitoring in subsequent years of the program may change, and findings may warrant an extension in the length of the monitoring program. Crow et al. (2006) concluded that the hardbottom reef areas that were monitored showed no evidence of substantial degradation from possible sediment movement from the ODMDS. Specifically, they found the following:

Large Scale Reef Assessment:

- Four consecutive years of sidescan-sonar surveying (five years at site SWA) and five years of video data have been collected at the study sites. Net hard bottom change during the study period has been a small gain
at all sites with the exception of SWA. With most net hard bottom changes being just a few percent, it is likely that sediment dumped at the ODMDS is not significantly changing the surrounding habitats.

- Comparisons between backscatter intensity, textural analysis, and coded video data suggest that a thin veneer of sand is sometimes capable of disguising hard bottom, especially since a much larger portion of each study area provided a hard bottom textural signature via sidescan sonar, which was not always supported by evidence of sessile invertebrate growth using the television sled.

Small Scale Reef Assessment:
- Analyses of sand and CaCO3 content found at the study sites and reference areas show that any changes observed within sites or between sampling periods are likely due to natural variability.
- In general, silt/clay was a minor component of sediment composition at all sites and any changes observed were probably attributable to seasonal rainfall or storm activity rather than significant movement of fine-grained material from the ODMDS.
- Changes observed in grain size of the sand fraction of sediment cores also do not appear to be related to movement of sediments from the disposal area.
- Surficial sediment depths/measurements at the sites in the vicinity of the disposal area have not been significantly altered, suggesting that migration of disposal area sediments has not been a major problem to date.
- Analyses of sediment trap contents suggest that there is a higher silt/clay load in the bottom waters near the ODMDS and at the inshore sites. These materials would not be expected to remain on the bottom when strong currents and storm events are present.
- The abundance of finfish individuals or species observed at study sites and reference areas does not appear to be affected by disposal activities during the five year survey period.
- The percent occurrence of selected sessile, erect growth forms at the sites studied also did not change significantly at most sites, and sites where significant changes did occur do not appear to be related to movement of disposal material.
- The presence of 7Be and 137Cs in the offshore diver-grab and sediment-trap samples indicate that this sediment was of terrestrial origin. The novel approach of utilizing 7Be and 137Cs as tracers in this study to identify the relative contribution of density driven sediment from the harbor versus disposal material migration suggests that some terrestrial sediment has been transported to a subset of the hard bottom reef monitoring stations through natural and anthropogenic processes.
- The presence of 137Cs in the recently deposited dredged material at the ODMDS as well as several of the reef monitoring sediment trap samples would support the dredged material dispersion. However, with the absence of 137Cs and 7Be on the seafloor, it was clear that at the reef monitoring sites, most of the sediment settling from the water column was either resuspended or winnowed away and did not readily accumulate at the sites.

The following table (Table 5) summarizes studies conducted at the Charleston ODMDS.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Survey Type</th>
<th>Agency/Dates</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bathymetry</td>
<td>Charleston District, USACE, approx. every 12-18 months since 1972</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benthic characterization (sediments and biology)</td>
<td>SC Wildlife &amp; Marine Resources Dept. - 1978</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benthic characterization (sediments and biology)</td>
<td>Interstate Electronics Corp (under contract to EPA/HQ - 1979</td>
<td>site designation studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sediment mapping</td>
<td>UGA/Center for Applied Isotope Studies - 1988</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benthic characterization (sediments and biology)</td>
<td>SC Wildlife &amp; Marine Resources Dept. - 1989</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video/photography of hard bottoms</td>
<td>EPA/Region 4 - 1990</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Currents</td>
<td>EPA/Region 4 - 1991</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sediment mapping</td>
<td>UGA/Center for Applied Isotope Studies - 1990</td>
<td>SMMP monitoring of harbor deepening project</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sediment mapping</td>
<td>UGA/Center for Applied Isotope Studies - 1991</td>
<td>SMMP monitoring of harbor deepening project</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physiological effects of disposal on <em>Oculina sp.</em> and <em>Lophogorgia sp.</em></td>
<td>UGA/Dept. of Ecology - 1992</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sediment mapping</td>
<td>UGA/Center for Applied Isotope Studies - 1993</td>
<td>SMMP monitoring of harbor deepening project</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benthic characterization (sediments and biology)</td>
<td>SC Dept of Natural Resources - 1993</td>
<td>SMMP monitoring of harbor deepening project</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sediment mapping</td>
<td>UGA/Center for Applied Isotope Studies - 1994</td>
<td>SMMP monitoring of harbor deepening project</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benthic characterization (sediments and biology)</td>
<td>SC Dept of Natural Resources - 1994</td>
<td>SMMP monitoring of harbor deepening project</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Currents</td>
<td>NOAA/NOS - 1995</td>
<td>One year/one location</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sidescan sonar</td>
<td>Coastal Carolina Univ. - 2000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video/photography of hard bottoms</td>
<td>SC Dept of Natural Resources - 2000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hard bottom reef assessments</td>
<td>SC Dept of Natural Resources - 2000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benthic characterization (sediments and biology)</td>
<td>SC Dept of Natural Resources - 2000</td>
<td>SMMP monitoring of harbor deepening project</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sidescan sonar</td>
<td>Coastal Carolina Univ. - 2001</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sedimentation rates</td>
<td>Univ. of SC - 2001</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hard bottom reef assessments</td>
<td>SC Dept of Natural Resources - 2001</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hard bottom reef assessments</td>
<td>SC Dept of Natural Resources - 2002</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hard bottom reef assessments</td>
<td>SC Dept of Natural Resources - 2003</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hard bottom reef assessments</td>
<td>SC Dept of Natural Resources - 2004</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hard bottom reef assessments</td>
<td>SC Dept of Natural Resources - 2005</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benthic characterization (sediments and biology)</td>
<td>SC Dept of Natural Resources - 2005</td>
<td>SMMP monitoring of harbor deepening project</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hardbottom Monitoring</td>
<td>SC Dept of Natural Resources, Coastal Carolina Univ, and Univ of Georgia</td>
<td>Part of new deepening project and ODMDS modification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Currents/waves</td>
<td>EPA/Region 4 - 2014</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The following is a list of reports and journal articles written based upon studies conducted as a result of the original SMMP.

Crowe, S.E., Van Dolah, R.F., Jutte, P.C., Gayes, P.T., Viso, R.F., Noakes, S.E., 2006. An environmental monitoring study of hard bottom reef areas near the Charleston ODMDS. Final Report Prepared by the South Carolina Department of Natural Resources; the Center for Marine and Wetland Studies, Coastal Carolina University; and the Center for Applied Isotope Studies, University of Georgia submitted to the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers. p. 121.


Noakes, S. 2001. Postdisposal Areal Mapping of Sediment Chemistry at the Charleston, South Carolina ODMDS. Center for Applied Isotope Studies, Athens, GA. Submitted to South Carolina Department of Natural Resources.


SITE MANAGEMENT

ODMDS management involves a broad range of activities including regulating the schedule of use, the quantity, and the physical/chemical characteristics of dredged materials to be dumped at the site. It also involves establishing disposal controls, conditions and requirements to avoid and minimize potential impacts to the marine environment. Finally, ODMDS management involves monitoring the site environs to verify that unanticipated or significant adverse effects are not occurring from past or continued use of the site and that permit conditions are met.

Section 228.3 of the Ocean Dumping Regulations (40 CFR 220-229) states:

“Management of a site consists of regulating times, rates, and methods of disposal and quantities and types of materials disposed of; developing and maintaining effective ambient monitoring programs for the site; conducting disposal site evaluation studies; and recommending modifications in site use and/or designation.”

The plan may be modified if it is determined that such changes are warranted as a result of information obtained during the monitoring process. MPRSA, as amended by WRDA 92, provides that the SMMP shall include but not be limited to:

- A baseline assessment of conditions at the site;
- A program for monitoring the site;
- Special management conditions or practices to be implemented at each site that are necessary for the protection of the environment;
- Consideration of the quantity and physical/chemical characteristics of dredged materials to be disposed of at the site;
- Consideration of the anticipated use of the site over the long-term;
- A schedule for review and revision of the plan.

Management Objectives

There are three primary objectives in the management of the Charleston ODMDS:

- Protection of the marine environment, living resources, and human health and welfare;
• Documentation of disposal activities at the ODMDS and provision of information which is useful in managing the dredged material disposal activities;
• Provide for beneficial use of dredged material whenever practical.

The purpose of the SMMP is to provide guidelines in making management decisions necessary to fulfill mandated responsibilities to protect the marine environment as discussed previously. Risk-free decision-making is an impossible goal; however, an appropriate SMMP can narrow the uncertainty. The following sections provide the framework for meeting these objectives to the extent possible.

Timing of Disposal

At present no restrictions have been determined to be necessary for disposal related to seasonal variations in ocean current or biotic activity. As monitoring results are compiled, should any such restrictions appear necessary, disposal activities will be scheduled so as to avoid adverse impacts. Additionally, if new information indicates that endangered or threatened species are being adversely impacted, restrictions may be incurred.

Disposal Techniques

No specific disposal technique is required for this site. However, it is the intent of this plan to maximize any advantages of strategic placement of materials.

Disposal Location

The new Charleston ODMDS is defined by the coordinates in Table 1, above and shown in Figures 1, 2, and 3.

Prior to any disposal of dredged materials, an agreement between EPA and COE will be reached concerning the exact placement of these materials. Permits/contracts will specify exact locations for the disposal of any material from the project. Fine-grained materials will be placed within the area surrounded by berms constructed of more consolidated material. Any coarse-grained material, or suitable consolidated material which is not used for another beneficial purpose (i.e., beach nourishment), will be used as needed to expand the boundary berms.

Information Management of Dredged Material Placement Activities

As discussed in the following sections, a substantial amount of diverse data regarding use of the Charleston ODMDS and effects of disposal is required from many sources (EPA, COE, SCDNR, SCSPA). If this information is readily available and in a useable format it can be used to answer many questions typically asked about a disposal site:

• What is being dredged?
• How much is being dredged?
• Where did the dredged material come from?
• Where was the dredged material placed?
• Was dredged material dredged correctly? Placed correctly?
• What will happen to the environment at the disposal site?

As part of site management, EPA and the COE will investigate alternatives for appropriate data management. The Dredged Material Spatial Management Analysis and Record Tool (DMSMART) is currently in development by the Engineering Research and Development Center (ERDC), formerly known as the Waterways Experiment Station. This tool will include guidance to Districts for development of a database of dredging project history and a database of the dredging and disposal site monitoring data. Once available, the District, with assistance from EPA Region 4, will evaluate the best approach to implementing a data management system. This will enable the COE and EPA to better manage the Charleston ODMDS and account for the multiple users of the site. In addition, the Corps’ Ocean Disposal Site Database is compiled by the ERDC. This database provides information on all of the ODMDSs in the United States with appropriate chemical, biological, and physical parameters of the proposed dredged material.
Designated Route To and From the Charleston ODMDS

A transportation route to and from the Charleston ODMDS will be specified to minimize possible interference with nearby fishing grounds and commercial navigation. Dredge material scows or hopper dredges should not cross south of the line shown in Figure 3, and extends from the south jetty to a point defined by the following coordinates: 32.65663, -79.75716. Minor departures from the navigation channel to avoid traffic or facilitate safe vessel passage are acceptable. The ocean disposal verification plan discussed previously provides verification that the approved route was taken (Figure 3).

![Figure 3. Designated Route to ODMDS](image)

Disposal ‘Zone’ Within the ODMDS

To manage site use, maximize site capacity, reduce multiple user conflicts, simplify monitoring and management, and reduce potential adverse impacts to the marine environment, the Charleston District, USACE in consultation with EPA Region 4, has designated a disposal zone within the ODMDS for dredged materials from ocean dumping activities (Figure 4).
The disposal zone has the following coordinates (Table 6):

**Table 6. Charleston ODMDS disposal zone coordinates**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Site</th>
<th>Geographic (NAD83, Decimal Degrees)</th>
<th>State Plane (South Carolina US Survey Feet)</th>
<th>Area (mi²)</th>
<th>Area (nmi²)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alternative 1 modeled disposal zone</td>
<td>SE 32.62953 -79.76731</td>
<td>291963.450</td>
<td>2379495.145</td>
<td>5.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SW 32.61220 -79.73030</td>
<td>285797.391</td>
<td>2390966.182</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NW 32.63817 -79.71280</td>
<td>295312.397</td>
<td>2396237.184</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NE 32.65600 -79.75011</td>
<td>301659.432</td>
<td>2384675.135</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The suitability of dredged material for ocean disposal must be verified by the Corps and agreed to (concurred) by EPA prior to disposal under Section 103 of the MPRSA. EPA concurrences are valid for three years from the date of the concurrence letter. Re-evaluation will involve the following:

1) a case-specific evaluation against the exclusion criteria (40 CFR 227.13(b));
2) a determination of the necessity for testing including bioassay (toxicity and bioaccumulation) testing for non-excluded material based on the potential for contamination of the sediment since last tested; and
3) completion of required testing (where needed) and determining that the non-excluded, tested material is suitable for ocean disposal.

Documentation of compliance with the Ocean Dumping Criteria (ODC) will be completed prior to any use of the site. Documentation will be in the form of a MPRSA Section 103 Evaluation. The Evaluation and any testing will follow the procedures outlined in the Southeast Regional Implementation Manual (SERIM), August 2008. Only material determined to be suitable through the compliance process by the Corps and EPA will be placed at the Charleston ODMDS.

SITE MONITORING

The MPRSA establishes the need for including monitoring program as part of the Site Management Plan. Site monitoring is conducted (1) to ensure the environmental integrity of a disposal site and the areas surrounding the site, and (2) to verify compliance with the site designation criteria, any special management conditions, and with permit requirements. Monitoring should provide useful and pertinent information to support site management decisions. Monitoring programs should be flexible, cost effective, and based on scientifically sound procedures and methods to meet site-specific monitoring needs. A monitoring program should have the ability to detect environmental change as a result of disposal activities and assist in determining regulatory and permit compliance.

The main purpose of a disposal site monitoring program is to determine whether dredged material site management practices, including disposal operations, at the site need to be changed to avoid significant adverse impacts. To use site monitoring as an effective tool, site managers need to define in quantitative terms thresholds for unacceptable impacts and desired beneficial effects of dredged material disposal. Exceeding or not exceeding the thresholds triggers specific management actions. A tiered strategy for a monitoring program is desirable. With a tiered approach, an unacceptable result may trigger further and often more complex monitoring. Continuous monitoring of all physical, chemical, and biological parameters and resources in and around the ocean dredged material disposal site is not necessary. A monitoring program should be structured to address specific questions (hypotheses) and measure key indicators and endpoints, particularly those defined during site designation or specific project issues that arise. For the New Wilmington ODMDS, the site designation environmental impact statement identified navigation, fishing (shrimping), and hard bottoms in nearby waters as resources of concern. These resources were not present within the site.

The goals of the site monitoring plan for the Charleston ODMDS are to provide the following:

1) Information indicating whether the disposal activities are occurring in compliance with the permit and site restrictions; and/or
2) Information concerning the short-term and long-term environmental impacts of the disposal; and/or
3) Information indicating the short-term and long-term fate of materials disposed of in the marine environment.

Pre Disposal Monitoring

The Corps or other site users will conduct a bathymetric survey prior to the start of the project. Surveys will not be required for projects less than 50,000 cubic yards. Surveys will conform to Navigation and Dredging Support Surveys for the respective bottom type as described in the Corps Engineering Manual, EM1110-2-1003, Hydrographic Surveying dated 1 Jan 2002. The number and length of transects required will be sufficient to encompass the area where disposal operations will occur within the Charleston ODMDS and a 500 foot wide area around that area. The survey area may be reduced on a case-by-case basis if disposal zones are specified and adhered to. The surveys for soft bottom deposited material will be taken along lines spaced at 400-foot intervals or less with a depth recording density of less than 20 feet. The surveys for hard bottom deposited material will require full bottom coverage for vessel clearance throughout and at the conclusion of construction. Depth precision of the
surveys will be +/- 1.0 feet. Horizontal location of the survey lines and depth sounding points will be determined by an automated positioning system utilizing a real time kinematic global positioning system (GPS) or post-processed kinematic GPS data. Vertical datum is mean lower low water, NOAA's VDatum model will be used to derive conversion values from NAVD88 throughout the projects extents. The horizontal datum will be Geographic NAD 1983 South Carolina SC39000 State Plane Feet. Bathymetric surveys will be used to monitor the disposal mound to insure a navigation hazard is not produced, to assist in verification of material placement, to monitor bathymetric changes and trends, to aid in environmental effects monitoring and to insure that the site capacity is not exceeded, i.e., the mound does not exceed the site boundaries. Copies of these surveys shall be provided to EPA Region 4 when completed.

Disposal Monitoring

For all disposal activities, an electronic tracking system (ETS) must be utilized. The ETS will provide surveillance of the transportation and disposal of dredged material. The ETS will be maintained and operated to continuously track the horizontal location and draft condition (nearest 0.5 foot) of the disposal vessel (i.e. hopper dredge or disposal scow) from the point of dredging to the disposal site and return to the point of dredging. Data shall be collected at least every 500 feet during travel to and from the ODMDS and every minute or every 200 feet of travel, whichever is smaller, while approaching within 1000 feet of the ODMDS and within the ODMDS. In addition to the continuous tracking data, the following trip information shall be electronically recorded for each disposal cycle:

- Load number
- Disposal vessel name and type (e.g. scow)
- Tow vessel name (if applicable)
- Captain of Disposal or tow vessel
- Estimated volume of load
- Description of material disposed
- Source of dredged material
- Date, time and location at start at initiation and completion of disposal event.

It is anticipated that disposal monitoring will be conducted utilizing the Dredge Quality Management (DQM) system for Civil Works projects [see http://dqm.usace.army.mil/Specifications/Index.aspx], although other systems are acceptable. The DQM system must be operational throughout the dredging and disposal project and that project data must be submitted to the DQM National Support Center in accordance with the specifications provided at the aforementioned website. The data collected by the DQM system shall, upon request, be made available to the Regulatory Division/Branch of the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Charleston District and to EPA Region 4. Uploading of raw project data to the DQM Support Center is required. (USACE REGULATORY GUIDANCE LETTER No. 08-01 Date: 05 February 2008, SUBJECT: Guidance for Implementing the Silent Inspector (SI) system for dredging projects requiring Department of the Army (DA) permits). The use of DQM is also required for USACE federal navigation projects.

Disposal monitoring and ETS data will be reported to EPA Region 4 and Charleston USACE (via the DQM system) on a weekly basis utilizing the eXtensible Markup Language (XML) specification and protocol (see the section to follow). EPA Region 4 and the Charleston District shall be notified within 24 hours if disposal outside of the ODMDS or specified disposal zone or if excessive leakage may have occurred. Excessive leakage is any change in draft (determined by adding vessel bow draft and vessel aft draft/dividing by 2) exceeding x.x feet from the point of departure from the dredging site to the disposal site.

Reporting and Data Formatting

Disposal monitoring data shall be provided to EPA Region 4 electronically on a weekly basis. Data shall be provided per the EPA Region 4 XML format and delivered as an attachment to an email to DisposalData.R4@epa.gov. The XML format is available from EPA Region 4. A summary report of operations shall be provided by the Charleston District, USACE to the EPA, Region 4, Ocean Dumping Coordinator at the completion of the dredging/ocean disposal project or activity within 90 days after project completion. For work under a Section 103 permit, the permit holder
will be responsible for providing the requested information to the Charleston District, USACE. Minimum required data to be included in the summary report is as follows:

- General Information
  - Project name;
  - Location;
  - Public notice or permit date;
  - Section 103 evaluation date;
- Disposal Site Used;
- Project Type - Either Federal or Section 103 permit;
- Type of Work - New or maintenance work;
- Method of dredging and disposal;
- Disposal dates - start to finish;
- Quantity of dredged material disposed - in cubic yards;
- Number of loads completed;
- Contractor conducting the work;
- Identification of any misplaced materials;
- Dates of bathymetric surveys of ODMDS;
- Point of contact for project.

The disposal summary reports should be accompanied by the bathymetry survey results (paper plot and X,Y,Z ASCII data file), track plots for each disposal trip, a scatter plot of all dump locations, and a summary table of the information required above. If all data is provided in the required XML format, track plots, scatter plots and summary tables will not be necessary.

Post Disposal Monitoring

The Corps or other site users will conduct a bathymetric survey within 30 days after disposal project completion. Surveys will not be required for projects less than 50,000 cubic yards. Surveys will conform to Navigation and Dredging Support Surveys for the respective bottom type as described in the Corps Engineering Manual, EM1110-2-1003, Hydrographic Surveying dated 1 Jan 2002. The number and length of transects required will be sufficient to encompass the area where disposal operations will occur within the Charleston ODMDS and a 500 foot wide area around that area. The survey area may be reduced on a case-by-case basis if disposal zones are specified and adhered to. The surveys for soft bottom deposited material will be taken along lines spaced at 400-foot intervals or less with a depth recording density of less than 20 feet. The surveys for hard bottom deposited material will require full bottom coverage for vessel clearance throughout and at the conclusion of construction. Depth precision of the surveys will be +/- 1.0 feet. Horizontal location of the survey lines and depth sounding points will be determined by an automated positioning system utilizing a real time kinematic global positioning system (GPS) or post-processed kinematic GPS data. Vertical datum is mean lower low water, NOAA's VDatum model will be used to derive conversion values from NAVD88 throughout the projects extents. The horizontal datum will be Geographic NAD 1983 South Carolina SC39000 State Plane Feet. Bathymetric surveys will be used to monitor the disposal mound to insure a navigation hazard is not produced, to assist in verification of material placement, to monitor bathymetric changes and trends, to aid in environmental effects monitoring and to insure that the site capacity is not exceeded, i.e., the mound does not exceed the site boundaries. Copies of these surveys shall be provided to EPA Region 4 when completed.

Additional Material Tracking and Disposal Effects Monitoring

Surveys can be used to address possible changes in bathymetric, sedimentological, chemical, and biological aspects of the Charleston ODMDS and surrounding area as a result of the disposal of dredged material at the site. Baseline and trend surveys will be performed in accordance with 40 CFR 228.13. Upon initiation of construction of the Charleston Harbor Deepening Project (Post45) the following monitoring programs will be implemented, where possible and when funding is available. Additionally, trend surveys will be conducted following completion of the deepening project pursuant to 40 CFR 228.13. The purpose of these monitoring efforts is to build upon the knowledge
Monitoring Objectives: Monitoring objectives of the Charleston ODMDS SMMP are to:

1) Determine the fate of dredged material placed at the site,
2) Assess the impact of dredged material movement outside the ODMDS boundaries through the early detection of changes in sediment characteristics (physical and chemical), and biological communities which may be deemed as adverse and chronic, and
3) Assess the extent and impact of unauthorized disposal activities outside the ODMDS boundary.

Since several different ecological components are susceptible to perturbation by dredged material disposal, and an alteration to one component may result in impacts on another, a comprehensive monitoring approach is proposed with several specific objectives. These specific objectives are to:

1. Continue bathymetric, side scan sonar, and sediment chemistry mapping of the ODMDS and surrounding areas based on the SCDNR identified monitoring zones, relate these findings to plotted coordinates of disposal events and previously collected data.
2. Use data collected to determine, to the extent possible, the direction, distance, and volume of dredged sediment migration.
3. Evaluate the success of the proposed submerged berm construction on (1) retarding the over-bottom movement of dredged material, (2) the development of habitat and attraction of recreationally important fish species to demonstrate beneficial uses of ODMDS berm design and (3) the recruitment of sessile invertebrates to the substrate.
4. Evaluate the effects of disposal and subsequent movement of dredged material on the physical and chemical characteristics of the sediments and benthic infaunal communities in and adjacent to the ODMDS.
5. Periodically map the distribution of live bottom in and around the ODMDS to monitor for changes in the size of these critical resource areas. At specific index reef sites, document any changes in sponge and coral density and/or condition, areal extent, and surficial sediment characteristics.
6. Collect seasonal, long term, ocean current data to enhance dump model predictive capability at the Charleston sites.

Monitoring Approach and Rationale

Tracking Disposal Activity

An essential requirement for effective site monitoring activities at the Charleston ODMDS is accurate placement, recording, and plotting of all disposal events. The Charleston District, USACE, requires such information from all dredging contractors and will continue to compile and continuously update computer plots depicting placement of all maintenance and new work dredged material. Plotted coordinates will be collected using GPS in latitude/longitude in decimal degrees (NAD83 datum) and provided in a digital format on request to all agencies on the SMMP Team. Unauthorized dumps made outside the Disposal Zone could be investigated to determine what measures would be necessary to restore or mitigate the impacted bottoms, as appropriate. The scope, level of complexity and primary responsibility for conducting such investigations can only be determined on a case-by-case basis.

Sediment Mapping and Bathymetry

Close grid bathymetry and sediment mapping using gamma and CS3 sled techniques may be conducted as part of the construction-related assessment and trend assessments. The mapping effort should encompass the entire area of the ODMDS and the monitoring zones (see figure 1). Due to the apparent highly dynamic nature of sediment transport at the site, detection of more discrete migration patterns may require mapping at a greater frequency, and targeting a specific disposal pile.
Side Scan Sonar Surveys

Side scan sonar surveys of the ODMDS and monitoring areas could be conducted as part of each assessment. When deemed necessary by SMMP Team, simultaneous side scan sonar and underwater video camera tows will be conducted.

Benthic Infaunal and Sediment Sampling

These monitoring activities should involve collecting samples in and around the ODMDS using a stratified random sampling design. All twenty zones should be sampled within the Disposal Zone, the inner boundary, and the outer boundary, with a minimum of ten grab samples collected within each zone. Each grab sample obtained for faunal assessment should be sub-sampled to determine sediment characteristics of the sample (e.g., grain size, percent silt, clay, sand, CaCO₃). A composite sample within each zone should be collected to measure sediment contaminant levels. The sediment characteristics and contaminant levels found in the zones within the Disposal Zone should be compared with zones outside the Disposal Zone to document any changes that occurred following disposal operations. Biological communities (e.g., faunal densities, biomass, species numbers, community structure, and feeding guilds) should be assessed by comparing samples collected in areas with high silt/clay content or high sediment contaminant concentrations with samples collected from a boundary zone where there is no evidence of change in sediment condition. As a cost-saving measure, benthic sampling could be conducted using a tiered approach. After collecting samples in all twenty zones (see above), sample processing would be limited to a subset of samples collected in areas with high silt/clay content or high sediment contaminant concentrations to be compared with another subset of samples collected from boundary zones where there was no evidence of change in sediment condition. The sediment samples should be used to further characterize the composition of surficial sediments in and around the ODMDS, and aid in interpreting changes in benthic infaunal composition.

The results of the post-assessment and three-year post-assessment should be statistically compared to results from the baseline and interim assessments. These surveys will determine whether benthic resources outside the Disposal Zone were affected by disposal of fine-grained materials, whether these changes were detrimental, and the duration of these effects. Impacts to benthic infaunal communities, such as changes in faunal composition, or significant alterations in species number or biomass, can affect trophic functions of predator species such as shrimp, fish, and crabs.

Live/Hard Bottom Mapping:

Biannual assessments of index hard bottom reef sites could be conducted to compare to baseline data from previous monitoring efforts. During each sampling period, video surveys of sponge/coral communities, video surveys of fish communities, surficial sediment depths, surficial sediment characteristics, and sedimentation rates should be collected. Side scan sonar surveys should be conducted annually to determine any changes in the areal extent of each reef site, and simultaneous underwater video surveys should be recorded when necessary. Based on data collected during the study, specific recommendations for monitoring in subsequent years of the program may change, and findings may warrant an extension in the length of the monitoring program.

Sediment Transport/Current Studies:

Longer term current data over an annual cycle would (1) elucidate the effectiveness of the berm constructed at the ODMDS, (2) enhance calibration of the STFATE model, (3) assist in development of a transport model by ERDC and (4) help clarify sediment redistribution patterns revealed by sediment mapping surveys.

Continuously recording equipment (such as acoustic Doppler current profilers, optical backscatter sensors, and sediment size transmissometers could be deployed to provide a long-term data base obtained over a year period to evaluate patterns and natural variability. Similar efforts have been utilized at the Wilmington ODMDS to determine mound movement and sediment mobility (Davis and Miller 2001). Deployment of an Acoustic Doppler Current Profiler (ACDP) placed within or adjacent to the Disposal Zone would provide the best data base for this effort. Quarterly or semiannual retrieval of the data record would provide timely information on prevailing current patterns. Collection of such data should be coincident with the post-disposal assessment during which sediment mapping and sediment sampling occurs, allowing integration of current data into these programs.
Sediment Contaminant Monitoring:

Another component of this monitoring plan could be to periodically sample sediments in and adjacent to the ODMDS to monitor for changes in sediment contaminant levels. Sampling for sediment contaminants should be conducted in conjunction with the benthic monitoring effort, using a composite sample from each zone (N = 20) to reduce analytical costs. Samples should be collected as part of each assessment completed at the site. More frequent sampling of the sediments may be warranted if elevated levels of certain contaminants are found, but the analysis could be restricted to only those constituents which are above acceptable bioeffects levels.

Reporting and Data Formatting

Project Initiation and Violation Reporting

The USACE or other site user shall notify EPA 15 days prior to the beginning of a dredging cycle or project disposal. The user is also required to notify the USACE and the EPA within 24 hours if a violation of the permit and/or contract conditions related to MPRSA Section 103 or SMMP requirements occur during disposal operations.

Disposal Monitoring Data

Disposal monitoring data shall be provided to EPA Region 4 electronically on a weekly basis. Data shall be provided per the EPA Region 4 XML format and delivered as an attachment to an email to DisposalData.R4@epa.gov. The XML format is available from EPA Region 4.

Post Disposal Summary Reports

A Post Disposal Summary Report shall be provided to EPA within 90 days after project completion. These reports should include: dredging project title; permit number and expiration date (if applicable); contract number; name of contractor(s) conducting the work; name and type of vessel(s) disposing material in the ODMDS; disposal timeframes for each vessel; volume disposed at the ODMDS (as paid \textit{in situ} volume, total paid and \textit{in situ} volume, and gross volume reported by dredging contractor), number of loads to ODMDS, type of material disposed at the ODMDS; identification by load number of any misplaced material; dates of pre and post disposal bathymetric surveys of the ODMDS and a narrative discussing any violation(s) of the 103 concurrency and/or permit (if applicable). The narrative should include a description of the violation, indicate the time it occurred and when it was reported to the EPA and USACE, discuss the circumstances surrounding the violation, and identify specific measures taken to prevent reoccurrence. The Post Disposal Summary Report should be accompanied by the bathymetry survey results (plot and X,Y,Z ASCII data file), a summary scatter plot of all disposal start locations, and a summary table of the trip information required by Section 3.2 with the exception of the disposal completion data. If all data is provided in the required XML format, scatter plots and summary tables will not be necessary.

Environmental Monitoring

Material tracking, disposal effects monitoring, and any other data collected shall be coordinated with and be provided to SMMP team members and federal and state agencies as appropriate. Data will be provided to other interested parties requesting such data to the extent possible. Data will be provided for all surveys in a report generated by the action agency. Environmental monitoring shall occur annually during the disposal of material during the new work dredging associated with the construction of the Post 45 deepening project. Subsequent monitoring shall be determined by the SMMP team members, but shall not be required more often than every other year. The reports should indicate:

1) How the survey relates to the SMMP and previous surveys at the Charleston Offshore ODMDS;
2) Provide data interpretations, conclusions, and recommendations; and
3) Project the next phase of the SMMP.

Monitoring results will be summarized in subsequent revisions to the SMMP.
MODIFICATION OF THE CHARLESTON ODMDS SMMP

Should the results of the monitoring surveys or valid reports from other sources indicate that continued use of the ODMDS could lead to unacceptable effects, then the ODMDS management could be modified to mitigate the adverse effects. The SMMP will be reviewed and updated at least every 10 years. The SMMP could be reviewed and updated as necessary if site use changes significantly. For example, the SMMP will be reviewed if the quantity or type of dredged material placed at site changes significantly or if conditions at the site indicate a need for revision. The plan should be updated in conjunction with activities authorizing use of the site.

IMPLEMENTATION OF THE CHARLESTON ODMDS SMMP

This plan shall be effective from date of signature for a period not to exceed 10 years. The EPA and the Corps shall share responsibility for implementation of the SMMP. Site users may be required to undertake monitoring activities as a condition of their permit. The Corps will be responsible for implementation of the SMMP for Federal maintenance projects.

REFERENCES


Site Management Plan for the Charleston ODMDS. 1993. SMMP Team.


APPENDIX A

WATER COLUMN EVALUATIONS
NUMERICAL MODEL (STFATE) INPUT PARAMETERS
STFATE (Short-Term FATE of dredged material disposal in open water) models the discharge of a single load of dredged material from a scow or hopper. STFATE computes a prediction of the deposition and water quality effects of dredged materials disposed of in open water. This numerical model is used for required evaluations of initial mixing and water column effects. STFATE is an outgrowth of the first comprehensive model for predicting the fate of dredged material developed by Koh and Chang (1993). STFATE models three disposal phases, convective descent, dynamic collapse, and passive transport dispersion. STFATE models conventional displacement (bottom dumping) where the vast majority of the dredged material released from a barge or hopper dredge descends rapidly to the bottom in a high density jet known as the convective descent phase. The dynamic collapse phase begins when the jet impacts the bottom. The more dense material immediately deposits, while the less dense particles are spread outward as a density flow when the vertical energy is transferred into horizontal momentum. Over time the less dense material also settles.

Input data for the model includes information regarding the following:

- Disposal operation
- Disposal site
- Dredged material
- Model coefficients
- Input/output/execution controls

The STFATE input parameters are to be used in future evaluations of disposal operations. These parameters are based on information obtained during site designation studies as presented in the Charleston ODMDS FEA, previous applications of the disposal models, and default parameters. Additional project and site-specific information should be used in future STFATE applications to improve the predictive capability of the model.

The STFATE model input parameters include site description, ambient velocity data, disposal operation information, and coefficients. A 103 by 98 grid was chosen to provide the highest resolution. The grid spacing in the north/south and east/west directions was selected at 200 feet to keep the disposal plume within the grid during the model execution. An average depth of 36 feet is used and a two-point density profile is used. A depth averaged logarithmic velocity profile was selected using median values to the East. Disposal operation and execution parameters include disposal site boundaries and disposal location and model time step and duration. The duration is set to 14,400 seconds (4 hours) to meet the 4-hour dilution requirement. Project specific disposal operations data (i.e., vessel speed, dimensions and draft) will depend on the individual projects. Likewise, dredged material characteristics may vary based on specific sediment testing information. Model default values are specified where appropriate.

**STFATE Model Input Parameters**

Section 103 Regulatory Analysis for Ocean Water, Tier III, Short-Term Fate of Dredged Material from Split Hull Barge or Hopper/Toxicity Run Average sediment characteristics of recent sediment 103 evaluations were used to calculate the Volumetric Fractions. STFATE model input parameters utilized in the module were as follows:
Water Column Evaluations
Numerical Model (STFATE) Input Parameters
Modified Charleston ODMDS (17,000 X 16,000)

### SITE DESCRIPTION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Units</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number of Grid Points (left to right)</td>
<td>103</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of Grid Points (top to bottom)</td>
<td>98</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spacing Between Grid Points (left to right)</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spacing Between Grid Points (top to bottom)</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constant Water Depth</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roughness Height at Bottom of Disposal Site</td>
<td>.0051</td>
<td>ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slope of Bottom in X-Direction</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Deg.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slope of Bottom in Z-Direction</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Deg.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of Points in Ambient Density Profile Point</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ambient Density at Depth = 0 ft</td>
<td>1.0215</td>
<td>g/cc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ambient Density at Depth = 36 ft</td>
<td>1.0220</td>
<td>g/cc</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### AMBIENT VELOCITY DATA

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Units</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Water Depth</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Profile</td>
<td>Logarithmic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vertically Averaged X-Direction Velocity</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>ft/sec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vertically Averaged Z-Direction Velocity</td>
<td>0.33</td>
<td>ft/sec</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### DISPOSAL OPERATION DATA

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Units</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Location of Disposal Point from Top of Grid</td>
<td>10,300</td>
<td>ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location of Disposal Point from Left Edge of Grid</td>
<td>9,800</td>
<td>ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dumping Over Depression</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### INPUT, EXECUTION AND OUTPUT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Units</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
Location of the Upper Left Corner of the Disposal Site  
- Distance from Top Edge  
1,800 ft

Location of the Upper Left Corner of the Disposal Site  
- Distance from Left Edge  
1,800 ft

Location of the Lower Right Corner of the Disposal Site  
- Distance from Top Edge  
18,800 ft

Location of the Lower Right Corner of the Disposal Site  
- Distance from Left Edge  
17,800 ft

Duration of Simulation  
14,400 sec

Long Term Time Step  
600 sec

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Keyword</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Settling Coefficient</td>
<td>BETA</td>
<td>0.000(^1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apparent Mass Coefficient</td>
<td>CM</td>
<td>1.000(^1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drag Coefficient</td>
<td>CD</td>
<td>0.500(^1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Form Drag for Collapsing Cloud</td>
<td>CDRAG</td>
<td>1.000(^1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skin Friction for Collapsing Cloud</td>
<td>CFRIC</td>
<td>0.010(^1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drag for an Ellipsoidal Wedge</td>
<td>CD3</td>
<td>0.100(^1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drag for a Plate</td>
<td>CD4</td>
<td>1.000(^1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Friction Between Cloud and Bottom</td>
<td>FRICTN</td>
<td>0.010(^1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4/3 Law Horizontal Diffusion Dissipation Factor</td>
<td>ALAMDA</td>
<td>0.0225(^2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unstratified Water Vertical Diffusion Coefficient</td>
<td>AKYO</td>
<td>Pritchard Expression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cloud/Ambient Density Gradient Ratio</td>
<td>GAMA</td>
<td>0.250(^1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turbulent Thermal Entrainment</td>
<td>ALPHAO</td>
<td>0.235(^1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entrainment in Collapse</td>
<td>ALPHAC</td>
<td>0.100(^1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stripping Factor</td>
<td>CSTRIP</td>
<td>0.003(^1)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\)Model Default Value  
\(^2\)Calculated from NOAA Field Work at Fort Pierce (1994)
APPENDIX B

TEMPLATE FOR MPRSA 103 STANDARD PERMIT CONDITIONS
GENERIC SPECIAL CONDITIONS
FOR MPRSA SECTION 103 PERMITS
CHARLESTON, SC ODMDS

I. DISPOSAL OPERATIONS

A. For this permit, the term disposal operations shall mean: navigation of any vessel used in disposal of operations, transportation of dredged material from the dredging site to the Charleston, SC ODMDS, proper disposal of dredged material at the disposal area within the Charleston, SC ODMDS, and transportation of the hopper dredge or disposal barge or scow back to the dredging site.

B. The Charleston, SC ODMDS is defined by the following coordinates:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Site</th>
<th>Geographic (NAD83, Decimal Degrees)</th>
<th>State Plane (South Carolina US Survey Feet)</th>
<th>Area (nmi²)</th>
<th>Area (mi²)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Latitude</td>
<td>Longitude</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposed Modified</td>
<td>Center</td>
<td>32.63522</td>
<td>-79.73939</td>
<td>294137.61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charleston ODMDS</td>
<td>SE</td>
<td>32.60467</td>
<td>-79.72770</td>
<td>283067.786</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SW</td>
<td>32.62744</td>
<td>-79.77627</td>
<td>291170.826</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NW</td>
<td>32.66571</td>
<td>-79.75113</td>
<td>305185.821</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NE</td>
<td>32.64299</td>
<td>-79.70253</td>
<td>297104.717</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The disposal zone within the ODMDS has the following coordinates:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Site</th>
<th>Geographic (NAD83, Decimal Degrees)</th>
<th>State Plane (South Carolina US Survey Feet)</th>
<th>Area (nmi²)</th>
<th>Area (mi²)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Latitude</td>
<td>Longitude</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alternative 1 modeled</td>
<td>SE</td>
<td>32.62953</td>
<td>-79.76731</td>
<td>291963.450</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dump zone</td>
<td>SW</td>
<td>32.61220</td>
<td>-79.73030</td>
<td>285797.391</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NW</td>
<td>32.63817</td>
<td>-79.71280</td>
<td>295312.397</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NE</td>
<td>32.65600</td>
<td>-79.75011</td>
<td>301659.432</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C. No more than [NUMBER] cubic yards of dredged material excavated at the location defined in [REFERENCE LOCATION IN PERMIT] are authorized for disposal at the Charleston, SC ODMDS. The permittee agrees and understands that all dredged material will be placed in such a manner that its highest point will not exceed –25 feet MLW.

D. The permittee shall use an electronic positioning system to navigate to and from the Charleston, SC ODMDS. For this section of the permit, the electronic positioning system is defined as: a differential global positioning system or a microwave line of site system. Use of LORAN-C alone is not an acceptable electronic positioning system for disposal operations at the Charleston, SC ODMDS. If the electronic positioning system fails or navigation problems are detected, all disposal operations shall cease until the failure or navigation problems are corrected.

E. The permittee shall certify the accuracy of the electronic positioning system proposed for use during disposal operations at the Charleston, SC ODMDS. The certification shall be accomplished by direct comparison of the electronic positioning system’s accuracy with a known fixed point.

B-2
F. The permittee shall not allow any water or dredged material placed in a hopper dredge or disposal barge or scow to flow over the sides or leak from such vessels during transportation to the Charleston, SC ODMDS, to the extent practicable. In addition, the permittee understands that no debris is to be placed in the ODMDS.

G. A disposal operations inspector and/or captain of any tug boat, hopper dredge or other vessel used to transport dredged material to the Charleston, SC ODMDS shall insure compliance with disposal operation conditions defined in this permit.
   1. If the disposal operations inspector or the captain detects a violation, he shall report the violation to the permittee immediately.
   2. The permittee shall contact the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Charleston District’s Regulatory Division (843) 329-8044 and EPA Region 4 at (404) 562-9395 to report the violation within twenty-four (24) hours after the violation occurs. A complete written explanation of any permit violation shall be included in the post-dredging report.

H. When dredged material is disposed, no portion of the hopper dredge or disposal barge or scow shall be farther than 100 feet from the center of the disposal lanes as assigned for that project.

I. The permittee shall use an electronic tracking system (ETS) that will continuously track the horizontal location and draft condition of the disposal vessel (hopper dredge or disposal barge or scow) to and from the Charleston ODMDS. Data shall be collected at least every 500 feet during travel to and from the ODMDS and every minute or every 200 feet of travel, whichever is smaller, while approaching within 1,000 feet of and within the ODMDS. The permittee shall use South Carolina State Plane or latitude and longitude coordinates (North American Datum 1983). State Plane coordinates shall be reported to the nearest foot and latitude and longitude shall be reported as decimal degrees to the sixth decimal place. Westerly longitudes are to be reported as negative. Draft readings shall be recorded in feet to the hundredths place.

J. The permittee shall record electronically for each load the following information:
   a. Load Number
   b. Disposal Vessel or Scow Name
   c. Tow Vessel Name (if scow used)
   d. Captain of Disposal or Tow Vessel
   e. Estimated volume of Load
   f. Description of Material Disposed
   g. Source of Dredged Material
   h. Date, Time and Location at Start of Initiation and Completion of Disposal event
   i. The ETS data required by Special Condition I.I.

K. The permittee shall conduct a bathymetric survey of the Charleston ODMDS 30 days following project completion.
   1. The number and length of the survey transects shall be sufficient to encompass the Charleston ODMDS and a 0.25 nautical mile wide area around the site. The transects shall be spaced at 500-foot intervals or less.
   2. Vertical accuracy of the survey shall be ±0.5 feet. Horizontal location of the survey lines and depth sounding points will be determined by an automated positioning system utilizing either microwave line of site system or differential global positioning system. The vertical datum shall be mean lower low water (m.l.l.w) and the horizontal datum shall use South Carolina State Plane or latitude and longitude coordinates (North American Datum 1983). State Plane coordinates shall be reported to the nearest 0.10 foot and latitude and longitude coordinates shall be reported as decimal degrees to the fifth place.

K. Between December 1 and March 31, NMFS requires monitoring by endangered species observers with at-sea large whale identification experience to conduct daytime observations for whales. During daylight hours, the vessel must
take precautions to avoid whales. During evening hours or when there is limited visibility due to fog or sea states of greater than Beaufort, 3, the vessel must slow down to 5 knots or less when traversing between areas if whales have been spotted within 15nm of the vessel’s path within the previous 24 hours. In addition, vessel shall maintain a 500 yard buffer zone between the vessel and any sighted whale.

L. Essential Fish Habitat (EFH). The Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (MSFCMA), 16 USC 1801 et seq. Public Law 104-208 reflects the Secretary of Commerce and Fishery Management Council authority and responsibilities for the protection of essential fish habitat. The Act specifies that each Federal agency shall consult with the Secretary with respect to any action authorized, funded, or undertaken, or proposed to be authorized, funded, or undertaken by such agency that may adversely affect any EFH identified under this act. EFH is defined in the Act as “those waters and substrate necessary to fish for spawning, breeding, feeding, or growth to maturity.” Detailed information on federally managed fisheries and their EFH is provided in the 1998 amendment of the Fishery Management Plans for the South Atlantic Region prepared by the South Atlantic Fishery Management Council (SAFMC). The 1998 generic amendment was prepared as required by the MSFCMA.

II. REPORTING REQUIREMENTS

A. All reports, documentation and correspondence required by the conditions of this permit shall be submitted to the following addresses: U.S. Army Corps of Engineers Charleston District, Regulatory Division and EPA Region 4, Ocean, Wetlands, and Streams Protection Branch. The permittee shall reference this permit number [INSERT PERMIT NUMBER], on all submittals.

B. At least 15 days before initiating any dredging operations authorized by this permit, the Permittee shall provide to the Corps and EPA a written notification of the date of commencement of work authorized by this permit.

C. Electronic data required by Special Conditions I.I and I.J shall be provided to EPA Region 4 on a weekly basis. Data shall be submitted as an eXtensible Markup Language (XML) document via Internet e-mail to Disposal Data.R4@epa.gov. XML data file format specifications are available from EPA Region 4.

D. The permittee shall send one (1) copy of the disposal summary report to the Charleston District’s Regulatory Branch and one (1) copy of the disposal summary report to EPA Region 4 documenting compliance with all general and special conditions defined in this permit. The disposal summary report shall be sent within 90 days after completion of the disposal operations authorized by this permit. The disposal summary report shall include the following information:

1. The report shall indicate whether all general and special permit conditions were met. Any violations of the permit shall be explained in detail.

2. The disposal summary report shall include the following information: dredging project title; dates of disposal; permit number and expiration date; name of contractor(s) conducting the work, name and type of vessel(s) disposing material in the ODMDS; disposal timeframes for each vessel; volume disposed at the ODMDS (as paid in situ volume, total paid and un paid in situ volume, and gross volume reported by dredging contractor), number of loads to ODMDS, type of material disposed at the ODMDS; identification of any misplaced material (outside disposal zone or the ODMDS boundaries); dates of post disposal bathymetric surveys of the ODMDS and a narrative discussing any violation(s) of the 103 permit. The disposal summary report should be accompanied by the bathymetry survey results (plot and X, Y, Z ASCII data file).

III. PERMIT LIABILITY

A. The permittee shall be responsible for ensuring compliance with all conditions of this permit.
B. The permittee and all contractors or other third parties who perform an activity authorized by this permit on behalf of the permittee shall be separately liable for a civil penalty of up to $50,000 for each violation of any term of this permit they commit alone or in concert with the permittee or other parties. This liability shall be individual, rather than joint and several, and shall not be reduced in any fashion to reflect the liability assigned to and civil penalty assessed against the permittee or any other third party as defined in 33 U.S.C. Section 1415(a).

C. If the permittee or any contractor or other third party knowingly violates any term of this permit (either alone or in concert), the permittee, contractor or other party shall be individually liable for the criminal penalties set forth in 33 U.S.C. Section 1415(b).
APPENDIX C

TYPICAL CONTRACT LANGUAGE FOR IMPLEMENTING SMMP REQUIREMENTS

(for Federal Projects)
3.3 **DISPOSAL OF DREDGED MATERIAL**

3.3.1 **General**

All material dredged shall be transported to and deposited in the disposal area(s) designated on the drawings. The approximate maximum and average distance to which the material will have to be transported are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disposal Area</th>
<th>Maximum Distance</th>
<th>Average Distance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Charleston ODMDS</td>
<td>[XX miles]</td>
<td>[XX miles]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[IF MATERIAL FROM DIFFERENT PROJECT AREAS GO TO DIFFERENT DISPOSAL AREAS, IT COULD BE SPECIFIED HERE]

3.3.2 **Ocean Disposal Notification**

a. The Corps or the contractor shall notify EPA Region 4’s Ocean, Wetlands, and Streams Protection Branch (61 Forsyth Street, Atlanta, GA 30303) at least 15 calendar days and the local Coast Guard Captain of the Port at least 5 calendar days prior to the first ocean disposal. The notification will be by certified mail with a copy to the Contracting Officer. The following information shall be included in the notification:

   1. Project designation, Corps of Engineers’ Contracting Officer’s name and contract number, and the name, address, and telephone number of the Contractor;
   2. Port of departure;
   3. Location of ocean disposal area (and disposal zone, if applicable); and
   4. Schedule for ocean disposal, giving date and time projected for first ocean disposal.

3.3.3 **Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Sites (ODMDS)**

The material excavated shall be transported to and deposited in the Charleston ODMDS as shown on the drawings. When dredged material is disposed, no portion of the hopper dredge or disposal barge or scow shall be outside of the
boundaries, or within 500 feet of, the boundaries of the ODMDS. Additionally, disposal shall only be initiated within the disposal release zone defined by the following coordinates:

[insert coordinates for appropriate release zone]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Geographic NAD 83</th>
<th>State Plane NAD 83</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>latitude</td>
<td>Longitude</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>northing</td>
<td>easting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Center North West South East</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.3.4 Logs

The Contractor shall keep a log for each load placed in the Charleston ODMDS. The log entry for each load shall include:

a. Load Number
b. Disposal Vessel or Scow Name
c. Tow Vessel Name (if scow used)
d. Captain of Disposal or Tow Vessel
e. Estimated volume of Load
f. Description of material disposed
g. Source of Dredged Material
h. Date, Time and Location (coordinates) at Start of Initiation and Completion of Disposal Event

At the completion of dredging and at any time upon request, the log(s) shall be submitted in paper and electronic formats to the Contracting Officer for forwarding to the appropriate agencies.

3.3.5 Overflow, Spills and Leaks

Water and dredged materials shall not be permitted to overflow or spill out of barges, hopper dredges, or dump scows during transport to the disposal site(s). Failure to repair leaks or change the method of operation which is resulting in overflow or spillage will result in suspension of dredging operations and require prompt repair or change of operation to prevent overflow or spillage as a prerequisite to the resumption of dredging.

3.3.6 Electronic Tracking System (ETS) for Ocean Disposal Vessels

The Contractor shall furnish an ETS for surveillance of the movement and disposition of dredged material during dredging and ocean disposal. This ETS shall be established, operated and maintained by the Contractor to continuously track in real-time the horizontal location and draft condition of the disposal vessel (hopper dredge or disposal barge or scow) for the entire dredging cycle, including dredging area and disposal area. The ETS shall be capable of displaying and recording in real-time the disposal vessel’s draft and location.

[USE LANGUAGE BELOW FOR NON DQM PROJECTS]

3.3.6.1 ETS Standards

The Contractor shall provide automated (computer) system and components to perform in accordance with COE EM 1110-1-2909. A copy of the EM can be downloaded from the following website: http://www.usace.army.mil/inet/usace-docs’eng-manuals/em.htm. Horizontal location shall have an accuracy equal to or better than a standard DGPS system, equal to or better than plus/minus 10 feet (horizontal repeatability). Vertical (draft) data shall have an accuracy of plus/minus 0.5 foot. Horizontal location and vertical data shall be collected in sets and each data set shall be
referenced in real-time to date and local time (to nearest minute), and shall be referenced to the same state plane coordinate system used for the survey(s) shown in the contract plans. The ETS shall be calibrated, as required, in the presence of the Contracting Officer at the work location before disposal operations have started, and at 30-day intervals while work is in progress. The Contracting Officer shall have access to the ETS in order to observe its operation. Disposal operations will not commence until the ETS to be used by the Contractor is certified by the Contracting Officer to be operational and within acceptable accuracy. It is the Contractor’s responsibility to select a system that will operate properly at the work location. The complete system shall be subject to the Contracting Officer’s approval.

3.3.6.2 ETS Data Requirements and Submissions

a. The ETS for each disposal vessel shall be in operation for all dredging and disposal activities and shall record the full round trip for each loading and disposal cycle. (NOTE: A dredging and disposal cycle constitutes the time from commencement of dredging to complete discharge of material.) The Contracting Officer shall be notified immediately in the event of ETS failure and all dredging operations for the vessel shall cease until the ETS is fully operational. Any delays resulting from ETS failure shall be at the Contractor’s expense.

b. Data shall be collected, during the dredging and disposal cycle, every 500 feet (minimally) during travel to the disposal area, and every minute or every 200 feet, whichever is smaller, while approaching within 1,000 feet and within the disposal area.

c. Plot Reporting (2 types):

i. Tracking Plot – For each disposal event, data collected while the disposal vessel is in the vicinity of the disposal area shall be plotted in chart form, in 200-foot intervals, to show the track and draft of the disposal vessel approaching and traversing the disposal area. The plot shall identify the exact position at which the dump commenced. A sample Track and Draft Plot Diagram is on the web site indicated in paragraph CONSTRUCTION FORMS AND DETAILS below.

ii. Scatter Plot – Following completion of all disposal events, a single and separate plot will be prepared to show the exact disposal locations of all dumps. Every plotted location shall coincide with the beginning of the respective dump. Each dump shall be labeled with the corresponding Trip Number and shall be at a small but readable scale. A sample Scatter Plot Diagram is on the web site indicated in paragraph CONSTRUCTION FORMS AND DETAILS below.

d. ETS data and log data required by Section 3.3.4 shall be provided to EPA Region 4 on a weekly or more frequent basis. Data shall be submitted to EPA Region 4 as an eXtensible Markup Language (XML) document via Internet e-mail to Disposal Data R4@epa.gov. XML data file format specifications are available from EPA Region 4. All digital ETS data shall be furnished to the Contracting Officer within 24 hours of collection. The digital plot files should be in an easily readable format such as Adobe Acrobat PDF file, Microstation DGN file, JPEG, BMP, TIFF, or similar. The hard copy of the ETS data and tracking plots shall be both maintained onboard the vessel and submitted to the Contracting Officer on a weekly basis.

[FOR DQM PROJECTS]


For scows, the monitoring profile, TDS profile or Ullage profile shall be used.

3.3.6.3 Misplaced Materials

Materials deposited outside of the disposal zone specified in 3.3.3 will be classified as misplaced material and will result in a suspension of dredging operations. Redredging of such materials will be required as a prerequisite to the resumption of dredging unless the Contracting Officer, at his discretion, determines that redredging of such material is not practical. If redredging of such material is not required then the quantity of such misplaced material shall be
deducted from the Contractor’s pay quantity. If the quantity for each misplaced load to be deducted cannot initially be agreed to by both the Contractor and Contracting Officer, then an average load quantity for the entire contract will be used in the determination. Misplaced loads may also be subject to penalty under the Marine Protection, Research, and Sanctuaries Act. Materials deposited above the maximum indicated elevation or outside the disposal area template shown will require the redredging or removal of such materials at the Contractor’s expense. In addition, the Contractor must notify the Contracting Officer and the EPA Region 4’s Ocean, Wetlands, and Streams Protection Branch (61 Forsyth Street, Atlanta, GA 30303) within 24 hours of a misplaced dump or any other violation of the Site Management and Monitoring Plan for the Charleston ODMDS. Corrective actions must be implemented by the next dump and the Contracting Officer must be informed of actions taken.
CHARLESTON OCEAN DREDGED MATERIAL DISPOSAL SITE MODELING WORK

APPENDIX D COASTAL ENGINEERING
1. Introduction

Charleston Harbor is a natural coastal plain tidal estuary located at Charleston, South Carolina. The harbor covers an area of approximately 14 square miles and is formed by the confluence of the Ashley, Cooper, and Wando Rivers. The entrance to Charleston Harbor is flanked by a dual weir-jetty system 2900 feet apart. USACE (1988) stated that rubble-mound jetties with shoreward submerged weir section and seaward raised section were constructed at Charleston harbor during 1878-1886 (Figure 1). The Charleston Harbor Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site (ODMDS) was designated by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) in 1987 for the disposal of dredged material from the greater Charleston, South Carolina area. The U.S. Army Corps of Engineers Charleston District (SAC) has initiated a study of deepening Charleston Harbor. The SAC has determined that deepening of the harbor would generate sufficient dredged material to affect the existing capacity of the Charleston ODMDS and restrict its ability to accept material from Operations and Maintenance (O&M) dredging. Consequently, the SAC has determined that modification of the existing ODMDS will be needed to accommodate dredged material from the deepening project and maintain SAC’s existing dredged material management options for O&M dredging (EPA, 2014).

Based on projected future use for maintenance material, the current ODMDS has more than 20 years remaining capacity at a clearance elevation of -25 ft MLLW (USACE, 2009). The proposed ODMDS capacity analysis should consider volumes placed as a result of the proposed deepening project as well as 25 years of subsequent maintenance (EPA letter dated August 2, 2012). Figure 2 shows the location of the existing (red color) and the proposed expanded (black color) ODMDS. The potential impacts at the Charleston expanded ODMDS, as a result of disposal of large amount of dredged material during the channel deepening operations, should be investigated.

The objective of the proposed study is to model the short-term and long-term fate of channel deepening sediments and the maintenance dredging material placed at the expanded ODMDS over a 25 years period. EPA letter dated August 2, 2012 stated that the analysis should ensure that dredged material disposed offshore does not accumulate in a fashion which would pose a navigational hazard and demonstrate that the disposed dredged material stays within the site boundaries as defined by the 5 cm deposition contour. It should also account for subsequent erosion and transport due to storms, waves and currents.

The Multiple Placement FATE (MPFATE) (Smith, 2013) and the Long Term FATE (LTFATE) models are used to simulate placement, erosion, and transport of dredged material. LTFATE includes robust 3-D hydrodynamics and sediment transport, and the approach chosen in MPFATE development was to link MPFATE and LTFATE (Hayter et al., 2012).

SAC requested that EPA conduct a one year study of currents and waves in the vicinity of the modified Charleston Harbor ODMDS in support of site designation. Measured current data collected from this study, were used as input to the MPFATE model. LTFATE input current and wave data were extracted from the Coastal Modeling System (CMS) flow and wave models previously prepared for the Charleston Coastal area during 2013 (USACE, 2013). Addendum A
contains a more in depth description of CMS, while Addendums B and C contain a description of the hydrodynamic and sediment transport models, respectively, in LTFATE.

Figure 1- Charleston Harbor (USACE, 1988).
Figure 2- Charleston ODMDS.
2. **Measured Current and Wave Data**

EPA Region 4 conducted a one year (November 2012-November 2013) study of the currents and waves in the vicinity of a new Charleston Harbor ODMDS in support of site designation (EPA, 2014). This task involved multiple deployments of Acoustic Doppler Current Profilers (ADCP) to measure currents and waves within the proposed modified ODMDS study area and around the Charleston Harbor Entrance Channel. EPA (2014) stated that the study area (Figure 3) consists of the Charleston Harbor ODMDS, the area north and south of the ends of the Charleston Harbor jetties; and a location approximately 50 kilometers offshore the entrance to Charleston Harbor in deep water. The instruments required four deployments each of 3 to 5 months beginning on November 7-9, 2012. The deployment periods are shown in Table 1.

![Figure 3- ADCPs locations (EPA, 2014).](image-url)
Table 1- ADCP Deployment Periods (EPA, 2014)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>First Ensemble Date-Time (UTC)</th>
<th>Last Ensemble Date-Time (UTC)</th>
<th>Duration (days)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RSM-N</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11/08/12 – 21:00</td>
<td>11/11/12 – 10:00</td>
<td>3¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Currents:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>03/20/13 – 19:00</td>
<td>05/04/13 – 03:00</td>
<td>44²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waves:</td>
<td></td>
<td>06/08/13 – 13:00</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td>Currents: 47</td>
<td>Waves: 83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RSM-S</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11/08/12 – 15:00</td>
<td>02/06/13 – 16:00</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>02/06/13 – 18:00</td>
<td>06/05/13 – 16:00</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ODMDS-N</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11/08/12 – 17:30</td>
<td>02/06/13 – 20:30</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>02/06/13 – 21:15</td>
<td>06/05/13 – 21:30</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>06/05/13 – 21:30</td>
<td>09/04/13 – 21:00</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>09/04/13 – 21:00</td>
<td>2/20/14 – 19:30</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>469</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ODMDS-S</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11/07/12 – 17:30</td>
<td>02/05/13 – 21:00</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>02/05/13 – 21:50</td>
<td>06/06/13 – 15:50</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>06/06/13 – 16:00</td>
<td>09/04/13 – 16:00</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>09/4/13 – 17:10</td>
<td>2/19/14 – 10:10</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>469</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offshore</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11/09/12 – 19:20</td>
<td>12/31/12 – 21:40</td>
<td>52³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>03/19/13 – 21:30</td>
<td>06/04/13 – 19:30</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Currents:</td>
<td></td>
<td>08/11/13 – 09:00</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Directional</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waves:</td>
<td></td>
<td>07/15/13 – 10:00</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Directional</td>
<td></td>
<td>08/11/13 – 16:00</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹Bad CPU board caused instrument failure.
³Power failure resulted in premature instrument shutdown on 5/4/13.
⁴Power failure resulted in premature instrument shutdown on 3/11/13.
⁵Pressure sensor failure on 7/15/12 resulted in the inability to determine directional wave parameters.
3. Representative Storm Conditions

Wave and hourly average current data collected at the ODMDS ADCPs were used to define representative storm events for Charleston Harbor. The available data were examined to select extreme events to represent the wave and current climate within the ODMDS.

The selected extreme events will be used as input to CMS Flow and Wave models which will provide input current and wave data for LTFATE model. CMS models will be forced with measured wave data at the offshore ADCP (Figure 3). Synthesizing the yearly data into frequent storms will minimize the computational running times of the CMS and LTFATE models.

The criteria to select extreme events are increased wave heights and currents and near unidirectional flow over a multi-day time period. These conditions are expected to represent significant transport potential for the ODMDS. The same procedure was used in a study conducted for the Jacksonville ODMDS (USACE, 2010). During the preparation of this report, ODMDS data were only available during November 2012-August 2013. The threshold wave and current speed values were selected by examining the measured data records and also adopting threshold values used in the literature. USACE (2010) adopted a threshold current speed of 35 cm/s and wave height of 2.0 m. Data at the ODMDS-S ADCP were investigated and extreme events were selected based on the following threshold criteria:

- Significant wave heights > 2.0 m
- Persistent peak current speed > 35 cm/s
- Persistent unidirectional flow

Figures 4 through 13 show the potential events, which meet the above mentioned criteria, during November 2012 - August 2013.

Figure 4- Wave height, current speed and direction collected at ODMDS-S during November 2012.
Figure 5- Wave height, current speed and direction collected at ODMDS-S during December 2012.

Figure 6- Wave height, current speed and direction collected at ODMDS-S during January 2013.

Figure 7- Wave height, current speed and direction collected at ODMDS-S during February 2013.
Figure 8- Wave height, current speed and direction collected at ODMDS-S during March 2013.

Figure 9- Wave height, current speed and direction collected at ODMDS-S during April 2013.

Figure 10- Wave height, current speed and direction collected at ODMDS-S during May 2013.
Figure 11- Wave height, current speed and direction collected at ODMDS-S during June 2013.

Figure 12- Wave height, current speed and direction collected at ODMDS-S during July 2013.

Figure 13- Wave height, current speed and direction collected at ODMDS-S during August 2013.
The potential events were examined and eight significant events, which represent the most intense storms, were selected to represent the wave and flow climate at the ODMDS as shown in Figures 14 through 21. Table 2 lists the selected storms characteristics. Data at the offshore ADCP were not collected during January –March 20 of 2013 due to instrument malfunction. Therefore, Event No. 3 was not simulated due to unavailability of forcing conditions for CMS models during January and February of 2013.

Figure 14- Wave height, current speed and direction at ODMDS-S during selected storm event 1.

Figure 15- Wave height, current speed and direction at ODMDS-S during selected storm event 2.
Figure 16- Wave height, current speed and direction at ODMDS-S during selected storm event 3.

Figure 17- Wave height, current speed and direction at ODMDS-S during selected storm event 4.

Figure 18- Wave height, current speed and direction at ODMDS-S during selected storm event 5.
Figure 19- Wave height, current speed and direction at ODMDS-S during selected storm event 6.

Figure 20- Wave height, current speed and direction at ODMDS-S during selected storm event 7.

Figure 21- Wave height, current speed and direction at ODMDS-S during selected storm event 8.
Table 2- Selected Representative Storm Events

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Storm Event</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Maximum Hs (m)</th>
<th>Maximum Current Speed (cm/s)</th>
<th>Approx. Duration (Day) of Maximum Current Speed &gt; 40 (cm/s)</th>
<th>Approx. Duration of Unidirectional Flow (day)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Nov 13-23, 2012</td>
<td>2.29</td>
<td>52.56</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Dec 20-25, 2012</td>
<td>2.47</td>
<td>45.39</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Jan 30- Feb 2, 2013</td>
<td>2.51</td>
<td>46.35</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>March 24-27, 2013</td>
<td>1.97</td>
<td>40.99</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>April 19-24, 2013</td>
<td>2.88</td>
<td>48.06</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>May 1-7, 2013</td>
<td>2.8</td>
<td>54.63</td>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>June 6-10, 2013</td>
<td>2.81</td>
<td>44.28</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>June 25-July 5, 2013</td>
<td>1.91</td>
<td>50.01</td>
<td>6.5</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The 2013 Atlantic hurricane season, which officially ended on Saturday, Nov. 30, had the fewest number of hurricanes since 1982, thanks in large part to persistent, unfavorable atmospheric conditions over the Gulf of Mexico, Caribbean Sea, and tropical Atlantic Ocean. It is ranked as the sixth-least-active Atlantic hurricane season since 1950, in terms of the collective strength and duration of named storms and hurricanes. Tropical storm Andrea, the first of the season, was the only named storm to make landfall in the United States during 2013. Andrea brought tornadoes, heavy rain, and minor flooding to portions of Florida, eastern Georgia and eastern South Carolina. (http://www.noaanews.noaa.gov/stories2013/20131125_endofhurricaneseason.html)

According to NOAA National Climatic Data Center, no hurricanes were reported for SC during November 2012 – November 2013. One Tropical storm occurred during June 6-7 of 2013. Figures 22 and 23 show the 2012 and 2013 North Atlantic Hurricane Tracking Charts respectively. Figure 22 shows that no storms were observed within SC during 2012 measurement duration (November and December). Figure 23 shows that the only storm observed, within SC, during 2013 was Tropical Storm Andrea (Jun 6-7). Andrea is represented by the selected storm event 7. Figure 23 shows that no storms occurred during January - May of 2013. Also, the storms that occurred during August - November of 2013 were not within the locality of SC.

Accordingly, the effect of the gaps in the measured offshore data during the above mentioned periods should be insignificant and the selected eight events can be considered representative of the wave and current climate during November 2012- November 2013.

Since the available measured data were collected during a relatively inactive year, a hypothetical stronger storm was added to augment the selected events which represent the wave and current climate at the ODMDS area. Figure 24 shows the storm event return period of 20-yr (1980-1999) at the Wave Information Study (WIS) station 63349. The 1-yr return wave height is about 5.0 m and accordingly the 10th top event (Figure 24) which occurred on March 29 of 1984 was used to enhance the selected storm events. Figure 25 shows time series of wave height during March 28-31, 1984. CMS models will be forced at the offshore boundary with time series of wave and wind parameters during March 28-31, 1984.
Figure 22- 2012 North Atlantic Hurricane Tracking Chart.

Figure 23- 2013 North Atlantic Hurricane Tracking Chart.
Figure 24- Storm event return period of 20-yr at WIS station 63349.

Figure 25- Wave height during 1-yr return period storm at WIS station 63349.
4. CMS Hydrodynamic and Wave Modeling

USACE (2013) used the CMS to develop hydrodynamic, wave and sediment numerical models which describe the existing coastal processes in the Charleston Coastal area. The study included field data collection and numerical modeling of coastal hydrodynamics, wave transformation and sedimentation in the coastal area of Charleston Harbor.

Figure 26 shows the extent of the CMS Flow and Wave models domains adopted in USACE (2013) study and the proposed extent of the LTFATE model boundaries. The CMS-Flow offshore boundary was extended seaward to tie in with the offshore boundary of the CMS-Wave model. The LTFATE model will extract its forcing hydrodynamic and wave data from the CMS models output. Therefore, the CMS models boundaries were placed away from the LTFATE model domain to accommodate the LTFATE model grid and avoid boundary effects.

The latest ODMDS survey data, collected during June of 2013, were referenced to the vertical and horizontal datums of the CMS models. The CMS-Flow and CMS-Wave bathymetry were updated by interpolating the 2013 ODMDS survey data to the CMS grids.

a. Model Validation

CMS-Flow and CMS-Wave models were previously calibrated (USACE, 2013) and the modified models were validated during a spring tide (November 14 – 16) which demonstrates relatively active wave climate and can be considered as representative of active weather conditions. Figure
Figure 27 shows the incident wave height and direction during the 5 days period of November 13-17 of 2012 at the deep ocean ADCP. Wind forcing was also included in the wave model.

Modeled water level and current data were compared to measured data at the ODMDS-S ADCP, during the 5 days period, to assess the modified models performance (Figures 28 and 29) during active weather events. In general, the modified models are reproducing the magnitudes and pattern for water level and current speed at the ODMDS-S ADCP.

Figure 27- Wave height and direction during November 13-17, 2012.

Figure 28- Comparison of measured and modeled water level at ODMDS-S ADCP.
Figure 29- Comparison of measured and modeled current speed at ODMDS-S ADCP.

The CMS-Flow model was forced at the ocean boundary with time series of water level extracted along the ocean cellstring during each storm event. The water levels were extracted from the U.S East Coast Tidal Database (EC2001) calculated with the Finite Element model ADCIRC (Mukai et al., 2002). SMS 11.0 does not extract the tidal constituents for CMS. Therefore, CMS-Flow Advanced Cards were used to define the tidal constituents forcing. Wind forcing was included in the model. Also, the model was forced with fresh water inflow from Ashley, Cooper and Wando Rivers.

It is recommended to include atmospheric pressure, as driving force, during storm events. CMS-Flow V4.0 (and higher) has the option to use spatially variable wind and atmospheric pressure forcing. Currently, this feature is specified in the advanced card section (Sanchez et al., 2013). The WIS has gridded wind and pressure fields for the period of 1980-2012 at a 0.25-deg/1-hr interval covering the Atlantic seaboard. WIS wind/pressure data were not available for 2013 during the time of preparation of this report. The atmospheric data during 2013 can be obtained from neighboring metrological stations. National Data Buoy Center (NDBC) stations 41008 and MROS1 were the two stations with available atmospheric pressure data during the selected storm events. The CMS-Flow model was forced with atmospheric pressure obtained at NDBC stations 41008 and MROS1 (Figure 30). Modeled current speed did not show good agreement with measured data at the ODMDS-S ADCP, probably due to the locations of the NDBC stations far from the CMS-Flow grid and atmospheric pressure forcing was not included. CMS-Wave model was forced with wave parameters at the offshore boundary of the grid.

CMS flow and wave simulations were conducted for the selected storm conditions. Water level, velocity and wave data were extracted from the CMS models to construct the ocean boundary conditions for the LTFATE model.
b. Storm Simulations

CMS flow and wave simulations were conducted for all the representative storms. Offshore incident waves with directions parallel to shore were slightly modified to give better agreement with measured data at the ODMDS-S location. Figure 31 shows the comparison between measured and modeled wave height at ODMDS-S ADCP during Storm 1. Figure 32 shows the comparison between measured and modeled current speed at ODMDS-S ADCP during Storm 1.

The match is not perfect and there are some differences between the model and measured data which might be related to differences in model forcing conditions as compared to actual conditions that occurred during these measurements (Demirbilek et al., 2010).
Figure 31- Comparison of measured and modeled wave height at ODMDS-S ADCP.

Figure 32- Comparison of measured and modeled current speed at ODMDS-S ADCP.
5. MPFATE Modeling

Tables 3 and 4 show O&M and the new dredge material quantity expected to be dredged from the deepening project and maintenance operations. Table 3 shows that the volume of O&M dredged material that will be disposed within the expanded ODMDS during 25 years has been estimated by SAC to reach approximately 34 MCY. Table 4 shows that the volume of new dredged material that will be disposed within the expanded ODMDS has been estimated by SAC to reach approximately 31.2 MCY of which about 6.2 MCY of rock will be dredged during the deepening project and disposed of at the ODMDS.

Table 3- O&M Dredge Material Quantity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Channel Reach</th>
<th>Shoaling Rate in CY/year</th>
<th>Placement Area (PA)</th>
<th>Dredge Type</th>
<th>Dredge Cycle (months)</th>
<th>Estimated Number of Cycles in 25 years</th>
<th>Quantity per Cycle (CY)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fort Sumter Reach/Entrance Channel</td>
<td>519,000</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>Hopper</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>1,038,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mount Pleasant Reach</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>Clamshell</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rebellion Reach</td>
<td>923</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>Clamshell</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>1,154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bennis Reach</td>
<td>37,264</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>Clamshell</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>46,580</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horse Reach</td>
<td>16,035</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>Clamshell</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>20,044</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hog Island Reach</td>
<td>179,838</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>Clamshell</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>224,798</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wando River Lower Reach</td>
<td>69,984</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>Clamshell</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>87,480</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wando River Upper Reach</td>
<td>101,985</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>Clamshell</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>127,481</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wando River Turning Basin</td>
<td>263,097</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>Clamshell</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>328,871</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drum Island Reach</td>
<td>131,287</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>Clamshell</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>164,109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myers Bend</td>
<td>55,119</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>Clamshell</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>68,899</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| ODMDS Total                          | 1,374,532                |

Maintenance dredging within Charleston Harbor is required on a regular basis to provide unrestricted navigation for ocean-going vessels calling upon the Port of Charleston. Dredging depths throughout the harbor vary widely due to shoaling and other natural processes. Advanced maintenance is conducted in high-shoaling areas to enable the project area to remain at the authorized depth for a longer period of time. The harbor was deepened to the project depth between 1999 and 2004, when portions along several reaches were dredged 2 to 4 feet deeper (additional advanced maintenance) because of historically higher shoaling rates. This resulted in potential dredging depths of -51 or -53 feet MLLW in those areas. Figure 33 shows an overview of the Charleston Harbor Federal Navigation Channel which is divided into three primary
reaches: the entrance channel, lower harbor, and upper harbor reaches. The entrance channel begins at the 47-foot contour line in the Atlantic Ocean and extends northwest 17 miles.

Table 4- New Dredge Material Quantity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Channel Reach</th>
<th>Dredge Plant Type</th>
<th># of Dredges</th>
<th>Placement Area</th>
<th>Deepening Dredge Quantity in Cubic Yards (CY)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fort Sumter Reach EC1</td>
<td>Large Hopper</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>2,357,022</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort Sumter Reach EC1</td>
<td>Medium Hopper</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>3,928,371</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort Sumter Reach EC1</td>
<td>Rock cutter</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>ODMDS Berm</td>
<td>2,266,766</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ft. Sumter - Reach EC1</td>
<td>Clamshell with bucket</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>ODMDS Berm</td>
<td>660,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort Sumter Reach EC2</td>
<td>Large Hopper</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>1,943,512</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort Sumter Reach EC2</td>
<td>Medium Hopper</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>2,915,267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort Sumter Reach EC2</td>
<td>Rock cutter</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>ODMDS Berm</td>
<td>3,346,872</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mount Pleasant Reach</td>
<td>Clamshell</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>840,083</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rebellion Reach</td>
<td>Clamshell</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>1,081,341</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bennis Reach</td>
<td>Clamshell</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>1,942,858</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horse Reach</td>
<td>Clamshell</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>350,996</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hog Island Reach</td>
<td>Clamshell</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>2,109,994</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wando River Lower Reach</td>
<td>Clamshell</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>1,769,070</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wando River Upper Reach</td>
<td>Clamshell</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>636,251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wando River Turning Basin</td>
<td>Clamshell</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>3,284,633</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drum Island Reach</td>
<td>Clamshell</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>917,473</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myers Bend</td>
<td>Clamshell</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>ODMDS</td>
<td>853,689</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total Construction</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>31,204,198</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
to the harbor entrance between Fort Moultrie and Fort Sumter. The lower harbor includes the Anchorage Basin, Rebellion Reach, Bennis Reach, Horse Reach, Hog Island Reach, Drum Island Reach, Myers Bend, Wando River Lower Reach and Wando River Upper Reach. Proposed channel wideners included in the lower harbor consist of the Bennis Reach Widener, Hog Island Widener, Drum Island Widener, Wando River Lower Reach Widener, and Wando River Turning Basin Widener (ANAMAR, 2013).

The Dredged Material Management Plan, Preliminary Assessment (USACE, 2009) stated that O&M material dredged from the Charleston Harbor Entrance Channel and Lower Harbor is expected to be placed in Charleston ODMDS. Material from Fort Sumter Reach / Entrance Channel and the Charleston Lower Harbor will be placed at the ODMDS every 24 months and 15 months, respectively. The Entrance Channel is assumed to be dredged by hopper dredge during the dredging window of December through March. Clamshell dredging is assumed for the Charleston Lower Harbor.

The main objective of the MPFATE modeling is to calculate the ODMDS bed configuration after placement of the Charleston deepening sediment and the annual O&M dredged material. MPFATE develops the appropriate inputs for the Short Term FATE (STFATE) for each hopper or scow load (Smith, 2013). LTFATE simulates the evolution of dredged material mounds at disposal sites by simulating the erosion of the placed dredged material and consolidation of the uneroded sediment. It also simulates the fate of mixed (sand and cohesive sediment) dredged material that is eroded and transported outside the ODMDS. LTFATE includes robust 3-D hydrodynamics and sediment transport, and the approach chosen in MPFATE development was to link MPFATE and LTFATE (Hayter et al., 2012).
a. Measured Current and Sediment Data

Measured current data were used as input to the MPFATE model. Sediment samples collected and analyzed by ANAMAR (2013) were used as input for the MPFATE model.

1) ODMDS Current Data

Current and wave data were collected in the vicinity of the ODMDS (Figure 2) for about one year. A current rose for depth averaged currents for ODMDS-N and ODMDS-S are shown in Figures 34 and 35, respectively. These figures indicate direction currents are flowing and are based on hourly averages. Currents in the ODMDS are predominately in the east and west direction. Surface currents are stronger than near bottom currents. Currents at both the north and south ODMDS stations were similar. The median surface current was 24 cm/sec (0.8 ft/sec) whereas the median bottom current was 13 cm/sec (0.4 ft/sec). The depth average median current velocity was about 18 cm/sec (0.6 ft/sec). For depth averaged currents most current measurements were in the 15 to 20 cm/sec (0.5 to 0.7 ft/sec) range with 90 percent of the measurements below 30 cm/sec (1.0 ft/sec). The most dominate direction for both stations was east and west. The net direction of transport during the study period was to the northwest (EPA, 2014).
Figure 34- Charleston ODMDS-N depth averaged current rose (EPA, 2014).

Figure 35- Charleston ODMDS-S depth averaged current rose (EPA, 2014).
2) **Dredged Material Sediment Data**

ANAMAR (2013) detailed the field sampling, analysis, and results of Marine Protection, Research and Sanctuaries Act (MPRSA) Section 103 sediment testing and analysis in support of the Charleston Harbor Navigation Improvement project. Areas proposed to be dredged were divided into 21 project-specific dredging units (DUs). Each DU was expected to have consistent characteristics relative to the project area as a whole. Three to six sub-sampling stations were selected from within each DU and were based on the results of a bathymetric survey conducted during February 2012. All of the subsamples within each DU were collected by a vibracore. Stations were positioned to best represent dredged material that may be disposed at the Charleston ODMDS. Tables 5 and 6 show the DUs subsamples and IDs for the Entrance Channel and the Lower Harbor respectively.

**Table 5- Dredging Units, Navigational Channel Areas, and Sample IDs:**

**ENTRANCE CHANNEL (ANAMAR, 2013)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Project-Specific Dredging Unit</th>
<th>Channel Area Represented by Dredging Unit</th>
<th>Subsample IDs</th>
<th>Composite Sample ID</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Charleston Entrance Channel (area 1)</td>
<td>CHEC12-1A through E</td>
<td>CHEC12-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Charleston Entrance Channel (area 2)</td>
<td>CHEC12-2A through E</td>
<td>CHEC12-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Mount Pleasant Range</td>
<td>MTPL12-A through E</td>
<td>MTPL12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 6- Dredging Units, Navigational Channel Areas, and Sample IDs:**

**LOWER HARBOR (ANAMAR, 2013)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Project-Specific Dredging Unit</th>
<th>Channel Area(s) Represented by Dredging Unit</th>
<th>Subsample IDs</th>
<th>Composite Sample ID</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Rebellion, Bennis, and Horse reaches</td>
<td>REHR12-A through E</td>
<td>REHR12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Hog Island Reach</td>
<td>HGIS12-A through E</td>
<td>HGIS12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Drum Island Reach, Drum Island Widener, and Meyers Bend</td>
<td>DRMY12-A through E</td>
<td>DRMY12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Wando River Lower Reach</td>
<td>WLR12-A through E</td>
<td>WLR12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Wando River Upper Reach and Wando River Turning Basin</td>
<td>WUTB12-A through E</td>
<td>WUTB12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Bennis Reach Widener</td>
<td>BENW12-A through F</td>
<td>BENW12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Hog Island Widener</td>
<td>HIW12-A through E</td>
<td>HIW12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Wando River Turning Basin Widener</td>
<td>WRTB12-A through E</td>
<td>WRTB12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Wando River Lower Reach Widener</td>
<td>WLRW12-A through E</td>
<td>WLRW12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. **STFATE and MPFATE Modeling**

MPFATE represents the accumulated sedimentation resulting from multiple placements from hoppers and scows. Dredged material placement is represented by convective descent, dynamic collapse, and suspended sediment transport processes.
MPFATE develops the appropriate inputs for the STFATE for each hopper or scow load. STFATE simulates the water column concentration of dredged material and simulates discrete discharges of dredge material from barges and hopper dredges in open waters. The latest version of MPFATE includes the upgraded STFATE V6.1 (Smith, 2013).

MPFATE simulates the initial conditions at the ODMDS following placement of new work and maintenance material. The new ODMDS must be large enough to allow distribution of dredged material over a large enough area so that excessive vertical accumulation of placed dredged material is averted (USACE and EPA, 2012). One approach towards maximizing temporary storage within the site is to avoid mounding in any particular location. To achieve this goal, the simulations are configured with a placement pattern that distributes the dredged material over the site uniformly (Hayter et al., 2012). Also, a clearance elevation of -25 ft MLLW (USACE, 2009) is adopted in this study.

1) Model Grid

When creating the model grid, the initial placement site bathymetry was saved as a STWAVE-style DEP file. The file was created by SMS version 9.0 and earlier because STWAVE DEP file format changed in version 10.0. Bathymetry for the MPFATE model was extracted from the CMS-Flow grid using SMS 11.0 and a MATLAB routine was developed to read the extracted bathymetry and write it in a format compatible with the MPFATE model script. MPFATE model grid size was selected as 151X201 cells with 200-ft spacing. Grid spacing on the order of 200 ft was suggested by ERDC because there is a diffusion effect in the modeling results when large grid cells are used (Jarrell Smith, ERDC, Personal communication). A U-shaped berm on the southern side of the ODMDS is supposed to be constructed of harder materials and was conceptualized to serve as a sediment containment barrier, with finer materials to be placed within the barrier. Figure 36 shows the model grid (red points) and the modified ODMDS with the proposed berm (blue U-shape). Grid data are in state plane coordinates with units of feet.

2) STFATE Input

STFATE simulates a single disposal event and a DUE file is specified which includes parameters that describes the grid, program control, ambient conditions and dredge material definitions. STFATE default simulation parameters were obtained from ANAMAR (2013) input files for each DU given in Tables 5 and 6 for the Entrance Channel and the Lower Harbor respectively.

2.1) Dredged Material Characteristics Input parameters include material type, volumetric fraction of each material type, and depositional void ratio for each material type. Volumetric fractions for the modeling were calculated from a spreadsheet developed by Paul Schroeder at ERDC and EPA Region 4 using laboratory grain size, specific gravity, Atterberg limits and total solids. The calculations also take into account the type of dredge that will be used (ANAMAR, 2013).

2.2) Operational Data Input Representative model inputs were selected from historical and available data for dredging operations. The actual dredging operation used may vary slightly. The Entrance Channel is assumed to be dredged by hopper dredge and clamshell dredging is assumed for the Charleston Lower Harbor.
Hopper and scow dimensions and characteristics were estimated using historic dredging records. Hayter *et al.* (2012) stated that the sediment characteristics in the placement vessel (hopper dredge or dump scow) differ from those of the sediment bed due to water entrainment, fracturing of cohesive bed material, and loss of fines during overflow. The dredged material characteristics for placement were estimated to account for these effects by adopting bulk density values. Water densities of 1.021 g/cm$^3$ and 1.022 g/cm$^3$ were adopted at 0 and 36 ft depths, respectively, and uniform water density of 1.016 g/cm$^3$ was adopted at the dredging site (ANAMAR, 2013).

### 2.3) Current Data

Hourly depth averaged time series of current velocity components in the x and z model coordinates are obtained from the ODMDS-S ADCP during the MPFATE model simulations periods. A time-series text file is included in the STFATE DUE file. This input file allows MPFATE to change current velocities hourly throughout each model run. The input file takes the form of a space-delimited plain text file of time (in hours), current velocity in the east-
west direction (in ft/s), and current velocity in the north-south direction (in ft/s) for the duration of the model run.

3) **MPFATE Input**

MPFATE module requires several input parameters to describe the dredging locations, total dredging volume, and duration of dredging simulation. Initial placement site bathymetry and hourly time series of current files that were used as STFATE input are also MPFATE input. MPFATE simulations generally proceed with the user defining dredged material characteristics, environmental conditions (waves, currents, water level and dredged material placement operations (including vessel speed and location of placement for each load) (Hayter *et al*., 2012).

Available information about total volumes of dredged material, duration of transport from the dredging site to the ODMDS, and vessel data were obtained from SAC and the USACE Dredging Management Quality (DQM) site.

3.1) **Placement Scenario** The Entrance Channel is assumed to be dredged by hopper dredge during the dredging window of December through March. For new material, hopper dredging was assumed to continue for longer periods for some cases. Clamshell dredging is assumed for the Charleston Lower Harbor. The new dredge material from the deepening project is expected to be completed in 5 years as shown in Table 2. Maintenance dredged material from the Charleston Entrance Channel and the Lower Harbor will be placed at the ODMDS every 24 months and 15 months respectively during the 25 simulation period. The Entrance Channel is assumed to be dredged by hopper dredge with load capacity of 4500 CY. Mount Pleasant Reach is assumed to be dredged by hopper dredge with load capacity of 2500 CY. The lower Harbor will be dredged mainly by clamshell with load capacity of 3000 CY. The Rebellion Reach of the lower Harbor will be dredged with hopper of load capacity of 2500 CY.

3.2) **Representative Sediment Input Data** Sample CHEC12-1 was comprised primarily of sand (>43% sand) and was classified as clay of high plasticity, elastic silt (CH). Samples CHEC12-2 and MTPL12 were comprised primarily of sand (>64% sand) and were classified as clayey sand (SC). Most of the samples from the lower harbor and associated wideners were comprised primarily of sand (>55% sand) and were classified as clayey sand (SC) (ANAMAR, 2013). Sample CHEC12-2 was considered as representative of Mount Pleasant Reach (MTPL12). The lower Harbor was represented by sample WRTB12 which corresponds to the DU with the largest volume of dredged material.

Four dredged material representative sediment samples were used as input to MPFATE as shown in Table 6 to optimize the MPFATE-LTFATE simulations. Samples CHEC12-1 and CHEC12-2 are representative of dredged material from the Charleston Entrance Channel area 1 and 2 respectively. Hopper dredge will be used to dredge the Entrance Channel area 1 and 2 with 4500 CY vessel load capacity. CHEC12-2 was considered representative of Mount Pleasant Reach and hopper dredge will be used with 2500 CY vessel load capacity. The lower Harbor is represented by sample WRTB12 and will be dredged with clamshell with load capacity of 3000 CY. Bulk density values were estimated for each sample as shown in Table 6. Volumetric fractions for the modeling and bulk density calculations were determined by Paul Schroeder at ERDC (ANAMAR, 2013).
Table 6- Representative MPFATE Dredging Sediment Samples

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sample ID</th>
<th>Dredge Type</th>
<th>Load (cy)</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Bulk Density (g/cm³)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHEC12-1</td>
<td>Hopper</td>
<td>4500</td>
<td>Entrance Channel</td>
<td>1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEC12-2</td>
<td>Hopper</td>
<td>4500</td>
<td>Entrance Channel</td>
<td>1.37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEC12-2</td>
<td>Hopper</td>
<td>2500</td>
<td>Entrance Channel</td>
<td>1.37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WRTB12</td>
<td>Clamshell</td>
<td>3000</td>
<td>Lower Harbor</td>
<td>2.06</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.3) Placement Location

New and O&M dredged material can be disposed randomly within the ODMDS. The objective of the placement plan is to develop a relatively flat-topped mound to maximize the ODMDS capacity and reduce the transport of material from the ODMDS.

Hayter et al. (2012) stated that one approach towards maximizing temporary storage within the site is to avoid mounding in any particular location. To achieve this goal, the simulations were configured with a placement pattern that distributed the dredged material over the site uniformly. Figure 37 shows the potential MPFATE placement sites q1 and q2. A buffer width of about 2000 ft was assigned around the placement areas. The buffer was about 3000 ft on the northern side of the placement areas where no berm was constructed. The placement locations within each site were varied to optimize the disposal operation efforts and avoid disposal in shallow areas. Within each placement site, transects were created with 200-350 ft spacing.

The placement location input data file provides a listing of placement operations to be simulated by MPFATE. This input file is generated by an automated routine, intended to provide a placement pattern similar to typical operations at the site or to provide an optimum result. Several MATLAB codes have been written to achieve specific placement patterns (developed by ERDC). The file states the time of placement in units of hours and expressed relative to the times of the current input data. The position of placement is given in the Cartesian coordinate system (state plane) with units of ft. The vessel velocity description gives vessel speed (ft/s) and vessel heading (relative to north) at time of placement (MPFATE UserGuide, ERDC Personal communication). The placement in MPFATE allows for some randomization in placement location, vessel speed, and vessel direction. Placement location was randomly varied within a radius of 50 ft from the target location, vessel speed and direction at time of release was varied between 1-3 knots and ±10 degrees.
Figure 37- MPFATE placement sites q1 and q2.
3.4) **MPFATE Simulations** Table 7 shows the proposed placement strategy and schedule of forty one MPFATE simulations at the Charleston ODMDS for the new and O&M dredged material during 25 years.
### Table 7- Placement Schedule for MPFATE Simulations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Run No</th>
<th>New or D&amp;M</th>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Duration (start/end)</th>
<th>Sediment Type</th>
<th>Dredge Type (H,C)*</th>
<th>Load (cy)</th>
<th>Placement Interval (h)</th>
<th>No of Loads</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>New</td>
<td>Y1</td>
<td>Jan-April</td>
<td>EC1</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>4500</td>
<td>5.9</td>
<td>514</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>New</td>
<td>Y2</td>
<td>Jan-April</td>
<td>EC1</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>4500</td>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>873</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>New</td>
<td>Y3</td>
<td>Jan-April</td>
<td>EC2</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>4500</td>
<td>6.2</td>
<td>432</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>New</td>
<td>Y4</td>
<td>Jan-April</td>
<td>EC2</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>4500</td>
<td>4.6</td>
<td>648</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>New</td>
<td>Y5</td>
<td>March</td>
<td>EC2 (mount)</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>2500</td>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>336</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>New</td>
<td>Y6</td>
<td>April</td>
<td>lower</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>3000</td>
<td>1.55</td>
<td>360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>New</td>
<td>Y3</td>
<td>July-Dec</td>
<td>lower</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>3000</td>
<td>1.9</td>
<td>2056</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>New</td>
<td>Y5</td>
<td>May-October</td>
<td>lower</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>3000</td>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>1837</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>D&amp;M</td>
<td>Y1</td>
<td>Jan-Feb</td>
<td>EC2</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>4500</td>
<td>4.15</td>
<td>231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>D&amp;M</td>
<td>Y1, Y2</td>
<td>Dec-March</td>
<td>lower</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>3000</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>D&amp;M</td>
<td>Y3</td>
<td>Jan-Feb</td>
<td>EC2</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>4500</td>
<td>4.15</td>
<td>231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>D&amp;M</td>
<td>Y3</td>
<td>March-June</td>
<td>lower</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>3000</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>D&amp;M</td>
<td>Y4</td>
<td>June</td>
<td>lower</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>3000</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>D&amp;M</td>
<td>Y5</td>
<td>Jan-Feb</td>
<td>EC2</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>4500</td>
<td>4.15</td>
<td>231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>D&amp;M</td>
<td>Y5</td>
<td>Sep-Dec</td>
<td>lower</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>3000</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>D&amp;M</td>
<td>Y6, Y7</td>
<td>Dec-March</td>
<td>lower</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>3000</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>D&amp;M</td>
<td>Y7</td>
<td>Jan-Feb</td>
<td>EC2</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>4500</td>
<td>4.15</td>
<td>231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>D&amp;M</td>
<td>Y8</td>
<td>March-June</td>
<td>lower</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>3000</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>D&amp;M</td>
<td>Y9</td>
<td>Jan-Feb</td>
<td>EC2</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>4500</td>
<td>4.15</td>
<td>231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>D&amp;M</td>
<td>Y9</td>
<td>June-Sep</td>
<td>lower</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>3000</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>D&amp;M</td>
<td>Y10</td>
<td>Sep-Dec</td>
<td>lower</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>3000</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>D&amp;M</td>
<td>Y11</td>
<td>Jan-Feb</td>
<td>EC2</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>4500</td>
<td>4.15</td>
<td>231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>D&amp;M</td>
<td>Y11, Y12</td>
<td>Dec-March</td>
<td>lower</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>3000</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>D&amp;M</td>
<td>Y13</td>
<td>Jan-Feb</td>
<td>EC2</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>4500</td>
<td>4.15</td>
<td>231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>D&amp;M</td>
<td>Y13</td>
<td>March-June</td>
<td>lower</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>3000</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>D&amp;M</td>
<td>Y14</td>
<td>June-Sep</td>
<td>lower</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>3000</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>D&amp;M</td>
<td>Y15</td>
<td>Jan-Feb</td>
<td>EC2</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>4500</td>
<td>4.15</td>
<td>231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>D&amp;M</td>
<td>Y15</td>
<td>Sep-Dec</td>
<td>lower</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>3000</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>D&amp;M</td>
<td>Y16, Y17</td>
<td>Dec-March</td>
<td>lower</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>3000</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>D&amp;M</td>
<td>Y17</td>
<td>Jan-Feb</td>
<td>EC2</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>4500</td>
<td>4.15</td>
<td>231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>D&amp;M</td>
<td>Y18</td>
<td>March-June</td>
<td>lower</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>3000</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>D&amp;M</td>
<td>Y19</td>
<td>Jan-Feb</td>
<td>EC2</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>4500</td>
<td>4.15</td>
<td>231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>D&amp;M</td>
<td>Y20</td>
<td>June-Sep</td>
<td>lower</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>3000</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>D&amp;M</td>
<td>Y21</td>
<td>Jan-Feb</td>
<td>EC2</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>4500</td>
<td>4.15</td>
<td>231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>D&amp;M</td>
<td>Y21, Y22</td>
<td>Dec-March</td>
<td>lower</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>3000</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>D&amp;M</td>
<td>Y23</td>
<td>Jan-Feb</td>
<td>EC2</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>4500</td>
<td>4.15</td>
<td>231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>D&amp;M</td>
<td>Y23</td>
<td>March-June</td>
<td>lower</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>3000</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>D&amp;M</td>
<td>Y24</td>
<td>June-Sep</td>
<td>lower</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>3000</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>D&amp;M</td>
<td>Y25</td>
<td>Jan-Feb</td>
<td>EC2</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>4500</td>
<td>4.15</td>
<td>231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>D&amp;M</td>
<td>Y25</td>
<td>Sep-Dec</td>
<td>lower</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>3000</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>356</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*H: Hopper, C: Clamshell
6. **LTFATE Modeling**

   a. **LTFATE Model**

   LTFATE simulates the evolution of dredged material mounds at disposal sites by simulating the erosion of the placed dredged material and consolidation of the uneroded sediment. It also simulates the fate of mixed (sand and cohesive sediment) dredged material that is eroded and transported outside the ODMDS. LTFATE is applied to estimate the erosion and subsequent transport and fate of maintenance dredged material and channel deepening sediments placed at the ODMDS. LTFATE is a far-field, Eulerian model that is capable of simulating 3D hydrodynamic and mixed sediment transport. The hydrodynamic module in LTFATE is the well tested ERDC CH3D-MB model (Chapman et al., 1996), and the mixed sediment transport model in LTFATE is SEDZLJ (Hayter et al., 2013). LTFATE was setup and validated using data collected at the ODMDS ADCPs during November 2012. LTFATE input current and wave data were extracted from the Coastal Modeling System (CMS) flow and wave models prepared for the Charleston Coastal area during 2013.

CH3D-MB is the multi-block (MB) version of CH3D (Luong and Chapman, 2009). A description of the CH3D model is given in Addendum B. The conventional CH3D (Chapman et al., 1996) single-block application approach (Chapman et al., 2006) typically requires long computer processing time as well as large memory storage requirements. This is because in structured grids with complicated geometries, the number of active cells (water) is often much smaller than the number of inactive cells (land). Both of these issues are overcome by implementation of single-block grid decomposition and Message Passing Interface (MPI) subroutines, which provide the multi-block grid capability (Snir et al., 1998). The MB grid approach runs each grid in parallel computations, where each grid block is assigned to a separate CPU or processor. Message passing allows the exchange of computational field information, such as the water surface elevation, velocity component and constituent arrays, between adjacent grid blocks. The advantages of the MB grid parallel version of CH3D include 1) the flexibility of site specific horizontal and vertical grid resolution assigned to each grid block, 2) block specific application of the sediment transport, wave radiation stress gradient forcing and computational cell wetting/drying model options and 3) reduced memory and computational time requirements allowing larger computational domains and longer simulation time periods. Previous applications of the LTFATE modeling system have included Mississippi Sound and Mobile Bay, which is a micro-tidal environment (Chapman and Luong, 2009; Gailani et al., 2014), Grand Traverse Bay on the eastern side of the Keweenaw Peninsula in Lake Superior, MI (Hayter et al., 2014), and Upper Cook Inlet, AK, which is a hyper-tidal estuary (Hayter et al., 2013).

b. **LTFATE Methodology**

This section describes the application of LTFATE to the Charleston Harbor ODMDS, including model setup and a description of the application of LTFATE in this project.

1) **Hydrodynamic Model Setup**

The first model domain to which the hydrodynamic model in LTFATE (CH3D-MB) was applied is that shown in Figure 26. Boundary conditions at the three ocean boundaries of this domain
were extracted from the CMS-Flow solution for the calibration and validation periods described by USACE (2013) and in Chapter 4, respectively. CMS-Flow calculated flows were applied at the nearshore boundary of the LTFATE model domain. The model results at the locations of the two ODMDS ADCPs (see Figure 3) were not close to the measured data. It was not possible to achieve satisfactory comparisons between the data and simulated velocity magnitudes or phases. The conclusion was that the ocean boundaries of the LTFATE grid were too close to those of the CMS-Flow domain (see Figure 26), which caused the extracted water surface elevations from the CMS-Flow solution to be too influenced by the boundary conditions used for CMS-Flow along those open water boundaries. At this point, the decision was made to setup a three-dimensional (3D) LTFATE model for the same model domain as used for CMS-Flow. This resulted in a much bigger model domain, but the number of grid cells increased by only approximately 50 percent due to the very high percentage of land in the extended portion of the grid. The model grid constructed for LTFATE is shown in Figure 40. Both the hydrodynamics and salinity transport

![Figure 40 - LTFATE Model Domain](image-url)
were simulated in this model domain using five layers in each grid cell. This allowed the partially stratified conditions in the harbor to be simulated. Just like the CMS-Flow model, the CH3D-MB model was forced at the three ocean boundaries with time series of water level extracted along the ocean cellstring during each storm event. The water levels were extracted from the U.S. East Coast Tidal Database (EC2001) calculated with the Finite Element model ADCIRC (Mukai et al., 2002). The inland boundary conditions include the annual average flows of Constant monthly average flow rate of 11.3, 278, and 62.3 m³/sec for the Ashley, Cooper, and Wando Rivers respectively (same as used in the CMS-Flow model). It was also assumed that the salinities in those inflows were zero. Other physical processes represented by the LTFATE hydrodynamic model included winds, bottom friction and Coriolis acceleration. The wind field measured at the Folly Island NDBC station over the simulation period was applied to the entire model domain. Gradients in atmospheric pressure that occurred during each simulation period were not simulated. As such, only the predicted astronomical tides were simulated by LTFATE.

CH3D-MB was run to simulate the model validation period of 13-17 November, 2012 used for CMS-Flow and compared to the measured data at the ODMDS-S ADCP and to the results from CMS-Flow. These comparisons are shown in Figures 41 and 42. In general, the CH3D-MB gives slightly better comparisons than CMS-FLOW to the measured water level and current speeds at the ODMDS-S ADCP.

![Figure 41- Comparison of measured and modeled water levels at ODMDS-S ADCP.](image-url)
2) Sediment Transport Model Setup

The sediment transport model in LTFATE is a modified version of the SEDZLJ mixed sediment transport model (Jones and Lick, 2001; James et al. 2010) that includes a 3D representation of the sediment bed, and can simulate winnowing and armoring of the surficial layer of the sediment bed. SEDZLJ is dynamically linked to CH3D-MB in that the hydrodynamic and sediment transport modules are both run during each model time step. Details on SEDZLJ are provided in Addendum C.

One of the first steps in performing sediment transport modeling is to use grain size distribution data from sediment samples collected at different locations throughout the model domain to determine how many discrete sediment size classes are needed to adequately represent the full range of sediment sizes. Typically, three to eight size classes are used. Each sediment size class is represented in SEDZLJ using the mean diameter within that size range. SAC provided sediment grain size data for sediment collected in Charleston Harbor and the Entrance Channel. These data were used along with that in the usSEABED database to specify the initial grain size.

Figure 42- Comparison of measured and modeled current speeds at ODMDS-S ADCP.
distributions throughout the model domain (except for inside the ODMDS). The usSEABED database was developed and is supported by the USGS (http://walrus.wr.usgs.gov/usseabed/).

Based on an analysis of all these data it was decided that five noncohesive sediment classes and two cohesive sediment classes (for a total of seven sediment size classes) were needed to adequately represent the measured range of sediment sizes and to represent differences in cohesive sediment transport properties (e.g., settling and erosion) for the native sediment outside the ODMDS as well as the placed material inside the ODMDS. Four size classes (one cohesive and three noncohesive) were used to represent the native sediment, and three size classes (one cohesive and two noncohesive) were used to represent the placed material. The diameters of the three noncohesive sediment size classes used to represent the native sediment were 188 μm (fine sand) and 375 μm (medium sand) and 750 μm (coarse sand), whereas the diameters of the noncohesive sediment size classes used to represent the placed material were 188 μm and 375 μm. This duplication of the size classes for the two noncohesive size classes enabled tracking of eroded placed material to determine where it was deposited. In the LTFATE modeling it was assumed that the clay and fine silt sized particles were flocculated, and that the mean diameter of the flocs (which represent the cohesive sediment size class for both the native sediment and placed dredged material) was 50 μm. In addition, it was assumed that the specific gravity of all seven sediment classes was 2.65. The settling velocities for all sediment size classes were calculated as a function of the specified diameters and specific gravity using the equation given by Cheng (1997) (see Equation C-2).

As stated in the previous chapter, the five dredged material representative sediment samples shown in Table 6 were used as input to MPFATE. These were used to specify the sediment compositions of the five cores used in SEDZLJ to represent the varying composition of the dredged material placed inside the ODMDS. In addition, the varying compositions of the native sediment were represented using four cores. In total, nine cores were used to represent the spatially varying composition of the sediment throughout the model domain, with one of the nine cores specified for each grid cell.

Six bed layers were used for each core (see Figures C-2 and C-3). The first (top) layer is the active layer through which depositing and eroding sediment passes. The second layer is the layer in which new sediment deposits are placed. This layer is subdivided into a user-specified number of sublayers that can be used to represent consolidating fine-grain (i.e., cohesive) dominated sediment. The third through sixth bed layer are used to represent the existing sediment bed in each grid cell at the start of the model simulation. The sediment composition, i.e., grain size distribution, in each bed layer was assumed to be the same at the start of the sediment transport simulation.
7. MPFATE-LTFATE Modeling Methodology

The following methodology was used to simulate the placement of new works and O&M dredge material at the expanded ODMDS over a 25 year period using both MPFATE and LTFATE.

a. CMS models were run for the selected events listed in Table 2. These were used to provide the time series of input conditions for the modeled events along the offshore portion of the LTFATE model. These were needed to calculate the wave- and current-induced bed shear stress in each grid cell during each model time step.

b. MPFATE was used to simulate the placement events described in Table 7. The results from the MPFATE modeling were used as the initial sediment bed inside the ODMDS for LTFATE.

c. LTFATE was then used to simulate the selected events in the November 2012 to November 2013 time period excluding the MPFATE simulation period. The sediment morphology in the model domain at the end of each simulated event was used as the initial sediment bed condition for the next simulated event. At the end of the LTFATE simulations, the simulated morphology represented the cumulative effect of these events.

The berm was added to the bathymetry of the ODMDS in LTFATE at year 3 according to the anticipated berm construction period. MPFATE-LTFATE simulations were conducted for 25 years. Violations of the ODMDS 25 ft MLLW clearance and the location of the 5 cm contour criteria were examined after each MPFATE- LTFATE simulation. Modifications to MPFATE placement patterns were conducted to satisfy the two criteria. The results from these simulations were analyzed to determine: 1) the effectiveness of the site due to placement of new works material and periodic placement of maintenance material, 2) the capacity of the site to accommodate the dredged material after 25 years, and 3) the location of the 5 cm contour with respect to the ODMDS boundary.
8. MPFATE-LTFATE Modeling Results

ODMDS capacity is defined as that quantity of material that can be placed within the legally designated disposal site without extending beyond the site boundaries or interfering with navigation (Poindexter-Rollings, 1990). The proposed ODMDS capacity analysis should consider volumes placed as a result of the proposed deepening project as well as 25 years of subsequent maintenance (EPA letter dated August 2, 2012). A clearance elevation of -25 ft MLLW was adopted in this study (USACE, 2009). EPA letter dated August 2, 2012 stated that the analysis should demonstrate that the disposed dredged material stays within the site boundaries as defined by the 5 cm deposition contour. Subsequent coordination with EPA indicated that the 5 cm deposition contour is more of a guideline than a rule.

Figure 43 shows the variation of the water depth throughout the ODMDS at the end of the placement of new dredged material. There are no violations of the 25 ft depth, i.e., -25 ft MLLW, criterion. Figure 44 shows the change in bottom elevations, Δz, throughout the ODMDS at the end of the placement of new dredged material. All the white areas around and inside the ODMDS show areas with less than 5 cm deposition. This means that the two criteria are satisfied: all the depths inside the ODMDS are more than 25 ft and all the surrounding area outside the ODMDS have less than 5 cm of net deposition.

Figure 45 shows the variation of the water depth throughout the ODMDS at the end of the 25 years of MPFATE-LTFATE simulations described in the previous chapter. There are no violations of the 25 ft depth, i.e., -25 ft MLLW, criterion. Figure 46 shows the change in bottom elevations, Δz, throughout the ODMDS at the end of the 25 years of simulations. All the white areas around and inside the ODMDS show areas with less than 5 cm deposition. This means that the two criteria are satisfied: all the depths inside the ODMDS are more than 25 ft and all the surrounding area outside the ODMDS have less than 5 cm of net deposition.

There are uncertainties in the combined MPFATE-LTFATE predictions of change in bathymetry and the net deposition thickness inside the ODMDS over the simulated 25 years which are primarily due to the relatively coarse grid resolution (200 ft by 200 ft) used to represent the ODMDS, and the parameterizations of the rates of erodibility and consolidation of the cohesive sediment fraction of the placed dredged material. The uncertainties associated with the latter factor are compounded due to the long-term (25 year) predictions of dredged material placement and subsequent transport.
Figure 43- Depth inside the ODMDS after the placement of new dredged material.
Figure 44- Change in bed elevation inside the ODMDS after placement of new dredged material.
Figure 45: Depth inside the ODMDS after the 25-years of MPFATE-LTFATE simulations.
9. Conclusions

Deepening of the Charleston Harbor would generate sufficient dredged material to affect the existing capacity of the Charleston ODMDS and restrict its ability to accept material from O&M dredging. Consequently, the SAC has determined that modification of the existing ODMDS will be needed to accommodate dredged material from the deepening project and maintain SAC’s existing dredged material management options for O&M dredging. A U-shaped berm on the southern side of the ODMDS is proposed to be constructed of harder materials and was designed to serve as a sediment containment barrier, with finer materials to be placed within the barrier. The current berm has historically proven effective at sediment containment. The MPFATE and LTFATE models were used to estimate Charleston ODMDS capacity to accommodate new and
O&M dredged material for 25 years. Hydrodynamic and wave boundary conditions for LTFATE were developed using CMS wave and flow models. Due to computing requirements of the LTFATE model, the CMS models were conducted for representative storm conditions which occurred during the ADCP data collection period from November 2012 to November 2013. Measured ADCP data collected at the Charleston ODMDS was used as MPFATE model input. Available data from core borings analysis were used to describe sediment characteristics to be incorporated into the MPFATE and LTFATE models. MPFATE simulations generally proceed with the user defining dredged material characteristics. Proposed placement strategy and schedule of forty one MPFATE simulations, during 25 years, were extracted from historical and available data for dredging operations. MPFATE simulations were configured with a placement pattern that distributed the dredged material over four placement sites. A buffer width of about 2000 ft was assigned around the placement areas. The buffer was about 3000 ft on the northern side of the placement areas where no berm was constructed. The placement locations within each site were varied to optimize the disposal operation efforts and avoid disposal in shallow areas. Within each placement site, transects were created with 200-300 ft spacing. CH3D-MB hydrodynamic model was applied in LTFATE. Boundary conditions at the ocean boundaries of were extracted from the CMS-Flow solution. The results of the MPFATE simulations were externally coupled with LTFATE. Violations of the ODMDS 25 ft MLLW clearance and the location of the 5 cm contour criteria were examined after each MPFATE- LTFATE simulation. Modifications to MPFATE placement patterns were conducted to satisfy the two criteria.

Results of the MPFATE-LTFATE simulations showed that there are no violations of the 25 ft depth, i.e., -25 ft MLLW at the end of the 25 years of simulations. Also, the change in bottom elevations, Δz, outside the ODMDS was less than 5 cm.

The proposed ODMDS is capable of receiving the new and O&M dredged material for a period of 25 years without violating the 25 ft MLLW clearance depth and the net deposition thickness, outside the ODMDS, of 5 cm or greater.
10. References


U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE), 2009. Dredged Material Management Plan, Preliminary Assessment, Charleston Harbor, Charleston, South Carolina.


U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE), 2013. “Numerical Modeling Study, Charleston Harbor Coastal Area, SC”.


Addendum A

Description of CMS

The Coastal Modeling System (CMS) was used for the numerical modeling estimates of waves, currents, and sediment transport at the Canaveral Harbor ODMDS. A brief description of the CMS is provided here for completeness.

As shown in Figure A-1, the CMS is an integrated suite of numerical models for waves, flows, and sediment transport and morphology change in coastal areas. This modeling system includes representation of relevant nearshore processes for practical applications of navigation channel performance, and sediment management at coastal inlets and adjacent beaches. The development and enhancement of CMS capabilities continues to evolve as a research and engineering tool for desk-top computers. CMS uses the Surface-water Modeling System (SMS; Zundel, 2006) interface for grid generation and model setup, as well as plotting and post-processing. The Verification and Validation (V&V) Report 1 (Demirbilek and Rosati, 2011) and Report 2 (Lin et al., 2011) have detailed information about the CMS-Wave features, and evaluation of model’s performance skills in a variety of applications. Report 3 and Report 4 in the V&V series describe coupling of wave-flow models and hydrodynamic and sediment transport and morphology change aspects of CMS-Flow. The performance of CMS for a number of applications is summarized in Report 1 and details are described in the three companion V&V Reports 2, 3, and 4.

The CMS-Wave, a spectral wave model, is used in this study given the large extent of modeling domain over which wave estimates were required. Wind wave generation and growth, diffraction, reflection, dissipation due to bottom friction, white-capping and breaking, wave-current interaction, wave run-up, wave setup, and wave transmission through structures are the main wave processes included in the CMS-Wave.

CMS-Wave model solves the steady-state wave-action balance equation on a non-uniform Cartesian grid to simulate steady-state spectral transformation of directional random waves. CMS-Wave is designed to simulate wave processes with ambient currents at coastal inlets and in
navigation channels. The model can be used either in half-plane or full-plane mode for spectral wave transformation (Lin et al., 2008; Demirbilek et al., 2007). The half-plane mode is default because in this mode CMS-Wave can run more efficiently as waves are transformed primarily from the seaward boundary toward shore. See Lin et al., (2011 and 2008) for features of the model and step-by-step instructions with examples for application of CMS-Wave to a variety of coastal inlets, ports, structures, and other navigation problems. Publications listed in the V&V reports and this report provide additional information about the CMS-Wave and its engineering applications. Additional information about CMS-Wave is available from the CIRP website:


The CMS-Flow, a two-dimensional shallow-water wave model, was used for hydrodynamic modeling (calculation of water level and current) in this study. The implicit solver of the flow model was used in this study. This circulation model provides estimates of water level and current given the tides, winds, and river flows as boundary conditions. CMS-Flow calculates hydrodynamic (depth-averaged circulation), sediment transport and morphology change, and salinity due to tides, winds and waves.

The hydrodynamic model solves the conservative form of the shallow water equations that includes terms for the Coriolis force, wind stress, wave stress, bottom stress,
vegetation flow drag, bottom friction, wave roller, and turbulent diffusion. Governing equations are solved using the finite volume method on a non-uniform Cartesian grid. Finite-volume methods are a class of discretization schemes, and this formulation is implemented in finite-difference for solving the governing equations of coastal wave, flow and sediment transport models. V&V Reports 3 & 4 by describe the preparation of flow model for coastal applications. Additional information about CMS-Flow is available from the CIRP website:


CMS-Flow modeling task included specification of winds and water levels to the model. The effects of waves on the circulation were input to the CMS-Flow and have been included in the simulations performed for this study.

There are three sediment transport models available in CMS-Flow: a sediment mass balance model, an equilibrium advection-diffusion model, and a non-equilibrium advection-diffusion model. Depth-averaged salinity transport is simulated with the standard advection-diffusion model and includes evaporation and precipitation. The V&V Report 1, Report 3 and Report 4 describe the integrated wave-flow-sediment transport and morphology change aspects of CMS-Flow. The performance of CMS-Flow is described for a number of applications in the V&V reports.
Addendum B

Description of LTFATE Hydrodynamic Module

As described in detail by Chapman et al. (1996), the numerical hydrodynamic model CH3D (Curvilinear Hydrodynamics in Three Dimensions) exists in a Z-grid and Sigma stretched version. The Z-grid version is documented in Johnson et al. (1991b). The Sigma version was used in this modeling study. The basic model (CH3D) was developed by Sheng (1986), but has been extensively modified by Chapman et al. (1996). These modifications have consisted of implementing different basic numerical formulations of the governing equations as well as substantial recoding of the model to provide more efficient computing. In particular two recent modifications presented in this report include the incorporation of a compact form of momentum diffusion and a two-equation vertical (k-ε) turbulence model. As its name implies, CH3D makes hydrodynamic computations on a curvilinear or boundary-fitted planform grid. Physical processes impacting circulation and vertical mixing that are modeled include tides, wind, density effects (salinity and temperature), freshwater inflows, turbulence, bottom friction, atmospheric pressure, and the effect of the earth’s rotation. The atmospheric pressure forcing was added to CH3D during this modeling study.

The boundary-fitted coordinate feature of the model provides grid resolution enhancement necessary to adequately represent deep navigation channels and irregular shoreline configurations of the flow system. The curvilinear grid also permits adoption of accurate and economical grid schematization software. The solution algorithm employs an external mode, consisting of vertically averaged equations, which provides a solution for the free surface displacement for input to the internal mode, which contains the full 3D equations (Chapman et al., 1996).

Governing Equations

The governing equations are based on the following assumptions: a) the hydrostatic pressure distribution adequately describes the vertical distribution of fluid pressure; b) the Boussinesq approximation is appropriate; and c) the eddy viscosity approach adequately describes turbulent mixing in the flow (Chapman et al., 1996).

The basic equations for an incompressible fluid in a right-handed Cartesian coordinate system (x,y,z) are:
\[
\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial z} = 0
\]  \hspace{1cm} (B-1)

\[
\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial u^2}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial uv}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial uw}{\partial z} = f_v - \frac{1}{\rho} \frac{\partial P_a}{\partial x} - g \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \left( A_h \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \right)
\]  \hspace{1cm} (B-2)

\[
\frac{\partial v}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial uv}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial v^2}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial vw}{\partial z} = -fu - \frac{1}{\rho} \frac{\partial P_a}{\partial y} - g \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \left( A_h \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} \right)
\]  \hspace{1cm} (B-3)

\[
\frac{\partial p}{\partial z} = - \rho g
\]  \hspace{1cm} (B-4)

\[
\frac{\partial T}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial u T}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial v T}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial w T}{\partial z} = \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( K_h \frac{\partial T}{\partial x} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \left( K_h \frac{\partial T}{\partial y} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \left( K_v \frac{\partial T}{\partial z} \right)
\]  \hspace{1cm} (B-5)

\[
\frac{\partial S}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial u S}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial v S}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial w S}{\partial z} = \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( K_h \frac{\partial S}{\partial x} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \left( K_h \frac{\partial S}{\partial y} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \left( K_v \frac{\partial S}{\partial z} \right)
\]  \hspace{1cm} (B-6)

\[
\rho = \rho (T, S, C)
\]  \hspace{1cm} (B-7)

Where:

\((u,v,w)\) = velocities in \((x,y,z)\) directions

\(t\) = time

\(f\) = Coriolis parameter defined as \(2\Omega \sin \varphi\)

\(\Omega\) = rotational speed of the earth

\(\varphi\) = latitude

\(\rho\) = water density

\(p\) = dynamic pressure = \(P_a + \rho gd\)

\(d\) = water depth

\(A_h, K_h\) = horizontal turbulent eddy viscosity

\(A_v\) = vertical turbulent eddy viscosity

\(g\) = gravitational acceleration
\( T = \) temperature
\( S = \) salinity
\( C = \) suspended sediment concentration (\( g/cm^3 \)).

Equation B-4 implies that vertical accelerations are negligible and thus the pressure is hydrostatic. Various forms of the equation of state can be specified for Equation B-7. In the present model, the formulation given below is used:

\[
\rho = \frac{P}{(\alpha + 0.698 P) + C(\rho_s - \rho_w) / \rho_s}
\]

where

\( \rho = \) density in grams per cubic centimeter (\( g/cm^3 \))
\( \rho_w = \) density of water as a function of \( S \) and \( T \)
\( \rho_s = \) density of sediment particle
\( P = 5890 + 38T - 0.375T^2 + 3S \)
\( \alpha = 1779.5 + 11.25T - 0.0745T^2 - 3.8T + 0.01T \)

and \( T \) is temperature in degrees Celsius, \( S \) is salinity in parts per thousand (ppt) or practical salinity units (psu).
Addendum C

Description of LTFATE Sediment Transport Module

The sediment transport model in LTFATE is a modified version of the SEDZLJ mixed sediment transport model (Jones and Lick 2001; James et al. 2010) that includes a 3D representation of the sediment bed, and can simulate winnowing and armoring of the surficial layer of the sediment bed. SEDZLJ is dynamically linked to LTFATE in that the hydrodynamic and sediment transport modules are both run during each model time step.

Suspended Load Transport of Sediment

The LTFATE hydrodynamic module simulates the transport of each of the sediment classes to determine the suspension concentration for each size class in every water column layer in each grid cell. The transport of suspended sediment is determined through the solution of the following 3D advective-dispersive transport equation for each of the sediment size classes that is used in the model:

\[
\frac{\partial C_i}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial u C_i}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial v C_i}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial (w - W_{si}) C_i}{\partial z} = \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( K_H \frac{\partial C_i}{\partial x} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \left( K_H \frac{\partial C_i}{\partial y} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \left( K_H \frac{\partial C_i}{\partial z} \right) + S_i
\]  

(C-1)

where \( C_i \) = concentration of ith size class of suspended sediment, \( (u,v,w) \) = velocities in the \( (x,y,z) \) directions, \( t \) = time, \( W_{si} \) = settling velocity of ith sediment size class, \( K_H \) = horizontal turbulent eddy diffusivity coefficient, \( K_V \) = vertical turbulent eddy diffusivity coefficient, and \( S_i \) = source/sink term for the ith sediment size class that accounts for erosion/deposition.

The settling velocities for noncohesive sediments are calculated in SEDZLJ using the following equation (Cheng, 1997):

\[
W_s = \frac{\mu}{d} \left( \sqrt{25 + 1.2d^2} - 5 \right) \frac{3}{2}
\]  

(C-2)

where \( \mu \) = dynamic viscosity of water; \( d \) = sediment diameter; and \( d^* \) = non-dimensional particle diameter given by:
\[ d_s = d \left[ \frac{(\rho_s - \rho_w)}{g} \left( \frac{1}{\nu^2} \right) \right]^{1/3} \]  

(C-3)

where \( \rho_w \) = water density, \( \rho_s \) = sediment particle density, \( g \) = acceleration due to gravity, and \( \nu \) = kinematic fluid viscosity. Cheng’s formula is based on measured settling speeds of real sediments. As a result it produces slower settling speeds than those given by Stokes’ Law because real sediments have irregular shapes and thus a greater hydrodynamic resistance than perfect spheres as assumed in Stokes’ law.

For the cohesive sediment size classes, the settling velocities are set equal to the mean settling velocities of flocs and eroded bed aggregates determined from an empirical formulation that is a function of the concentration of suspended sediment.

The erosion and deposition of each of the sediment size classes, i.e., the source/sink term in the 3D transport equation (Equation C-1), and the subsequent change in the composition and thickness of the sediment bed in each grid cell are calculated by SEDZLJ at each time step.

**Description of SEDZLJ**

The sediment bed model in LTFATE is the SEDZLJ sediment transport model (Jones and Lick, 2001). SEDZLJ is dynamically linked to EFDC in LTFATE. SEDZLJ is an advanced sediment bed model that represents the dynamic processes of erosion, bedload transport, bed sorting, armoring, consolidation of fine-grain sediment dominated sediment beds, settling of flocculated cohesive sediment, settling of individual noncohesive sediment particles, and deposition. An active layer formulation is used to describe sediment bed interactions during simultaneous erosion and deposition. The active layer facilitates coarsening during the bed armoring process.

Figure C-1 shows the simulated sediment transport processes in SEDZLJ. In this figure, \( U \) = near bed flow velocity, \( \delta_{bl} \) = thickness of layer in which bedload occurs, \( U_{bl} \) = average bedload transport velocity, \( D_{bl} \) = sediment deposition rate for the sediment being transported as bedload \( E_{bl} \) = sediment erosion rate for the sediment being transported as bedload, \( E_{sus} \) = sediment erosion rate for the sediment that is eroded and entrained into suspension, and \( D_{sus} \) = sediment deposition rate for suspended sediment. Specific capabilities of SEDZLJ are listed below.

Whereas a hydrodynamic model is calibrated to account for the total bed shear stress, which is the sum of the form drag due to bed forms and other large-scale physical features and the skin friction (also called the surface friction), the correct component of the bed shear stress to use in predicting sediment resuspension and deposition is the skin friction. The skin friction is calculated in SEDZLJ as a function
of the near-bed current velocity and the effective bed roughness. The latter is specified in SEDZLJ as a linear function of the mean particle diameter in the active layer.

- Multiple size classes of both fine-grain (i.e., cohesive) and noncohesive sediments can be represented in the sediment bed. As stated previously, this capability is necessary to simulate coarsening and subsequent armoring of the surficial sediment bed surface during high flow events.

![Figure C-1. Sediment transport processes simulated in SEDZLJ.](image)

- To correctly represent the processes of erosion and deposition, the sediment bed in SEDZLJ can be divided into multiple layers, some of which are used to represent the existing sediment bed and others that are used to represent new bed layers that form due to deposition during model simulations. Figure C-2 shows a schematic diagram of this multiple bed layer structure. The graph on the right hand side of this figure shows the variation in the measured gross erosion rate (in units of \( \text{cm/s} \)) with depth into the sediment bed as a function of the applied skin friction. A SEDFLUME study is normally used to measure these erosion rates.

- Erosion from both cohesive and non-cohesive beds is affected by bed armoring, which is a process that limits the amount of bed erosion that occurs during a high-flow event. Bed armoring occurs in a bed that contains a range of particle sizes (e.g., clay, silt,
During a high-flow event when erosion is occurring, finer particles (i.e., clay and silt, and fine sand) tend to be eroded at a faster rate than coarser particles (i.e., medium to coarse sand). The differences in erosion rates of the various sediment particle sizes creates a thin layer at the surface of the sediment bed, referred to as the active layer, that is depleted of finer particles and enriched with coarser particles. This depletion-enrichment process can lead to bed armoring, where the active layer is primarily composed of coarse particles that have limited mobility. The multiple bed model in SEDZLJ accounts for the exchange of sediment through and the change in composition of this active layer. The thickness of the active layer is normally calculated as a time varying function of the mean sediment particle diameter in the active layer, the critical shear stress for resuspension corresponding to the mean particle diameter, and the bed shear stress. Figure C-3 shows a schematic of the active layer at the top of the multi-bed layer model used in SEDZLJ.

- SEDZLJ was designed to use the results obtained with SEDFLUME, which is a straight, closed conduit rectangular cross-section flume in which detailed measurements of critical shear stress of erosion and erosion rate as a function of sediment depth are made using sediment cores dominated by cohesive sediment.
collected at the site to be modeled (McNeil et al., 1996). However, when SEDFLUME results are not available, it is possible to use a combination of values for these parameters available from literature and/or the results of SEDFLUME tests performed at other similar sites. In this case, a detailed sensitivity analysis should be performed to assist in quantifying the uncertainty that results from the use of these non-site specific erosion parameters.

SEDZLJ can simulate overburden-induced consolidation of cohesive sediments. An algorithm that simulates the process of primary consolidation, which is caused by the expulsion of pore water from the sediment, of a fine-grained, i.e., cohesive, dominated sediment bed is included in SEDZLJ. The consolidation algorithm in SEDZLJ accounts for the following changes in two important bed parameters: 1) increase in bed bulk density with time due to the expulsion of pore water, and 2) increase in the bed shear strength (also referred to as the critical shear stress for resuspension) with time. The latter parameter is the minimum value of the bed shear stress at which measurable resuspension of cohesive sediment occurs. As such, the process of consolidation typically results in reduced erosion for a given excess bed shear stress (defined as the difference between the bed shear stress and the critical shear stress for erosion) due to the increase in the bed shear strength. In addition, the increase in bulk density needs to be represented to accurately account for the mass of sediment (per

Figure C-3. Schematic of Active Layer used in SEDZLJ.
unit bed area) that resuspends when the bed surface is subjected to a flow-induced excess bed shear stress.

Models that represent primary consolidation range from empirical equations that approximate the increases in bed bulk density and critical shear stress for resuspension due to porewater expulsion (Sanford, 2008) to finite difference models that solve the non-linear finite strain consolidation equation that governs primary consolidation in saturated porous media (e.g., Arega and Hayter, 2008). An empirical-based consolidation algorithm is included in SEDZLJ.

- SEDZLJ contains a morphologic algorithm that, when enabled by the model user, will adjust the bed elevation to account for erosion and deposition of sediment.

**Bedload Transport of Noncohesive Sediment**

The approach used by Van Rijn (1984) to simulate bedload transport is used in SEDZLJ. The 2D mass balance equation for the concentration of sediment moving as bedload is given by:

\[
\frac{\partial (\delta_{bl} C_b)}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial q_{b,x}}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial q_{b,y}}{\partial y} + Q_b
\]

where \( \delta_{bl} \) = bedload thickness; \( C_b \) = bedload concentration; \( q_{b,x} \) and \( q_{b,y} \) = x- and y-components of the bedload sediment flux, respectively; and \( Q_b \) = sediment flux from the bed. Van Rijn (1984) gives the following equation for the thickness of the layer in which bedload is occurring:

\[
\delta_{bl} = 0.3 dd^0.7 (\Delta \tau)^{0.5}
\]

where \( \Delta \tau = \tau_b - \tau_{ce} \); \( \tau_b \) = bed shear stress, and \( \tau_{ce} \) = critical shear stress for erosion.

The bedload fluxes in the x- and y-directions are given by:

\[
q_{b,x} = \delta_{bl} u_{b,x} C_b
\]

\[
q_{b,y} = \delta_{bl} u_{b,y} C_b
\]

where \( u_{b,x} \) and \( u_{b,y} \) = x- and y-components of the bedload velocity, \( u_b \), which Van Rijn (1984) gave as

\[
u_b = 1.5 \tau^0.6 \left[ \frac{\rho_s - 1}{\rho_w - 1} \right] g d^{0.5}
\]

with the dimensionless parameter \( \tau \) given as
The $x$- and $y$-components of $u_b$ are calculated as the vector projections of the LTFATE Cartesian velocity components $u$ and $v$.

The sediment flux from the bed due to bedload, $Q_{bl}$, is equal to

$$ Q_b = E_{bl} - D_{bl} $$

(Deposition of Sediment)

In contrast to previous conceptual models, deposition of suspended noncohesive sediment and cohesive flocs is now believed to occur continually, and not just when the bed shear stress is less than a so-called critical shear stress of deposition (Mehta, 2014). The rate of deposition of the $ith$ sediment size class, $D_{sus,i}$ is given by:

$$ D_{sus,i} = -\frac{W_{s,i} C_i}{d} $$

where $W_{s,i}$ is given by Eq. C-2 for noncohesive sediment and by the empirical formulation used for the settling velocities of suspended flocs and bed aggregates, and $d$ = thickness of the bottom water column layer in a three-dimensional model. Because of their high settling velocities, noncohesive sediments deposit relatively quickly (in comparison to the deposition of cohesive sediments) under all flows. Due to the settling velocities of flocs being a lot slower than those of noncohesive sediment, the deposition rate of flocs are usually several orders of magnitude smaller.

Deposited cohesive sediments usually form a thin surface layer that is often called a fluff or benthic nepheloid layer that is often less than 1 cm in thickness. The fluff layer typically forms in estuaries and coastal waters via deposition of suspended flocs during the decelerating phase of tidal flows, in particular immediately before slack water (Krone, 1972; and Hayter and Mehta, 1986). The fluff layer is usually easily resuspended by the accelerating currents following slack water in tidal bodies of water.

The rate of deposition of the $ith$ noncohesive sediment class moving as bedload is given by (James et al., 2010):

$$ D_{bl,i} = -P_{bl,i} W_{s,i} C_{bl,i} $$

(C-10)
where $C_{bl,i}$ = mass concentration of the $ith$ noncohesive sediment class being transported as bedload, and $P_{bl,i}$ = probability of deposition from bedload transport. The latter parameter is given by:

$$P_{bl,i} = \frac{E_{bl,i}}{W_{s,i} C_{bl,i}^{eq}} \quad (C-11)$$

where

$$C_{bl,i}^{eq} = \frac{0.18 C_o \tau_b}{d^*} \quad (C-12)$$

which is the steady-state sediment concentration in bedload that results from a dynamic equilibrium between erosion and deposition, $d^*$ is given by Eq. C-3, and $C_o = 0.65$.

**Erosion of Sediment**

Erosion of a cohesive sediment bed occurs whenever the current and wave-induced bed shear stress is great enough to break the electrochemical interparticle bonds (Partheniades, 1965; Paaswell, 1973). When this happens, erosion takes place by the removal of individual sediment particles or bed aggregates. This type of erosion is time dependent and is defined as surface erosion or resuspension. In contrast, another type of erosion occurs more or less instantaneously by the removal of relatively large pieces of the bed. This process is referred to as mass erosion, and occurs when the bed shear stress exceeds the bed bulk strength along some deep-seated plane that is typically much greater than the bed shear strength of the surficial sediment.

The erosion rate of cohesive sediments, $E$, is given experimentally by:

$$E = 0; \quad (\tau < \tau_{cr})$$
$$E = A \tau^n; \quad (\tau_{cr} < \tau < \tau_m)$$
$$E = A \tau_m^n; \quad (\tau > \tau_m) \quad (C-13)$$

where the exponent, coefficient, critical shear stress for erosion, and maximum shear stress (above which $E$ is not a function of $\tau$) $n, A$, and $\tau_{cr}$, respectively, are determined from a SEDFLUME study. The erosion rates of the noncohesive sediment size classes were determined as a function of the difference between the bed shear stress and the critical shear stress for erosion using the results obtained by Roberts et al., (1998) who measured the erosion rates of quartz particles in a SEDFLUME.
The erosion rate of the $ith$ noncohesive sediment size class that is transported as bedload, $E_{bl,i}$, is calculated by the following equation in which it is assumed there is dynamic equilibrium between erosion and deposition:

$$E_{bl,i} = P_{bl,i} W_{s,i} C_{bl,i}$$

(C-14)
Coastal Zone Management

The federal Coastal Zone Management Act (CZMA), 16 U.S.C. 1451 et seq., as amended, requires each federal agency activity performed within or outside the coastal zone (including development projects) that affects land or water use or natural resources of the coastal zone to be carried out in a manner which is consistent to the maximum extent practicable with the enforceable policies of approved state management programs. A direct federal activity is defined as any function, including the planning and/or construction of facilities that is performed by or on behalf of a federal agency in the exercise of its statutory responsibilities. A federal development project is a federal activity involving the planning, construction, modification or removal of public works, facilities or other structures, and the acquisition, use, or disposal of land or water resources.

To implement the CZMA and to establish procedures for compliance with its federal consistency provisions, the U.S. Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA), has promulgated regulations which are contained in 15 C.F.R. Part 930. This coastal zone consistency determination is being submitted in compliance with Parts 930.30 through 930.44 of those regulations.

The South Carolina Coastal Zone Management Act was passed by the 1977 General Assembly of South Carolina to provide for the protection and enhancement of the state's coastal resources. This legislation creates the South Carolina Coastal Council, which is given the task of promoting the economic and social welfare of the citizens of the state while protecting the sensitive and fragile areas in the coastal counties and promoting sound development of coastal resources. The South Carolina Coastal Zone Management Act was amended by Act 181 of 1993, which merged South Carolina Coastal Council with the South Carolina Department of Health and Environmental Control. South Carolina Coastal Council became the Office of Ocean and Coastal Resource Management (OCRM).

Proposed Action

The Administrator of the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) has the authority to promulgate ocean dumping criteria, designate recommended ocean disposal sites, and issue permits for dumping materials into ocean waters. Under Sections 102 and 103 of the Marine Protection, Research, and Sanctuaries Act of 1972 (MPRSA), as amended (33 U.S.C. 1412), also known as the Ocean Dumping Act, EPA and the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) have the responsibility for ensuring that ocean dredged material disposal activities will not unreasonably degrade or endanger human health, welfare, amenities, or the marine environment.

The proposed action considered in this coastal zone consistency determination is a modification (expansion) of the existing Charleston ODMDS in accordance with MPRSA Section 102. The purpose of the proposed action is to ensure that adequate environmentally acceptable and economically and logistically feasible ocean disposal site capacity is available for suitable dredged material generated from new work (deepening) and maintenance projects in support of the Charleston Harbor Federal Navigation Project and other local users. The availability of suitable ocean disposal sites to support ongoing navigation channel maintenance and capital improvement projects is essential for continued economic growth in the region.
The existing Charleston ODMDS is approximately 9 miles southeast of the entrance to Charleston Harbor, South Carolina, and 7 miles from shore in approximately 40 feet of water (Figure 2-1 from EA, attached). The general area has been used for dredged material disposal since 1986 and was last configured in 1995 to avoid sensitive live-bottom habitat. The current approved disposal zone is 4 mi^2 in size.

The proposed ODMDS modification consists of adding a 5.8-mi^2 (4.4-nmi^2) area along the northern, eastern, and southern boundaries of the Charleston ODMDS disposal zone (Figure 2-1 from EA, attached). This area would expand the existing 4-mi^2 disposal zone and would be designated for disposal of dredged material from the future harbor deepening projects at Charleston Harbor as well as routine maintenance material. The size of the proposed ODMDS modification area is based on current capacity modeling of the existing disposal zone within the Charleston ODMDS, historical dredging volumes, future dredging for new work and maintenance projects, estimated shoaling rates, and capacity of upland confined disposal facilities (CDFs) in the area.

**Project Need**

The Port of Charleston is one of the nation’s major ports, and shipping trends in Charleston show adherence to projections for considerable growth in ship size in all three dimensions: draft, beam, and length. Given these trends, there is a need to deepen the navigation channel at Charleston Harbor to accommodate larger container vessels. Additional channel depth would allow current and future shippers to more fully utilize larger-class vessels and would reduce future anticipated congestion.

Because of the importance of maintaining Charleston Harbor for shipping, the federal navigation project has historically depended on, and will continue to depend on, having adequate and economically feasible alternatives for dredged material disposal. The Charleston ODMDS is one of the most active, frequently used dredged material disposal sites in the South Atlantic Bight. In addition to routine maintenance material being placed on an annual basis at the Charleston ODMDS, new work material from the proposed Charleston Harbor Post 45 Deepening Project will also require disposal in Charleston ODMDS. USACE has determined that the Charleston Harbor Post 45 Deepening Project would generate sufficient dredged material to affect the existing capacity of the Charleston ODMDS and potentially restrict disposal of material from operations and maintenance (O&M) dredging. Therefore, USACE has concluded that modification of the existing Charleston ODMDS will be needed to accommodate dredged material from the deepening project and to maintain existing dredged material management options for O&M dredging. The need for ocean disposal is based primarily on the lack of economically, logistically, and environmentally feasible alternatives for the disposal of the quantities of dredged material deemed unsuitable for beach renourishment or beach placement. The details on existing capacity and current and future dredged material disposal volumes are provided in Section 1 the Environmental Assessment (EA).

**State-Enforceable Policies**

The goals of the South Carolina Coastal Management Program are attained by enforcement of the policies of the state as codified within the South Carolina Code of Regulations. "Policy" or "policies" of the South Carolina Coastal Management Program means the enforceable provisions of present or future applicable South Carolina statutes or regulations promulgated duly thereunder (SC Code of Regulations Chapter 30). The relevant enforceable resource policy associated with the proposed action is related to the disposal of dredged material. Section 30-12 provides standards to prevent and minimize impacts to the marine and aquatic environment resulting from the deposition of dredged material as follows:

\[(a)\] Upland disposal of dredged material shall always be sought in preference to disposal in wetlands. Vegetated wetlands and mudflats shall not be utilized for disposal of dredged materials unless there are no feasible alternatives. Any other wetlands should not be utilized for disposal of dredged materials when other alternatives exist;
(b) Open water and deep water disposal should be considered as an alternative if highland alternatives are not feasible. However, open and deep water disposal sites should be seriously considered only after careful consultation with the Department and other relevant State and Federal agencies;

(c) Dredged materials containing hazardous levels of toxic material must be disposed of with extraordinary caution. These materials shall never be disposed of in wetland areas and only in highland areas which are lined and diked with impervious materials. These materials will only be disposed in open water ocean dumping sites when maximum safety has been demonstrated after thorough review by the Department and other appropriate state and federal agencies;

(d) Dikes surrounding disposal areas should be shaped and vegetated immediately to minimize erosion, with outfalls positioned to empty into non-wetland areas;

(e) Future disposal sites shall be reviewed on a case-by-case basis;

(f) Wherever feasible, existing disposal areas shall be utilized to the fullest extent possible; this would include raising the height of the embankments to increase the holding capacity of the disposal area;

(g) Consideration must be given to the temporal aspects of spoil deposition - for example, impacts on spawning, fish migrations, shellfish harvesting, waterfowl nesting and wintering areas, and mosquito control. Attention must be given to possible adverse impacts of various alternative sites on the public health and welfare as well as on critical fish and wildlife areas;

(h) In all cases, dredging activities shall not be approved until satisfactory disposal sites have been acquired.

Effects of Proposed Action

The effects of the proposed action are described in detail in Section 4 of the draft EA. Table 1 provides a summary of the direct and indirect impacts of dredged material disposal within the proposed ODMDS modification area. With respect to coastal resources and interests, given that the proposed ODMDS modification area is approximately 7 miles (6 nmi) offshore of the nearest beach, it is not expected to result in significant adverse impacts to nearshore coastal or estuarine resources, including biological resources, threatened and endangered species, hardbottom habitat, essential fish habitat (EFH), water quality, commercial and recreational fisheries, or cultural resources. Therefore, this proposed action would be consistent with the Coastal Zone Management program of South Carolina.
Table 1. Summary of Direct and Indirect Impacts of the Proposed Action

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environmental Factor</th>
<th>Modification of the Existing ODMDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Threatened and Endangered Species – Sea Turtles</td>
<td>Impacts to sea turtles associated with dredged material disposal include possible collisions with dredge and support vessels, temporary decreases in foraging due to turbidity and burial of food resources, and underwater noise from dredging equipment. Impacts are expected to be short-term and localized. No significant impacts to sea turtles are expected as a result of the proposed action.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Threatened and Endangered Species – Manatees</td>
<td>Impacts to manatees associated with dredged material disposal include possible, but unlikely, encounters with dredge and support vessels during hauling and disposal operations. No significant impacts to manatees are expected as a result of the proposed action.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Threatened and Endangered Species – Whales</td>
<td>Impacts to the North Atlantic right whale and humpback whale associated with dredged material disposal include possible collisions with dredge and support vessels, temporary decreases in foraging due to turbidity and burial of food resources, and underwater noise from dredging equipment. Impacts are expected to be short-term and localized. No significant impacts to whales are expected as a result of the proposed action.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Threatened and Endangered Species – Fish</td>
<td>Shortnose sturgeon, Atlantic sturgeon, and smalltooth sawfish are not likely to be present in the project area. Therefore, no significant impacts to protected fish are expected as a result of the proposed action.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fish and Wildlife Resources – Benthic Fauna</td>
<td>Potential impacts include direct burial of benthic organisms and change in composition of sediments reducing abundance and diversity of the benthic communities within the site. Suspended sediments can also affect filter-feeding organisms and abrade gill tissues. Effects of turbidity would be short-term and localized. Effects of burial and change in sediment composition can potentially be long-term depending upon the frequency of disturbance and depth of burial.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fish and Wildlife Resources – Fish</td>
<td>Potential impacts include temporary decreases in foraging due to turbidity and burial of food resources. Adult fishes within the disposal area may experience a short-term reduction in dissolved oxygen uptake through the gills due to the presence of suspended particles. Impacts are expected to be short-term and localized. No significant impacts to fishes are expected as a result of the proposed action.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fish and Wildlife Resources – Marine Mammals</td>
<td>See protected whale species above.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fish and Wildlife Resources – Seabirds</td>
<td>Potential indirect impacts may include ship-following behavior, temporary reductions in prey items, and visual impairment of marine birds foraging in the vicinity of the disposal plume. No significant impacts to protected seabirds are expected as a result of the proposed action.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hardbottoms</td>
<td>Potential impacts include burial of hardbottom, increased turbidity and sedimentation, loss of sessile biota and finfish assemblages, and loss of productivity. To help protect nearby hardbottom habitat from being buried by sediment migrating from the ODMDS, an U-shaped berm will be constructed along the south, west, and east perimeters of the modified ODMDS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Environmental Factor</td>
<td>Modification of the Existing ODMDS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Essential Fish Habitat</td>
<td>Direct effects of sedimentation and turbidity are not expected to be substantial due to the mobility of the majority of federally managed species that may occur within the site and the lack of geographic constraints within the vicinity of the project area. There are 1.6 acres of hardbottom within the site that could be buried. Construction of the berm may create additional hardbottom habitat. No significant impacts to EFH are expected as a result of the proposed action.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cultural Resources</td>
<td>Based on survey findings, there are no targets of significance within the proposed ODMDS modification area. No significant effects to cultural resources are expected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recreation</td>
<td>The closest artificial reefs are approximately 3 nmi north of the site. There are no anticipated effects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coastal Barrier Resources</td>
<td>Given that the proposed ODMDS modification area is approximately 6 nmi from shore, there are no anticipated effects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water Quality</td>
<td>Short-term, localized increases in turbidity will occur in the vicinity of the disposal site during disposal operations. No significant or long-term impacts to water quality are expected as a result of the proposed action.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Conclusion**

In accordance with the CZMA, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Region 4 has determined that the proposed modification of the Charleston ODMDS would be carried out in a manner that is fully consistent with the enforceable policies of the South Carolina Coastal Management Program related to dredged material disposal. This determination is supported by the information and analysis included in the EA that has been prepared for this proposed action.